GERMAN QUICKLY: A GRAMMAR FOR READING GERMAN

Revised Edition

April Wilson

ERRATA

(* indicate the most serious mistakes)

- *p. xxi, c before \ddot{a} is like the ts in bats; ch is pronounced in the front part of the mouth, g omit Weg; d place a; after thing-a-majig)
- *p. xxii, sp and st at the beginning of a word are pronounced like the English sh
- p. 7, 1.7: der Sänger
- p. 11, 4: Two other important irregular verbs are...
- p. 16, sentences under 3.2: Der Briefträger
- * p. 17, top: Die Frau töten die Männer.
- p. 19, vocabulary continued on the next page is not in alphabetical order
- * p. 22, 3.11, comments in bold: Moreover, the dative endings for all plural nouns will nearly always be -n.
- * p. 23, 3.14, #1 dem fleißigen Hamster
- pp. 31,33, 35 headings: Adjectives
- p. 33, 4.9: Ein Reh steht still und *verklärt*...quietly and in a transfigured manner...
- p. 61, vocabulary: die Lüge (-n) lie
- *p. 66, 7.6, #1: wird sie böse auf ihn.
- p. 71, vocabulary: die Flut (-en) flood, flow; die Schande disgrace; ihr her, their its
- p. 81, vocabulary: die Bürde (-n), burden
- p. 85, #6 is not from Proverbs (it is actually a Chinese proverb)
- p. 107: 14.3a and 14.3b (to compensate for the same numbering for two sections)
- p. 112, 14.13, chart, "present perfect" should be replaced with perfect
- p. 115, 14.19: Omit (before the word "Review"
- * p. 121: vocabulary: das Fest (-es, -e) celebration, feast, festival; liegen, lag, gelegen to lie
- p. 122: Abraham und Isaak, end of first verse: Hier bin ich.

- * p. 123, top: wenn wir gebetet haben (*have prayed*), werden wir... (the comma is missing)
- *p. 126, top, die alten Dichter; 3. (near the bottom), masculine accusative
- *p. 127, 16.6, #3, die dicksten Kartoffeln; vocabulary: ernten to reap

*p. 139, #7, Der...Wunder

p. 149, 20.2, Schleiermacher is misspelled in the English translation

p. 170, 23.8, #11: Aufregung; in the back, the answer key is listed as 23.7

- p. 175: vocabulary: **dabei** in so doing p. 183: 25.16, #4, ein Mann, der Bonbons hatte,
- * p. 199, 27.11, #5 (final word) zerschellte
- *p. 200: #12, jedenfalls nicht an dem...
- p. 206: 28.6, the dog *has become* old (*active*) *p. 208, top: Er *wurde* von seinen Kollegen...
- p, 211, vocabulary: **treiben, trieb, getrieben** to drive
- p. 227, #10: (Note that because the noun *Sneewittchen* is neuter, *seine*,

es, and ihm should be translated as if they were feminine pronouns.)

- p. 229: #15, Gott hilft ihm
- *p. 232, chart, past indicative of können is konnte
- p. 258, 36.27: #1 should end with a period; #3: sentence should end with a period.
- *p. 286, II. A. Strong adjective ending chart headings should be: masculine, neuter, feminine, plural
- p. 291, VIII: Werden (See especially 28.12)
- *p. 305, ziehen
- *p. 311, plural for heit is -en
- p. 334, 16.4 should be 16.6; 16.6, #15 should be #14.
- p. 335, 17.13, #1, sensitive should be omitted
- p. 336: 19.10: 14 should be marked as 13; 16 should be marked as 15 p. 337, reading selection: should be marked paragraphs 8, 10, 12
- p. 337, reading selection: should be marked paragraphs 8, 10, 12 p. 338: 22.5, #7: Like no other artist of his epoch [and] with a harsh
- intimacy, PK dealt with the essential of our internal and external world.
- p. 343, Chapter 28, 28.11 should be marked 28.13; 344, 28.12 is 28.14; 345; 28.13 is 28.15

April Wilson

German— **Quickly**

A Grammar for Reading GERMAN

REVISED EDITION



PETER LANG
New York • Washington, D.C./Baltimore • Bern
Frankfurt am Main • Berlin • Brussels • Vienna • Oxford

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Wilson, April.

German quickly: a grammar for reading German /
April Wilson. — Rev. ed.
p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references.

1. German language—Grammar. 2. German language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. I. Title. PF3112.W55 438.2'421—dc21 2003012899 ISBN 978-0-8204-6759-7

Bibliographic information published by **Die Deutsche Bibliothek**. **Die Deutsche Bibliothek** lists this publication in the "Deutsche Nationalbibliografie"; detailed bibliographic data is available on the Internet at http://dnb.ddb.de/.

Cover design by Lisa Barfield

The paper in this book meets the guidelines for permanence and durability of the Committee on Production Guidelines for Book Longevity of the Council of Library Resources.



© 2007, 2005, 2004 Peter Lang Publishing, Inc., New York 29 Broadway, 18th Floor, New York, NY 10006 www.peterlang.com

All rights reserved.

Reprint or reproduction, even partially, in all forms such as microfilm, xerography, microfiche, microcard, and offset strictly prohibited.

Printed in the United States of America

Foreword

German Quickly: A Grammar for Reading German evolved from the German reading course I have taught to students in the University of Chicago community over the past thirty years. It has the following features that make it a valuable text for students who need to learn German quickly:

- 1. Explanations have been revised several times in response to student questions and comments, so that the book provides important grammatical information about the structure of German, which simply is not provided by other German textbooks. In this edition, I have expanded upon the grammar explanations of the 1993 edition, and I have included more reading and general review selections. I have also added questions to some of the exercise sentences in anticipation of common mistakes, and I have added reassuring comments when I know students might be feeling overwhelmed.
- 2. It carefully describes key grammatical points in detail without giving students superfluous information. Consequently, students have been able to translate passages from thinkers as complex as Freud, Kafka, Mann, Rilke, Heidegger, Tillich, Nietzsche, and Benjamin after about 100 hours or so of study.
- 3. Proverbs and aphorisms are used as translation exercises, even in the early pages of the text. These help sustain students' enthusiasm for German when their ability to read is at an elementary level. *German Quickly* is both scholarly and fun.

- 4. There are 12 sections in the appendix, including strategies for reading German, an important word list, a summary of German grammar, verb charts, and a Humanities Vocabulary, which is especially valuable for students beginning to read scholarly articles in specialized fields. There is also a partial answer key, which should prove helpful to students studying German independently.
- 5. People reading *German Quickly* are welcome to communicate with me though e-mail: april@aprilwilson.com. I am eager to know who my readers are, and would be happy to suggest additional readings based on specific interests.

The Structure of German Quickly, and How to Use It

This text consists primarily of grammar explanations with sample exercises and an accompanying vocabulary. There are also periodic final exercises for additional vocabulary and grammar practice. Cognates are placed in italics in the exercise sentences to encourage students to guess their meanings.

Most of the exercise sentences consist either of proverbs or of a running saga of two major characters—Fräulein Meier and a mailman. Some of the proverbs included are unfamiliar to most Germans and are not representative of German culture. However, I have included them because they are intriguing. They contain a wide variety of ideas about life and human nature—some insightful, some bizarre, and some whimsical—which tend to add to the interest of learning a foreign language. Fräulein Meier and the mailman are intended for fun. (Although a German woman of Fräulein Meier's age living in Germany today would be called *Frau* Meier instead, I have retained the old-fashioned term *Fräulein* to highlight the slightly Victorian nature of her romance with the mailman.)

In addition to reading passages from Bichsel, Kleist, Buber, and Nietzsche, I have included some Biblical reading passages and Grimm fairy tales because they are familiar and repetitive, and because people enjoy reading something "real" even when their grasp of German is not quite solid.

German Quickly is best suited for a semester reading course; it can be covered in a quarter, however. In a five week (highly) intensive course, I have been able to go through it in four weeks. In a fifteen week course, I generally cover it in from ten to eleven weeks. In any class, this text should be supplemented with outside readings. I have deliberately kept the number of reading passages to a minimum so that, with additional readings, German Quickly could be adapted to any German reading course in the general humanities, philosophy, theology, art history, history, sociology, classics, linguistics, music, and the like. A teacher also could have the free-

dom to update reading materials whenever he or she wished. A suggested syllabus for *German Quickly* is given at the end of Appendix A.

Some useful German readers might be: Einander Verstehen: Ein Deutsches Literarisches Lesebuch (Marianne and Martin Loschmann), Dichter, Denker und Erzähler (Edith Ehrlich and Peter Niels Heller), Modern Theological German (Helmut Ziefle). Dual language texts, such as Wittgenstein's Zettel, or Kafka's Parables and Paradoxes can also be helpful, or texts originally in English such as Hemingway's Der alte Mann und das Meer, or mysteries by Agatha Christie. The Bible is also a good source for German passages. Moreover, students can do Internet searches for German articles that specifically interest them. CNN's web site also offers a German edition that is easily accessible, and German magazines and newspapers such as Der Spiegel and Die Zeit have online editions.

I have discussed the advantages and disadvantages of various German dictionaries in Appendix I, and I would strongly recommend reading this section before purchasing a dictionary. However, dictionaries are often revised, so students should supplement my comments with reviews on web sites such as Amazon.com.

It is important to acquire a German vocabulary of the most common words as soon as possible, and I include advice about memorizing words in Chapter 2, section 2.10.

German Quickly has a section in Appendix C entitled "English Grammar Necessary for Learning German." I have placed chapter references next to my grammar explanations, and I hope students unfamiliar with grammar will consider it a useful reference.

The beginning exercise sentences at the end of each chapter tend to be easier to translate, while the later sentences are more challenging. Students may wish to translate the easier sentences when reading *German Quickly* for the first time; they can use the harder sentences as review sentences once they become more familiar with grammar. Students also might find it helpful to mark sentences that seem confusing initially, to see if they become clearer during review sessions.

I hope that *German Quickly* will live up to its title, and that people will enjoy this introductory text as well as any subsequent readings. After all, *Frisch begonnen ist halb gewonnen!*—A fresh start is half the victory!



Acknowledgments

Thanks are due to the publishers for permission to reproduce the following copyright texts:

"November" from Eigentlich möchte Frau Blum den Milchmann kennenlemen by Peter Bichsel, copyright 1964. Walter-Verlag, Olten. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

Selections from *Die Erzählungen der Chassidim* by Martin Buber, copyright 1949. Manesse Verlag, Zürich. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

Selections from *Die Erzählungen* by Thomas Mann. copyright 1966. S. Fischer Verlag, Frankfurt am Main. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

Selections from *Deutsche Literaturgeschichte* by Fritz Martini, copyright 1965. Alfred Kröner Verlag, Stuttgart. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

"Der Schwan" (translated by Ludwig Zimmerer) and "Der Elefant" from *Der Elefant* by Slawomir Mrozek, copyright 1967. Gustav Kiepenheuer, Berlin. Reprinted by pemission of the publisher.

Selections from *Zettel* by Ludwig Wittgenstein, copyright 1967. Basil Blackwell, Oxford. Reprinted by permission of G. E. M. Anscombe.

Special thanks are also due to my extraordinary students who through the years have contributed enormously to the vision and revision of my book, and to my family, especially my mother, who named *German Quickly*.



Contents

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

(Contents listed in bold face type are those which students often need to refer to.)

xix

Chapter 1: .	A General Introduction cognates; genders; compounds; plurals; summary of rules for recognizing plurals (1.6); singular, plural practice	I
Chapter 2:	The Present Tense of Verbs and the Personal Pronouns present tense of regular verbs; pronouns; <i>sein, haben;</i> irregular second and third person singular patterns; <i>wissen, werden;</i> exercises, vocabulary; tips for memorizing vocabulary (2.10); vocabulary aid; place names	8
Chapter 3,	part I: The Case Endings nominative; accusative; sometimes the object can appear before the verb (3.3); genitive; -s as a genitive singular ending (3.7); exercises, vocabulary	15

Chapter 3, part II: The Case Endings dative; placement of dative in a clause (3.12); declension charts (3.15; 3.16); when nouns have endings to reveal the case (3.17); exercises; der words; kein; importance of case endings; exercises, vocabulary, vocabulary aid	21
Chapter 4: Adjectives and Adverbs adjectives, including a chart (4.1); strong endings, including adjectives after the indefinite article ein; weak adjective endings (4.2); two or more adjectives; predicate adjectives; adverbs (4.8); exercises, vocabulary; vocabulary aid; cognate practice	29
Chapter 5, part I: Prepositions general information about prepositions; <i>der</i> following a preposition is feminine dative 95% of the time (5.5); accusative prepositions; dative prepositions	37
Chapter 5, part II: Prepositions prepositions taking either dative or accusative; genitive prepositions; exercises, vocabulary, vocabulary aid; Reading Selection: Fräulein Meier; importance of case endings (5.16)	46
Chapter 6: Basic Verb Placement (Part I) verb appearing in "second" place; when the sentence does not begin with the subject (6.3); questions; commands (6.6); dependent clauses; exercises, vocabulary, vocabulary aid; Reading Selection: Meeresstrand (Theodor Storm)	56
Chapter 7: The Pronouns personal pronouns in nominative, accusative and dative case; declensions of er, es, sie (7.2; 7.5); pronouns du, ihr, Sie; possessive adjectives, including charts (7.8); endings on possessive adjectives; exercises, vocabulary, pronoun practice	64
Chapter 8: Weak Nouns and Adjectives Used as Nouns weak nouns (8.1); a chart for weak nouns; adjectives used as nouns (8.5); case ending exercise; exercises, vocabulary, proper name exercise	73

	Contents xiii
Chapter 9: The Various Uses of Es es gibt (9.1); es ist, es sind; the "pay atte exercises, vocabulary; Reading Selection	
Chapter 10: The Future Tense Why future tense is used less commonl English; werden as an auxiliary to for exercises, vocabulary aid	
Chapter II: Comparison (and Superlative) of Adjective comparison of adjectives; common adjective; comparison of adverbs; am as a (II.6); when -er indicates the comparamerely an adjective ending (II.10); exercised vocabulary aid; comparative or not exercise.	ective combinations superlative marker ative, and when it is crcises, vocabulary,
Chapter 12: Da-and Wo-Compounds da-compounds; wo-compounds; exercise Selection: Der Elefant (Slawomir Mroze	
Chapter 13: Verb Prefixes separable verb prefixes; a list of prefixes verb <i>gehen</i> ; the difference between sep prepositions (13.6); inseparable verb vocabulary	arable prefixes and
Chapter 14: Verb Tenses (Part I) present, past, present perfect, past perfect and how to find their infinitives (14.2 present perfect as a simple past (14.3 auxiliaries sein and haben; conjugation verbs with inseparable prefixes; sein and conjugations; exercises, vocabulary; strodifference between weak and strong vimportant (14.14); suggestions for detestrong verb; past of hard verbs always (14.18); exercises); translation of the 4) placement of the s of a weak verb (14.6); haben and their ong/hard verbs (14.13); verbs, and why this is rmining the root of a

xiv	German	Quickly
		,

Chapter 15:	Verb Tenses (Part II) irregular weak ("curve ball") verbs (15.1); verbs with geprefixes; conjugation of a separable verb; participles used as adjectives; placement of verbs; exercises, vocabulary, verb practice; Reading Selection: Abraham and Isaak	117
Chapter 16:	The Plurals nouns that are always singular; nouns with the article <i>die</i> , <i>die</i> and an adjective or noun ending in -en is <i>always</i> plural (16.3); nouns with the article <i>der</i> ; nouns with the article <i>den</i> ; singular nouns that can look plural; exercises, vocabulary	125
Chapter 17:	How to Use a German Dictionary abbreviations; adjectives and adverbs; nouns; compound nouns (17.7); proper nouns; prepositions; verbs (es geht um); added caution, false cognates	129
Chapter 18:	Common Suffixes suffixes; exercises, vocabulary; guess the suffixes	137
Chapter 19:	The Modal Auxiliaries modals defined (19.1); modals conjugated (19.2); verb placement with modals; idioms with modals (19.4–5); past and present perfect of modals; modals in combination with other verbs; a modal as the only verb; verbs occasionally functioning as modals; exercises, vocabulary; ein <i>Kindervers</i> ; Reading Selection: <i>November</i> (Peter Bichsel)	140
Chapter 20:	The Zu Construction placement of zu (20.1-2); present perfect of zu; um zu, ohne zu, anstatt zu (20.6); nicht brauchen zu; zu construction as a subject (20.8); zu in combination with sein (20.9); exercises, vocabulary, vocabulary aid	148
Chapter 21	Co-ordinating Conjunctions co-ordinating conjunctions; conjunctions as connectors; conjunctions as breaks, exercises, vocabulary	155

	Contents	xv
Chapter 22:	Basic Verb Placement (Part II) part of the verb appearing at the end of the clause; translation of complex verbs; three verbs in a clause; whenever the zu construction is accompanied by auxiliaries; exercises, vocabulary; Reading Selection: Die zehn Jungfrauen; verb placement practice	159
Chapter 23:	Dependent Clauses (Part I) verb placement in dependent clauses; the most common subordinating conjunctions (23.3); how to translate a dependent clause (23.4); troublesome subordinating conjunctions; exercises, vocabulary	165
Chapter 24:	Dependent Clauses (Part II)—Subordinating Conjunctions: Wer, Was, Wie, Wo, Warum wer, was, wie, wo, warum, exercises, vocabulary	172
Chapter 25:	Dependent Clauses (Part III)—Relative Clauses nominative, accusative, dative and genitive relative pronouns; relative pronouns appearing after a preposition; translation tips (25.8–14); exercises, vocabulary; verb placement practice; Reading Selection: Aus dem <i>Erdbeben in Chili</i> (Heinrich von Kleist)	176
Chapter 26:	The Reflexive reflexive pronouns used in place of possessive adjectives (26.4) selbst and selber (26.5); reflexive verbs; meanings expressed by the reflexive; exercises, vocabulary; when to translate sich (26.11); a joke; Reading Selection: Der Froschkönig	185
Chapter 27:	The Overloaded Adjective Construction participles used as adjectives; how to spot an overloaded adjective construction (27.3); four steps for translating an overloaded adjective construction (27.4-8) adjectives do not have to be participles (27.6); the difference between an overloaded adjective construction and a relative clause (27.13); exercises, vocabulary; Reading Selection: Der Wolf und die sieben Geißlein	194

xvi G	ferman Quickly	
Chapter 28:	The Passive description of the passive; reminder of what a participle looks like (28.2); present, past, present perfect and past perfect passive; worden as been (28.6); why the passive is difficult to translate; modals combined with the passive; cautions about the passive (28.11); a reference chart (28.12); exercises, vocabulary; werden practice; participle or infinitive practice	204
Chapter 29:	Constructions to Be Translated Passively in English; The "Fake" Passive man; heißen, etc., reflexive verbs; sich lassen (29.6); the "fake" (statal) passive; exercises, vocabulary; Reading Selection: Zwei Chassidische Geschichten (Martin Buber)	213
Chapter 30:	Subjunctive I subjunctive I—a description; a chart; used for indirect discourse (30.3); continuation beyond the initial clause; subjunctive I as a command; summary (30.10); exercises, vocabulary	218
Chapter 31:	Subjunctive II subjunctive II; most frequent uses of the subjunctive II (31.2); how to translate the subjunctive II; the conditional; subjunctive in conjunction with the passive; exercises, vocabulary; subjunctive practice	223
Chapter 32:	Other Subjunctive Forms subjunctive of the modals; würde (32.7); exercises, vocabulary; Reading Selection: <i>Der Schwan</i> (Slawomir Mrozek)	230
Chapter 33:	If a Sentence Starts with a Verb review of when the sentence starts with a verb; if then clauses; how to translate them; exercises, vocabulary	236
Chapter 34:	Other Pronouns undeclined pronouns; declined pronouns; still other pronouns, including ander ; exercises, vocabulary; Reading Selection: Aus der <i>Fröhlichen Wissenschaft</i> und dem <i>Willen zur Macht</i> (Friedrich Nietzsche)	239

Contents	s xvii
Chapter 35: Use of Commas commas as sequences (35.1-2); commas as breaks in the sentences (35.3-4), difficult exercises, vocabulary	245
Chapter 36: Troublesome Words words that traditionally give students trouble, including also, also, nicht, um, zu; erst as only (36.11); exercises (the resolution of the romance between Fräulein Meier and the Briefträger), vocabulary, final sentences, including words of reassurance from Mark Twain	
Appendix A: Strategies for Reading German; Suggested Syllabus for German Quickly	261
Appendix B: Important Words	267
Appendix C: English Grammar Necessary for Learning German	275
Appendix D: Summary of German Grammar	285
Appendix E: Patterns for Strong/Hard Verbs a list of strong and confusing weak verbs	297
Appendix F: Days of the Week, the Months, and Numbers	307
Appendix G: Time Phrases	309
Appendix H: Genitive and Plural Noun Endings	311
Appendix I: Descriptions of German Dictionaries	313
Appendix J: Partial Answer Key	319
Appendix K: General and Humanities Vocabulary	353
Appendix L: German Proper Names	423
INDEX	429



Pronunciation Guide

Although it is not necessary to learn to pronounce words in order to read German, it is helpful to have a general idea of how they sound in order to be able to find them in your dictionaries more quickly. Moreover, if you look at some words, you can guess their English definitions by saying them. For example, *jung* is pronounced *young*, and indeed does mean *young*.

When you are pronouncing these words, try to guess their definitions as well. All German nouns are capitalized; examples are: *Garten, Lampe,* and *Gras.* All German infinitives end in -n or -en; examples are: *bringen, finden,* and *kommen.* (There is an answer key to the definitions of all these words in Appendix J.)

Vowels

Vowels are either long or short. They are long . . . when they are doubled: *Paar, Haar, Schnee;* when they are followed by *h: sehen, Jahr, Ohrring;* or when they are followed by a single consonant: *gut, rot*

Vowels are short . . . when they are followed by a double consonant: *Bett, Mann, hoffen;* or when followed by two or more consonants: *sitzen, ernst*

- a long (as the a in father): Vater, haben, sagen
- a short (as the o in hot): Wasser, Hand, alt
- e long (as in may): See, geben
- e short (as in let): Ende, Henne
- i long (as in greet): Tiger, Universität
- i short (as in sit): ist, dick, Mitte, Mittag, Mittwoch
- ie is like the long i (although this sounds like an e in English): Bier, hier, fliegen, liegen
- o long (as in open): Sohn, Brot, Segelboot
- o short (as in song): Sonne, Sommer
- u long (as in dune): Blume, Pudel (a dog!), Handschuh
- u short (as in bush): Mutter, und, unter

Umlauted vowels (modified vowels)

- ä long (as in hair): Mädchen, Väter, Waschbär (literally: washing-bear)
- ä short (is the same as the short e): Männer, Länder, Rotkäppchen (a fairy tale heroine)
- ö long (pronounce the German long e with rounded lips): Söhne, schön (beautiful)
- ö short (pronounce the German short e with rounded lips): öffnen, östlich
- ü long (pronounce the German long i with rounded lips): kühl, grün, Bücherwurm
- ü short (pronounce the German short i with rounded lips): Hütte, küssen
- ä, ö, and ü are occasionally written ae, oe, and ue. Examples are: spaet rather than spät; Oel rather than Öl; and Bueffel rather than Büffel (an animal).

Dipthongs

The diphthongs ei, ai, ey, and ay (are like the i in wine): Wein, Mai au (like the ou in mouse): Maus, Haus, Augenblick (literally: the blink of an eye—moment)

äu and eu (are like the oy in joy): neu, Fräulein, Nachteule, Feuer (A Feuerstuhl is literally a fire chair, and it means motorcycle!)

Consonants

The following consonants and combinations of consonants are pronounced as they are in English: f, h, k, m, n, p, t, ck, nk, ph. (I have placed an * in front of the differences in pronunciation of consonants that are most important.)

- b is like the English b when it begins a word: bevor, Baumwolle (literally: treewool); but when ending a word, it is like the English p: halb, Grab
- c is seldom seen at the beginning of a German word; in German, it is always either a proper name or a "foreign" (Latin, French) word.
- c before a, e, i is like the ts in bats: Cäsar, Cicero
- c before a, o, u is like the English k: Café
- ch There are four different ch sounds (although it does not really matter whether or not you can differentiate them) ch is pronounced in the front part of the mouthe and it approximates the h in hew. It follows e, i, umlauts, consonants, and in a few words it precedes e or i: ich, mich, Licht, China
- ch is pronounced in the back part of the mouth as in the Scotch Loch, and it follows a, o, u, and au: Nacht, Macht
- ch is pronounced like the English k when beginning words of Greek origin or preceding the vowels a and u or consonants: Christus, Charakter
- ch is pronounced like the sh in chef when beginning words of French origin: Chauvinist
- chs is pronounced like the x in six: sechs, Lachs (goes well with bagels!)
- d when beginning a word is like the English d: Donnerstag, Dingsbums (thing-a-ma-jig) when ending a word, it is like the English t: Hund, Gesundheit
- g when beginning a word is like the English g in good: Goldfisch; or when it begins a syllable, it also takes a hard g: Regen (What part of speech is Regen? How do you know?) but when it ends a word or syllable, it is like the English k: Tag, Weg
- -ig as an ending is pronounced like the German ich: König, hungrig, durstig but when an ending is added, g becomes a hard g again: Königin, hungriger, durstiger
- h when beginning a word or syllable is like the English h: hören, helfen, harm-los, aha
- * *j* is like the English *y* in young: *jung, ja, Jahrhundert*
 - l is like the English l in land: laut, Lippe
 - ng is pronounced like the English ng in singer: England, länger, Fingerhut (literally: finger-hat)
 - pf both letters are pronounced: Apfel, Pfund, pfui
 - qu is pronounced like the English kv: Quecksilber, Qualität
 - r has no equivalent in English. It is somewhat like the French r: studieren, reparieren, klar
 - s when it begins a word or syllable is like the English z in zest: senden, Suppe, Sanduhr (literally: sand-clock); otherwise, it is like the English s in sun: Gast, Fledermaus
- * \$\beta\$ and \$s\$ are pronounced like the English \$s\$ in mass. \$s\$ is often used between two short vowels: \$Klasse, besser. Prior to the German spelling reform of 1996, \$\beta\$

was often used at the end of a word or syllable: Kuß, muß. Now, ß becomes ss after a short vowel sound: dass (that) and it remains as an ß after a long vowel or a diphthong: Erdnuß, barfuß. (Do not worry if this seems confusing. It will not be important with regard to reading German. However, it is crucial that you do not mistake an ß for a B.)

sp and st are both pronounced like the English sh in she: spanisch, Spinne (an insect), Staat, Stinktier (an animal!)

th is like the English t: Luther, Goethe, Beethoven; Theologie

- * v is pronounced like the English f in words of German origin: Volk, Vorwort, vier, Vergißmeinnicht (a flower); but in words of "foreign" origin, v is pronounced like the English v: November
- * w is like the English v: Wald, Wörterbuch, Wassermelone
 - x is like the English ks: Axt, Vexierbild (literally: vexing-picture—a jigsaw puzzle)
 - z is pronounced like the English ts in bats: Zoo, Zickzack, Zigarre. (In his novel Der Zauberberg [Magic Mountain] Thomas Mann referred to what kind of object as a Quecksilber Zigarre?)

A General Introduction: Cognates, Genders, Compounds, and Plurals

(Note that this is just a general introduction, and do not be concerned if you do not assimilate all the information presented in this chapter. It will be a useful reference later.)

1.1. Cognates

A cognate is a word that is derived from the same original form; kühl and cool are cognates, as are Maus and mouse; Vater and father; frei and free. Here are some consonant relationships that exist between German and English and which will help you figure out German-English cognates more easily. Being able to recognize cognates reduces the number of words you need to memorize or look up in your dictionaries.

German	can correspond to	English
f, f (medial or final)		P
Affe		ape
hoffen		to hope
scharf		sharp
Schiff		ship

2 German Quickly		
pf (initial, medial, or final) Pfeife Pflaster Apfel	can correspond to	p, pp pipe plaster apple
b (medial or final)gebenGrabhalb	can correspond to	ν or f to give grave half
d Pfad Feder Dorn Ding	can correspond to	th path feather thorn thing
ch Buch machen suchen	can correspond to	k book to make to seek
cht Macht Sicht Recht Nacht	can correspond to	ght might sight right night
g	can correspond to	y or i

can correspond to

can correspond to

to say to lay

nail to fly

calf

comical

to come

critical

to hate

sagen

legen Nagel

fliegen

k

Kalb

komisch

kommen

s, ss, fs (medial or final)

kritisch

hassen

Α	General	Introd	uction

to greet

gruisen		to greet	
Fuß		foot	
Straße		street	
besser		better	
tz, z	can correspond to	t	
Zunge		tongue	
Pflanze		plant	
Katze		cat	
t	can correspond to	d	
trinken		to drink	
Tochter		daughter	
Karte		card	
kalt		cold	

Note that although there is a correspondence between consonants, you sometimes need to be more flexible with vowels: hören—to hear; Haus—house; lassen—to let; Sonne—sun: kalt—cold

1.2. Figure out the following

- (a) Wörter: Pfefferminze, Kirchenmaus, Nachtigall (a bird), tanzen
- (b) Sprichwörter (proverbs): Blut ist dicker als Wasser.

Die Ratten verlassen das sinkende Schiff.

Reiche (rich) Leute (people) haben fette Katzen.

(c) Buchtitel: Dante: Die göttliche Kömödie

Shakespeare: Hamlet, Prinz von Dänemark; Ende gut, alles gut; König Lear

Beckett: Warten auf Godot

Albee: Wer hat Angst vor Virginia Woolf?

Simon: Barfuß im Park

Hemingway: Der alte Mann und das Meer

1.3. Genders

grijken

German nouns can be one of three genders: masculine, neuter, or feminine. If an article precedes a noun. it will indicate the gender of the noun. Examples are:

masculine	feminine	neuter
der Mann (the man)	die Frau (the woman)	das Kind (the child)
der Wind (the wind)	die Lampe (the lamp)	das Tier (the animal)

der Apfel (the apple) die Sonne (the sun) der Löffel (the spoon) die Gabel (the fork)

das Buch (the book) das Messer (the knife)

Although you do not need to memorize the genders of nouns in order to read German, it will later be important for you to identify these genders in context. Therefore, you may eventually wish to use the following basic rules to determine the gender of a noun as a reference section. There is also a list of common suffixes that gives their genders and plural endings in Appendix H.

Masculine

- (a) nouns that denote male beings: der Vater (father), der Onkel (uncle), der Hahn (rooster), der König (king)
- (b) nouns that end in -er, which have been formed from verbs: der Fahrer (the driver) cf. fahren (to drive) der Erfinder (the inventor) cf. erfinden (to invent)

Feminine

- (a) nouns that denote female beings: die Mutter (mother), die Tante (aunt), die Henne (hen)
- (b) nouns ending in -ei, -ie, -heit, -keit, -ik, -schaft, -tät, -tion, -ung: die Geologie, die Gesundheit (health), die Freundlichkeit (friendliness), die Musik, die Freundschaft (friendship), die Universität, die Rotation, die Sammlung (collection)
- (c) nouns that end in -in (a suffix added to nouns that are usually masculine): die Nachbarin (the neighbor lady) cf. der Nachbar (the neighbor) die Freundin (the girl friend) cf. der Freund (the friend) die Königin (the queen) cf. der König (the king)
- (d) moreover, many (but not all) nouns that end in -e are also feminine: die Erde (earth), die Rose (rose), die Hölle (hell)

Neuter

- (a) nouns that end in -chen or -lein (which are diminutives): das Fräulein (the little woman) cf. die Frau (the woman) das Häuschen (the little house) cf. das Haus (the house) das Brüderlein (the little brother) cf. der Bruder (the brother)
- (b) nouns that have been formed directly from verbs

das Singen (the singing) cf. singen (to sing) das Leben (the life) cf. leben (to live) das Streben (the striving) cf. streben (to strive)

(c) nouns that end in -ium, -tum, -ment, and -sel:
das Studium (study), das Christentum (Christianity), das Abonnement (subscription), das Rätsel (riddle)

1.4. Compounds

New words in German sometimes can be formed by combining simpler words. Some of these words can be particularly graphic. Here are examples:

Abend (evening) + Land (country)—Abendland (occident)
Morgen (morning) + Land (country)—Morgenland (orient)
Morgen (morning) + Röte (red)—Morgenröte (dawn)
Eier (eggs) + Auflauf (riot, running amuck)—Eierauflauf (soufflé)

The gender of the noun is determined by its final component. Thus, even in a word as long as Unfallversicherungsgesellschaft (accident-insurance-society), the article will be die because the suffix -schaft is feminine.

1.5. Plurals

Because it is very important for you to be able to recognize plural forms, I have discussed them in more detail in Chapter Sixteen (16.1—16.4). However, here is a general introduction to them. Do not worry if you cannot assimilate them. The main thing to notice is that if a noun ends in -l, -e, -r, or -n, or occasionally -s (and even more rarely -a), it might be a plural! Nouns ending in any other letter will always be singular.

Plurals of German nouns are indicated by the use of the definite article *die (the)* plus one of the following endings:

1. -l: singular der Apfel (the apple) der Titel (the title) plural die Äpfel (the apples) die Titel (the titles)

Note that when a masculine noun ends in -l, either an umlaut will be added to the medial vowel, or there will be be no ending whatsoever, and you must rely on the article *die* to inform you whether the noun is singular or plural.

2. -e:

singular

der Freund (the friend) der Gast (the guest)

das Jahr (the year)

plural

die Freunde (the friends) die Gäste (the guests) die Jahre (the years)

Occasionally an umlaut is added.

3. -er:

singular

* der Lehrer (the teacher) das Kind (the child) das Land (the country) das Haus (house)

plural

die Lehrer (the teachers) die Kinder (the children) die Länder (the countries) die Häuser (the houses):

Occasionally an umlaut is added.

*Note that there is no plural ending for masculine nouns ending in -er; ONLY the die article will inform you whether the noun is singular or plural.

4. -(e)n:

singular

der Student (the student) * das Mädchen (the girl) die Nummer (the number) die Freundschaft (the friendship) die Katze (the cat)

plural

die Studenten (the students) die Mädchen (the girls) die Nummern (the numbers) die Freundschaften (the friendships) die Katzen (the cats)

* Note that there is no plural ending for neuter nouns ending in -en; ONLY the die article will inform you whether the noun is singular or plural.

Note that whenever the noun ends in -en and the article is die, the noun will always be plural!!!

die Mädchen (girls); die Katzen (cats); die Studenten; die Wahrheiten (truths); die Ideen (ideas)

5. -s:

A few nouns of "foreign" origin form their plurals by adding an -s ending:

singular

der Chef (the boss) das Genie (the genius)

plural

die Chefs (the bosses) die Genies (the geniuses)

6. -a

These are always formed from Latin words: Spezifica; Charakteristika

1.6. Summary

- 1. any noun that does not end in -l, -e, -r, -n, or, occasionally -s, can not be plural
- 2. any noun with the article *die* and the ending *-en* will always be plural: *die* Katzen—the cats
- 3. the articles *der* with a masculine noun (*der Mann*, *der Professor*) and *das (das Lernen)* cannot be plural.
- **1.7. Indicate which of the following words is plural.** How do you know? Because all of the words are cognates, guess their definitions as well:

dec inter

der Singer; die Universität; der Junge; die Männer; der Apfel; das Schreiben; das Haus; die Bücher; die Nacht; die Studentinnen; das Auge; die Freundschaft; die Freundlichkeit; die Damen, die Großväter, der Titel; die Wochen; die Regeln; die Autos; die Namen; die Bären; die Mädchen; die Revolution.

The Present Tense of Verbs and the Personal Pronouns

2.1. All verbs in their infinitival form end in -en, or sometimes in -n. This is the form you will find in your dictionaries.

Examples are: singen (to sing), finden (to find), tanzen (to dance), bringen (to bring); and wandern (to wander), tun (to do), and handeln (to act).

These verbs are conjugated in the following way:

	singen	bringen	wandern
ich <i>(I)</i>	sing e	bring e	wander e
du <i>(you)</i> *	sing st	bring st	wander st
er (he) es (it)			
sie (she)	singt	bring t	wander t
wir (we)	sing en	bring en	wander n
ihr <i>(you)</i> *	singt	bring t	wander t
sie (they)	sing en	bring en	wander n
Sie (you)	sing en	bring en	wander n

^{*}du (one person) and *ihr* (two or more people) are informal forms of *you*, and they are to be used only with close friends, family, children, animals, and God. Because these forms seldom appear in scholarly writings, you need not be too

concerned about memorizing them unless you intend to read either literature or the Bible.

2.2. The pronoun Sie (which can refer either to one person or to several people) is formal, and it is the only German pronoun to be capitalized regularly.

The pronoun *ich* (*I*) is never capitalized.

Note that all plural pronouns—wir (we), sie (they), and Sie (you)—with the exception of ihr (informal you) have the same form as the infinitive (gehen, sagen, hören, etc.).

Note also the similarity among *sie* (*she*), *sie* (*they*) and *Sie* (*you*). Because the same word is used for both *she* and *they*, you must pay careful attention to the verb in order to translate *sie* correctly. Compare:

```
sie geht—she goes.
sie gehen—they go.
```

When *Sie* is capitalized in mid-sentence, it will always be translated as *you*. However, when *Sie* begins a sentence it can be either *you* or *they*; you need extra information to decide which translation is preferable, although it usually will be *they*: *Sie* gehen oft dorthin—*They* (or *you*) go there often.

2.3. When the subject is a singular noun, the third person singular verb form will be used, while when the subject is plural, the plural verb form will be used:

```
Die Katze spielt—The cat plays.
Die Katzen spielen—The cats play.
```

2.4. One German verb form expresses all three forms of the English present—the present (*I sing*), the progressive (*I am singing*), and the emphatic (*I do sing*). Here are examples:

```
Es regnet—It is raining.
```

Obwohl er nichts sagt, weiß er doch die Antwort—Although he is saying nothing, he does know the answer, nevertheless.

Er ist glücklich, wenn er tanzt—He is happy when he is dancing.

Therefore, it is best to translate the verb according to which form sounds smoothest to you in English.

2.5. The two most crucial verbs (which are irregular) are: sein (to be) and haben (to have). Memorize their forms:

		<i>sein</i> —to be	<i>haben</i> —to have
ich	(I)	bin	habe
du	(you, informal)	bist	hast
er, sie, es	(he, she, it)	ist	hat
wir	(we)	sind*	haben
ihr	(you, informal)	seid	habt
sie	(they)	sind*	haben
Sie	(you, formal)	sind*	haben

^{*}Note that the *we, they, you* forms of *sein* are different from the infinitive. This is the case *only* with the verb *sein*.

2.6. Translate the following pronouns and verbs; (optional) state the infinitive of each of the verbs:

sie denkt; er findet; ich vergesse; sie haben; Sie sind; sie lassen; ich gebe; sie sind; er hat; ich sage; es heilt; sie tut; Sie machen; sie helfen

2.7. Some verbs will have a vowel change in both second and third person singular. Here is an example, and here are the infinitival and third person singular forms of the most important of these verbs:

sprechen (to speak):

ich spreche	(I speak)	wir sprechen (we speak)	
du sprichst	(you speak)	ihr sprecht (you speak)	
*er spricht	(he speaks)	sie sprechen (they speak)	
*es spricht	(it speaks)	Sie sprechen (you speak)	
*sie spricht	(she speaks)		

1. Variation I:

brechen (to break); er bricht essen (to eat); sie ißt geben (to give); er gibt treten (to step); sie tritt; helfen (to help); er hilft nehmen (to take); sie nimmt

2. Variation II:

geschehen (to occur); es geschieht lesen (to read); er liest

sehen (to see); er sieht stehlen (to steal); er stiehlt

3. Variation III:

fahren (to travel); er fährt lassen (to let); er läßt; wachsen (to grow); er wächst waschen (to wash); sie wäscht fallen (to fall); er fällt schlafen (to sleep); er schläft;

4. Two other important irregulars verb are wissen (to know), and werden (to become), which are conjugated as follows:

wissen werden ich weiß (I know) werde (I become) du weißt (you know) wirst (you become) wird (she becomes) sie weiß (she knows) werden (we become) wir wissen (we know) werdet (you become) ihr wißt (you know) sie wissen (they know) werden (they become) Sie wissen (you know) werden (you become)

When not used as a verb, weiß means white.

When used as an auxiliary, werden will mean will (Chapter 10) or is (Chapter 28); because werden is used with the passive mood much more frequently than it is used as to become, be aware that werden should not automatically be translated as become.

2.8. Translate the following pronouns and verbs:

er nimmt; du liest; sie sieht; es geschieht; er weiß; es bricht; sie läßt; du ißt; du wächst; sie wäscht

- **2.9. Translate these sentences.** (Ignore the endings on the adjectives; they will be explained in Chapter Four: 4.1–4.3) I will put words that are cognates in italics to give you practice in figuring them out.
 - 1. Der Mensch ist, was er ißt.
 - 2. Kinder und Narren (fools) sagen die Wahrheit.
 - 3. Keine Antwort ist auch eine Antwort.
 - 4. Der Arzt hilft, die Natur heilt.
 - 5. Das Herz lügt nicht.
 - 6. Schöne Gesichter haben viele Richter (judges).
 - 7. Ein neuer Arzt braucht einen neuen Kirchhof (graveyard).
 - 8. Ein gutes Wort findet einen guten Ort (place).
 - 9. Gutes Gespräch kürzet den Weg.

- 10. Ein gebranntes Kind scheut das Feuer.
- 11. Es regnet Bratwürste! (This is an odd description of a down-pour!)
- 12. Ich bin ein Berliner.

Vocabulary (Words marked * should be memorized eventually. Words with an * are on my important word list in Appendix B, and should be memorized. I will usually list each important word in the chapter vocabulary three times, and then omit it.) Note: **Plurals of nouns are listed in parentheses.**

- * die **Antwort** (-en)—answer
- * der Arzt (-e)—doctor
- * auch—also
 der Berliner (-)—Berliner; doughnut
 die Bratwurst (-e)—sausage
 brauchen—to need
- * **brechen** (bricht)—to break
- * bringen—to bring
- * denken—to think
- * der, das, die—the
- * **du**—you (informal)
- * ein, eine—a, one
- * er—he
- * es—it
- * essen (ist)—to eat das Feuer (-)—fire
- * finden—to find
- * die Frau (-en)—woman. wife
- * geben (gibt)—to give gebrannt—burned
- * das **Gesicht** (-er)—face
- das Gespräch (-e)—conversation
- * gut—good
- * haben (hat)—to have
- **heilen**—to heal
- * helfen (hilft)—to help
- * das Herz (-en)—heart
- * ich—I
- * ihr—you (informal, pl.)
- * kein—no das Kind (-er)—child der Kirchhof (-e)—graveyard

- **kürzen**—to shorten
- * lassen (läßt)—to let, to leave lesen (liest)—to read
 - lügen—to lie, fib
- * der Mann ("er) man, husband
- * der Mensch (-en) -person der Narr (-en)—fool die Natur (-en)—nature
 - die ivatur (-en)--nature
- * nehmen (nimmt)—to take
- * **neu**—new
- * **nicht**—not der **Ort** (-e)—place

regnen—to rain der Richter (-)—judge

- * sagen—to say, speak
 scheuen—to avoid
- * schön—beautiful
- * sehen (sieht)—to see
- * **sein** (ist)—to be
- * **sie**—she, they
- * Sie—you (formal)
- * sprechen (spricht) to speak
- * viel-many, much
- wachsen (wächst)—to grow
- * die Wahrheit (-en)—truth
- waschen (wäscht)—to wash
- * der **Weg** (-e)—way, path
- * werden (wird)—to become
- * wir—we
- * wissen (weiß)—to know
- * das **Wort** (-e or -er) --- word

2.10. It is important to begin memorizing German vocabulary words as soon as possible, as it will allow you more time to concentrate on grammar. Here are some suggestions to make memorization easier:

- I. Some words are easy to memorize: *Garten*-garden; *kalt*-cold; *komisch*-comic. Allow yourself to remember them.
- 2. Treat memorizing a word like remembering a person's name. When you see an unfamiliar word that you must memorize, say it and the definition several times and find some meaningful link to make it more memorable. Adverbs are especially difficult to memorize because it is more difficult to establish a link with them. However, anything goes! The adverb schon means already; "He was already (schon) happy because the sun shone" might be a useful mnemonic device. Different words require different strategies. Allow yourself to use the best strategy for the word required, rather than using the same strategy for all words.
- 3. Take the time to learn the word correctly in the first place. It will pay off in the long run.
- 4. If you have established a false link (you think *noch* means "after," rather than "still,") try to undo this link as soon as possible, as it will plague you until you do. Remind yourself of the correct definition, and try to think about it during the day, or when trying to fall asleep. Try not to allow yourself to think of any word as "the word I always forget." Pretend the word is a competitor, and by learning it you have won a game.
- 5. Keep a list of words you often forget, and place them where you can refer to them easily. Highlight words in your dictionaries so you can find them more quickly as well.
- 6. Try to memorize a few words at a time. Anytime words all start sounding the same is a time to stop trying to memorize them.
- 7. Place words on post-it notes, and scatter them throughout your home.
- 8. If a word appears in an especially vivid sentence, write the sentence down for future reference.
- 9. Use every opportunity you can to memorize words. Pay special attention to the recurring words in the grammar explanations, and you might be able to remember them without setting aside special time to memorize them.
- 10. Find a friend to memorize words with you.

2.11. Vocabulary aid: guess and memorize the words in the following sentences:

- 1. Fräulein Meier hat zwei gute Katzen.
- 2. Sie ist schön.

14 German Quickly

- 3. Die Kinder sind gut.
- 4. Er hilft viel

Akropolis

Schottland

- 5. Ich weiß nicht.
- 6. Der Arzt hilft nicht.
- 7. Oft sagen sie die Wahrheit.
- 8. Er ißt die Bratwurst. (Is Bratwurst singular or plural?)

Kiew

Wien Sibirien

2.12. Guess the following place names:

Asien	Mittelamerika
Bangladesch	Neufundland
Belgien	Neuseeland
Bolivien	Niederlande
Brasilien	Nordpol
Eiffelturm	Polen
Florenz	Rom
Griechenland	Rußland/Russland
Grönland	Sarajewo
Großbritannien	Kap der Guten Hoffnung

Herzegowina Sibirien
Indien Singapur
Irak Troya
Irland Türkei
Jugoslawien Venedig

The Case Endings: Nominative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative

(I am dividing this chapter into two parts because it is too long to be assimilated in one assignment; however, I believe that the chapters should be considered a unit.)

There are four different cases of German articles, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. These cases are the nominative, accusative, genitive, and dative.

3.1. The **nominative** is the subject of the sentence, and it can also be the predicate noun (any noun after the verbs "to be," "to become," or "to remain"). Examples are:

Der Dichter schreibt gut—The writer writes well.

Das Kind ist ein guter Spielkamerad—The child is a good playmate.

Die Katze schläft viel-The cat sleeps a lot

Die Frauen bleiben gute Freundinnen-The women remain good friends.

In the nominative case, the definite article, which indicates both the gender and case of the noun, is:

der for masculine nouns (der Dichter)
das for neuter nouns (das Kind)
die for both feminine and plural nouns (die Katze, die Frauen)

3.2. The **accusative** is like the English direct object; it is the object of most verbs (including the verb *haben*—to have), and of some prepositions (listed in Chapter 5). Examples are:

Der Brieftriger tötet den Wolf (masculine)—The mailman kills the wolf.

Das Kind hält das Stofftier (neuter)—The child holds the stuffed animal.

Die Katze genießt die Katzenminze (feminine)—The cat enjoys the catnip.

Die Studenten schreiben die Aufsätze (plural)—The students write the essays.

Note that in any sentence, the subject will always have a more "active" role than an object. In English, the subject will nearly always precede the verb, while the object will usually follow it.

The accusative article is *den* for masculine nouns, *das* for neuter nouns, and *die* for feminine and plural nouns. Note that the accusative article is the same as the nominative article with the exception of the masculine gender (*). Here is a chart:

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	der*	das	die	die
accusative	den*	das	die	die

3.3. The difference in articles is extremely important because sometimes in German the object will appear *before* the verb:

Den Mann tötet der Wolf (nominative) — The wolf kills the man. Die Frau liebt der Mann (nominative) — The man loves the woman.

If you see den in a sentence, it will never be the subject.

If you see *der* in a sentence attached to an "obvious" masculine noun *(der Mann, der Professor, der Wolf)*, it will always be the subject, which means you will have to put the noun in front of the verb when you are translating the sentence into English.

Note also that if the first noun in the German sentence is singular and the verb is plural, or if the first noun in the German sentence is plural and the verb is singular, the object is again appearing *before* the verb, and therefore, the word order will have to be switched in your English translation:

Die Frau tötet die Männer-The men kill the woman.

Die Männer tötet die Frau-The woman kills the men.

3.4. However, German usually "plays fair." The word order will be the same as in English if there is no obvious clue:

Die Mutter liebt die Tochter—The mother loves the daughter.

Das Kind liebt die Katze-The child loves the cat.

The main exception to this is when the subject is obvious:

Das Brot ist das Kind—The child eats the bread.

3.5. Translate these sentences, noting the case and, if possible, the gender of each noun (remember that cognates are marked by italics):

- I. [Die] Übung (practice) macht den Meister.
- 2. Der hinkende (limping) Bote (messenger) bringt die Wahrheit.
- 3. [Ein] Anfang ist kein Meisterstück (*masterpiece*). (In other words, you cannot be an expert when starting something new.)
- 4. Fleiß (effort) bricht Eis. (What is the verb infinitive of bricht? Be careful.)
- 5. Die Wahrheit hat ein schönes Angesicht (face), aber zerrissene (torn) Kleider.
- 6. Ein Zwerg (dwarf) bleibt immer ein Zwerg.
- 7. Hast bricht Beine.
- 8. Bauern lieben lange Bratwürste und kurze Predigten.
- 9. Unglück hat breite Füße. (This is a strange proverb!)
- 10. Arbeit überwindet (overcomes) alle Schwierigkeiten.
- 11. Den Wolf tötet der Bauer.

Vocabulary (words marked * should be memorized; you might wish to start making flash cards for them)

- * all—all, every
- * der Anfang (-e)—beginning das Angesicht—face, countenance
- * die Arbeit (-en)—work der Bauer (-n)—farmer das Bein (-e)—leg
- * bleiben—to remain die Bratwurst ("e)—sausage
- * brechen (bricht)—to break

- * breit—wide, broad
- * **bringen**—to bring das **Eis** (-)—ice
- * der **Fleiß**—effort der **Fuß** (-e)—foot die **Hast**—haste
- * immer—always
 das Kleid (-er)—dress, clothes
- * kurz-short

der for masculine nouns (der Dichter)
das for neuter nouns (das Kind)
die for both feminine and plural nouns (die Katze, die Frauen)

3.2. The **accusative** is like the English direct object; it is the object of most verbs (including the verb *haben*—to have), and of some prepositions (listed in Chapter 5). Examples are:

Der Brieftriger tötet den Wolf (masculine)—The mailman kills the wolf.

Das Kind hält das Stofftier (neuter)—The child holds the stuffed animal.

Die Katze genießt die Katzenminze (feminine)—The cat enjoys the catnip.

Die Studenten schreiben die Aufsätze (plural)—The students write the essavs.

Note that in any sentence, the subject will always have a more "active" role than an object. In English, the subject will nearly always precede the verb, while the object will usually follow it.

The accusative article is *den* for masculine nouns, *das* for neuter nouns, and *die* for feminine and plural nouns. Note that the accusative article is the same as the nominative article with the exception of the masculine gender (*). Here is a chart:

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	der*	das	die	die
accusative	den*	das	die	die

3.3. The difference in articles is extremely important because sometimes in German the object will appear *before* the verb:

Den Mann tötet der Wolf (nominative) — The wolf kills the man. Die Frau liebt der Mann (nominative) — The man loves the woman.

If you see den in a sentence, it will never be the subject.

If you see *der* in a sentence attached to an "obvious" masculine noun *(der Mann, der Professor, der Wolf)*, it will always be the subject, which means you will have to put the noun in front of the verb when you are translating the sentence into English.

Note also that if the first noun in the German sentence is singular and the verb is plural, or if the first noun in the German sentence is plural and the verb is singular, the object is again appearing *before* the verb, and therefore, the word order will have to be switched in your English translation:

Die Frau tötet die Männer—The men kill the woman.

Die Männer tötet die Frau—The woman kills the men.

3.4. However, German usually "plays fair." The word order will be the same as in English if there is no obvious clue:

Die Mutter liebt die Tochter—The mother loves the daughter.

Das Kind liebt die Katze—The child loves the cat.

The main exception to this is when the subject is obvious:

Das Brot ist **das** Kind—The child eats the bread.

3.5. Translate these sentences, noting the case and, if possible, the gender of each noun (remember that cognates are marked by italics):

- I. [Die] Übung (practice) macht den Meister.
- 2. Der hinkende (limping) Bote (messenger) bringt die Wahrheit.
- 3. [Ein] Anfang ist kein Meisterstück (*masterpiece*). (In other words, you cannot be an expert when starting something new.)
- 4. Fleiß (effort) bricht Eis. (What is the verb infinitive of bricht? Be careful.)
- 5. Die Wahrheit hat ein schönes Angesicht (face), aber zerrissene (torn) Kleider.
- 6. Ein Zwerg (dwarf) bleibt immer ein Zwerg.
- 7. Hast bricht Beine.
- 8. Bauern lieben lange Bratwürste und kurze Predigten.
- 9. Unglück hat breite Füße. (This is a strange proverb!)
- 10. Arbeit überwindet (overcomes) alle Schwierigkeiten.
- 11. Den Wolf tötet der Bauer.

Vocabulary (words marked * should be memorized; you might wish to start making flash cards for them)

- * **all**—all, every
- * der **Anfang** (-e)—beginning das **Angesicht**—face, countenance
- * die **Arbeit** (-en)—work der **Bauer** (-n)—farmer das **Bein** (-e)—leg
- * bleiben—to remain die Bratwurst ("e)—sausage
- * **brechen** (bricht)—to break

- * breit-wide, broad
- * bringen—to bring das Eis (-)—ice
- * der **Fleiß**—effort der **Fuß** ("e)—foot die **Hast**—haste
 - * immer—always das Kleid (-er)—dress, clothes
 - * kurz-short

- * lang—long
- * lieben—to love
- * machen—to do, make der Meister (-)—master das Meisterstück (-e)—masterpiece die Predigt (-en)—sermon

die **Schwierigkeit** (-en)—difficulty **töten**—to kill

die Übung (-en)—practice das Unglück (-e)—misfortune

- * die **Wahrheit** (-en)—truth der **Zwerg** (-e)—dwarf
- **3.6.** The genitive is a form used to indicate possession. It is also used with some prepositions (see 5.13), verbs, and some time phrases.

When the genitive appears (and when it is not the object of a preposition or a verb), an "of" must be added in order to have a correct translation. Examples are:

Der Freund des Vaters (masculine) ist hier—The friend of the father is here.

Das Lieblingstier des Kindes (neuter) ist ein Panther—The favorite animal of the child is a panther.

Die Mutter der Braut (feminine) ist noch schön—The mother of the bride is still beautiful.

Die Freunde der Studenten (plural) sind intelligent—The friends of the students are intelligent.

3.7. The genitive article is *des* for masculine and neuter nouns, and it is *der* for feminine and plural nouns. Whenever you see the article *des*, the noun will always be in the genitive case, and it will always be singular. It will never be plural!!! When the genitive is used with masculine and neuter nouns, the nouns generally will have an -s or an -es ending:

Glück ist die Mutter *des* Unglücks—Fortune is the mother of misfortune. Die Leidenschaften sind die Würzen *des* Lebens—The passions are the spices of life.

The genitive noun usually will follow the noun it possesses:

Sie ist die Mutter des Kindes—She is the mother of the child. Vorsicht ist die Mutter der Weisheit—Caution is the mother of wisdom. Reichtum ist die Stiefmutter der Tugend—Wealth is the stepmother of virtue.

However, a genitive noun occasionally will precede the noun it possesses:

Der Mund ist *des Bauches* Henker—The mouth is *the stomach's* hangman. Armut ist *der Künste* Mutter—Poverty is *the arts'* mother. Die Welt ist des *Teufels* Braut—The world is *the devil's* bride.

3.8. The genitive of proper nouns can be written in either of the following two ways:

Er ist Homers Student—He is Homer's student.

Er ist der Student Homers—He is the student of Homer.

Be careful when you see a proper noun with an s on it. There obviously is a big difference between "He is the student, Homers" and "He is the student of Homer."

Even feminine proper nouns take a genitive -s ending:

Er ist ein Freund Fräulein Meiers—He is a friend of Fräulein Meier.

3.9. Translate these sentences, noting the case and gender of each noun:

- 1. Der Löwe ist der König der Tiere.
- 2. Der Wille ist die Seele des Werkes.
- 3. Selbsterkenntnis ist der Anfang der Besserung.
- 4. Eile (haste) ist die Mutter der Unvollkommenheit (imperfection).
- 5. Die Augen sind der Spiegel (mirror) der Seele.
- 6. Die Ziege (goat) ist die Kuh des kleinen Mannes.
- 7. Flüche sind des Teufels Sprüche.
- 8. Das unordentliche Leben der Leute ist das Wohlleben (well-being) der Ärzte.
- 9. Der Schatten der Tugend ist Ehre.
- 10. Den Freund des Arztes liebt die junge Frau.
- 11. Ruhe ist der Tagelohn (daily reward) der Arbeiter. (Is Arbeiter singular or plural? How do you know?)

Vocabulary Note: genitive and plural endings of masculine and neuter nouns and plural endings of feminine nouns are listed in parentheses; genitive endings are given first: der Arbeiter (-s, -): des Arbeiters (genitive); die Arbeiter (plural)

- * die Arbeit (-en)—work der Arbeiter (-s, -)—worker * der Arzt (-es, -e)—doctor das Auge (-s, -en)—eye die **Besserung** (-en)—improvement die Ehre (-n)—honor der Fluch (-es, -e)—curse
- * **klein**—small (here it means poor)

- die **Ruhe**—rest der **Schatten** (-s, -)—shadow
 - die Seele (-n)—soul
 - die Selbsterkenntnis-self-knowledge
 - der Spiegel (-s, -) mirror
 - der Spruch (-es, -e) maxim, saying
 - der Teufel (-s, -) devil
 - das Tier (-es, -e)—animal, beast

die **Mutter** (=)—mother

* das **Leben** (-s, -)—life der **Löwe** (-n, -n)—lion

* die **Leute** (pl.)—people * der Mann (-es, -er) — man, husband

die **Ziege** (-n)—goat

die **Tugend** (-en)—virtue das Werk (-es, -e)—work

das Wohlleben (-s, -)—well-being

* der **Wille** (-ns, -)—will

The Case Endings: Dative Case

3.10. The dative is used for indirect objects, and it is the object of some prepositions (see Chapter 5) and of some verbs such as helfen (to help), folgen (to follow), antworten (to answer), glauben (to believe), and gehören (to belong to). When the dative is used as the object of a verb or of a preposition, you can translate the sentence literally, as you would in English:

Der Student hilft dem Professor—The student helps the professor.

Das Kind spielt mit der *Katze*—The child plays with *the* cat.

Fräulein Meier antwortet dem Briefträger-Fräulein Meier answers the mailman.

At other times, however, a "to" or a "for" must be added so that the sentence will make sense:

Dem Fuchs sind die Trauben zu sauer-For the fox, the grapes are too sour.

Das Kind ist *der Mutter* eine Freude—The child is a joy *for the mother*.

Die Erklärung ist dem Professor nicht klar-The explanation is not clear to the professor.

3.11. Here are masculine, neuter, feminine, and plural examples of the dative:

Der Mann schreibt dem Freund (masculine) den Brief—The man writes the friend the letter (or: The man writes the letter to the friend).

Das Kind gibt *dem Tier (neuter)* das Essen—The child gives *the animal* the food (or: The child gives the food *to the animal*).

Die Mutter gibt der Tochter (feminine) die Blumen—The mother gives the daughter the flowers (or: The mother gives the flowers to the daughter).

Die Eltern schreiben den Kindern (plural) Briefe—The parents write the children letters (or: The parents write letters to the children).

The dative article is *dem* for masculine and neuter nouns, it is *der* for feminine nouns, and it is *den* for plural nouns.

Moreover, the dative endings for all plural nouns will always be -n. Here are examples:

Die Männer helfen den Männern—The men help the men.

Die Kinder folgen *den* Kinder*n*—The children follow the children.

Die Frauen antworten den Frauen—The women answer the women.

A review question: In what other instances does the ending on the noun indicate the case of the noun?

3.12. Also note that in a sentence which begins with the subject, the noun in the dative case will always precede the noun in the accusative or predicate nominative case:

Die Mutter (nominative) singt dem Kind (dative) das Lied (accusative)—The mother sings (to) the child the song.

Der Sohn (nominative) ist dem Vater (dative) eine Freude (predicate nominative)—The son is a joy to the father.

3.13. Because *der* can be either dative feminine or genitive feminine, its placement in the clause is crucial. Compare:

Die Reise ist *der Frau (dative)* unangenehm—The trip is unpleasant for the woman. Die Reise *der Frau (genitive)* ist unangenehm—The trip of the woman is unpleasant. (Or: The woman's trip is unpleasant.)

Er beschreibt der Frau (dative) den Begriff—He describes the concept to the woman. Er beschreibt den Begriff der Frau (genitive)—He describes the woman's concept.

- **3.14.** Translate these sentences, being particularly aware of nouns in the dative case for which you must supply a "to" or a "for":
 - I. Der Winter schadet (harms) dem flieisigen Hamster nicht.
 - 2. [Die] Geduld (patience) ist der Seele ein Schild (shield).
 - 3. Der Frau ist die Arbeit unangenehm. (You will learn in chapter 4 why *unangenehm* cannot modify *Arbeit.*)
- 4. Alles schmeckt (tastes) dem hungrigen Bauch (stomach) wohl.
- 5. Die Bedeutung (meaning) des Dramas bleibt den Zuschauern (viewers) ein Rätsel (riddle, puzzle).
- 6. Das Kind sagt der Mutter die Wahrheit.
- 7. Fräulein Meier bäckt dem Briefträger einen Apfelkuchen.
- 8. Der Professor erklärt den Studenten das Problem.
- 9. Die Arbeit der Frau ist schwer.
- 10. Den Studenten gefällt (pleases) das Lernen der deutschen Sprache hoffentlich.

Vocabulary (verbs marked *i* are intransitive, which means they cannot take a direct object; reminder: the first notation in parentheses for masculine and neuter nouns is the genitive *singular* ending, while the second notation is the plural ending)

- * alles—everything der Apfelkuchen (-s, -)—apple cake der Bauch (-es, -e)—belly, stomach
- * bleiben (i)—to remain das Drama (-s, -en)—drama erklären—to explain
- * fleißig—industrious die Geduld—patience hoffentlich—hopefully das Lernen (-s, -)—learning
- * nicht—not das Rätsel (-s, -)—riddle, puzzle

- * sagen—to say schaden (i)—to harm der Schild (-s, -e)—shield schmecken (i)—to taste schwer—difficult die Seele (-n)—soul
- * die Sprache (-n)—language unangenehm—unpleasant
- * die Wahrheit (-en)—truth
- * wohl—good, well der Zuschauer (-s, -)—viewer, audience
- **3.15.** Here is a chart for all forms for both the definite (*der*) and indefinite (*ein*) articles. Both the definite and indefinite articles have the same endings except for the masculine and neuter nominative and the neuter accusative (note the asterisks on the chart). Because *ein* by definition cannot be plural, I am showing the plural form of this paradigm by using *kein* (no).

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	der	das	die	die
	ein*	ein*	eine	keine
accusative	den	das	die	die
	einen	ein*	eine	keine
genitive	des	des	der	der
	eines	eines	einer	keiner
dative	dem	dem	der	den
	einem	einem	einer	keinen

3.16. Here is another table to help you become more familiar with these endings:

der can be:

masculine nominative: Der Mann ist hier—The man is here.

feminine genitive: Der Freund der Frau ist alt—The friend of the woman is old. plural genitive: Der Freund der Frauen ist alt—The friend of the women is old. feminine dative: Der Freund schreibt der Frau eine E-mail—The friend writes an e-mail to the woman.

(At least der can never be accusative!)

das can be:

neuter nominative: Das Buch ist interessant—The book is interesting. neuter accusative: Der Student liest das Buch—The student reads the book.

die can be:

feminine nominative: *Die Frau* ist hier—*The woman* is here. plural nominative: *Die Frauen* sind hier—*The women* are here.

feminine accusative: Der Mann sieht die Frau—The man sees the woman. plural accusative: Der Mann sieht die Frauen—The man sees the women.

des can be:

masculine genitive: Der Sohn *des Mannes* ist hier—The son *of the man* is here. neuter genitive: Die Katze *des Kindes* ist klein—The cat *of the child* is small.

dem can be:

masculine dative: Wer gibt dem Mann den Brief? — Who gives the letter to the man? neuter dative: Wer singt dem Kind das Lied? — Who sings the song to the child?

den can be:

masculine accusative: Der Mann tötet den Wolf-The man kills the wolf.

plural dative: Die Frau schreibt den Männern-The woman writes (to) the men.

- 3.17. Review: most of the time, the case of the noun is revealed by the article, and there are no case ending markers on the nouns. However, there are three exceptions!!!
 - 1 & 2. masculine and neuter genitive nouns: des Mannes; des Buches
 - 3. dative plural nouns: den Kindern; den Häusern; den Regeln
- **3.18. Translate the following sentences;** state the gender and case of each noun (the vocabularly list is on p. 27):
- Der Freund der Verlobten (engaged couple) sendet der Mutter der Braut eine E-mail.
- 2. Die Mutter und die Kinder sehen die Kuh und die Kälber.
- 3. Das Kind liest das Kinderbuch.
- 4. Die Frau des Arztes bezweifelt (doubts) die Wahrheit des Sprichwortes.
- 5. Die Mutter kocht dem Vater und dem Kind ein gutes Essen (meal).
- 6. Der Professor zeigt den Studenten den Film.
- 7. Fräulein Meier schenkt der Briefträger eine rote Rose.
- **3.19.** There are also some other words that have the same case endings as the definite articles, *der*, *das*, and *die*. They are:

dieser (this one): Dieser Mann ist nett—This man is nice.

jeder (each, every): Jedes Kind ist interessant—Every child is interesting.

mancher (some, many a): Manche Sprichwörter sind wahr—Some proverbs are true.

solcher (such): Solch ein Mensch ist ein guter Freund—Such a person is a good friend.

welcher (what, which): Welche Katze ist freundlich?—Which cat is friendly?

Note that *dieser* means *this* when it is singular and *these* only when it is plural. Compare:

Dieser Mann kennt diese Frau—This man knows this woman.

Diese Männer kennen diese Frauen—These men know these women.

Note also the difference between *dieses* when it is neuter nominative (or accusative) and when it is neuter genitive:

Dieses Kind (nominative) ist müde—This child is tired.

Die Eltern dies**es** Kind**es** (genitive) sind müde—The parents of this child are tired.

3.20. The case endings must be memorized! Although you probably can read most sentences at this point without knowing case endings, you will run into trouble later when sentences become more complicated. In fact, if you do not understand cases and if you cannot identify case endings, you simply will not be able to read German. Make certain that you understand these case ending chapters and review them often if you need to. (The subsequent chapters will also help you memorize these endings.)

When I discuss word order in Chapter Six, I will indicate in detail the way that the subject can appear on either side of the verb. When the subject appears on the "other" side of the verb, recognition of case endings is crucial even in short sentences. Here are examples:

Ein vorwitziges Schäflein (accusative) frißt der Wolf (nominative)—The wolf eats an impertinent little sheep.

Der Tugend (dative) ist kein Ziel (nominative) zu hoch—No goal is too high for virtue.

3.21. Translate these sentences, indicating the gender and case of each noun. (If you are unaccustomed to recognizing case endings, it is a good idea to continue identifying the cases of nouns in future lessons until the process becomes automatic. Do not be surprised if memorizing the case endings takes you a long time.)

- 1. Wiederholung ist die Mutter der Weisheit.
- 2. Die *Erde* bedeckt die Fehler der Ärzte. (Doctors tend not to fare very well in German proverbs!)
- 3. Der ganzen *Welt* leuchtet die *Sonne*. (What is the subject of this sentence? Be careful!)
- 4. Fleiß ist der Vater des Glückes.
- 5. Der Segen der Eltern baut den Kindern [die] Häuser. (This is difficult—it contains all four cases.)
- 6. Gesundheit ist die Tochter der Arbeit.
- 7. Ein böses (guilty) Gewissen (conscience) ist der Vorgeschmack (foretaste) der Hölle.
- 8. Man entgeht (avoids) vielleicht der Strafe, aber man entgeht nicht dem Gewissen.
- 9. Zeit ist die Arznei des Zorns.
- 10. Jedes Ding hat zwei Seiten.
- 11. Der Tochter schreibt der Vater.

- 12. Das *gestohlene Brot* schmeckt dem Mann *gut*; aber *am Ende (finally)* hat er den Mund voller *(full of)* Kieselsteine. (Proverbs)
- 13. Wir sind die Kinder Gottes.
- 14. Was Fliegen (flies—the insect) sind den müßigen (idle) Knaben, das sind wir den Göttern. (König Lear) (Note that Knaben and Göttern are in the dative case. Are they singular or plural?)

Vocabulary (Please memorize words marked *; words marked ** will no longer appear in the chapter vocabularies.)

- * aber—but, however
- ** die Arbeit (-en)—work
- ** der Arzt (-es, -e)—doctor die Arznei (-en)—medicine
- * bauen—to build bedecken—to cover
- * böse—bad, guilty
- * **dies**—this, these
- * das **Ding** (-es, -e)—thing die **Eltern** (pl.)—parents
- entgehen (i)—to escape

 * die Erde (-n)—earth
- der **Freund** (-es, -e)—friend
- * der **Fehler** (-s, -)—error
- * der **Fleiß** (-es)—effort die **Fliege** (-n)—fly
- * ganz—entire
 gestohlen—stolen

das Gewissen (-s, -)—conscience

- * das Glück (-es)—happiness, luck
- * der Gott (-es, =er)—God, god das Haus (-es, =er)—house die Hölle (-n)—hell
- * jeder (jedes, jede . . .)—each, every das Kalb (-es, -er)—calf

- der **Kieselstein** (-es, -e)—pebble die **Kuh** (-e)—cow
- der **Knabe** (-n, -n)—boy, knave **leuchten** (i)—illuminate
- * man—one (always a prounoun) der Mund (-es, -er)—mouth
- * nicht—not schenken—to give as a present schmecken (i)—to taste
- * schwer—difficult
 die Seele (-n)—soul
 der Segen (-s, -)—blessing
 die Seite (-n)—side
 senden—to send
 die Sonne—sun
 das Sprichwort (-s, =er)—proverb
 die Strafe (-n)—punishment
- * vielleicht—perhaps
- * die Weisheit—wisdom die Wiederholung (-en)—repetition

die Tochter (=) - daughter

- * zeigen—to show
- * die **Zeit** (-en)—time der **Zorn** (-s, -)—wrath

3.22. Vocabulary Aid

- 1. Die Leute sagen oft die Wahrheit.
- 2. Dieses Sprichwort ist nicht wahr.
- 3. Die Bedeutung (meaning) dieses Sprichwortes ist unklar.

4. Der Briefträger tut viel.

28

German Quickly

- 5. Alles schmeckt dem hungrigen Mann gut.
- 6. Jeder Freund des Briefträgers kennt Fräulein Meier.
- 7. Das Glück ist allzu kurz.
- 8. Die Antwort ist diesen Studenten unklar.
- 9. Die Katzen sind in der Küche.
- 10. Dem Sohn sendet die Mutter eine E-Mail.
- io. Dem Sohn sendet die Mutter eine E-Mail.
- 11. Ein guter Mensch hat viele Freunde.

Adjectives and Adverbs

4.1. Adjectives

An adjective is a word that is used to modify a noun. Common adjectives are: **alt** (old), **jung** (young), **groß** (large, great), **klein** (small), and **gut** (good).

When adjectives appear directly before a noun with no article in front of them, they will have "strong" case endings which are similar to the endings of the definite article (*der, das, die*). A "strong" ending is simply one that reveals the gender and case of the noun. Here is a chart comparing definite article endings and strong adjective endings:

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	der Wein	das Essen	die Lampe	die Freunde
	guter Wein	gutes Essen	rote Lampe	neue Freunde
accusative	den Wein	das Essen	die Lampe	die Freunde
	guten Wein	gutes Essen	rote Lampe	neue Freunde
genitive	*des Weins	*des Essens	der Lampe	der Freunde
	guten Weins	guten Essens	roter Lampe	neuer Freunde
dative	dem Wein	dem Essen	der Lampe	den Freunden
	gutem Wein	gutem Essen	roter Lampe	neuen Freunden

^{*} Note that the definite article endings and strong adjective endings are identical in all instances except for masculine and neuter genitive, which you will encounter rarely.

Here are examples:

Nominative: Guter Wein ist teuer—Good wine is expensive.

Accusative: Fräulein Meier trinkt *guten* Wein gern—Fräulein Meier likes to drink *good wine.*

Genitive: Die Farbe *guten* Weins ist manchmal rot—The color *of good wine* is sometimes red.

Dative: Der Student ist mit *gutem* Wein zufrieden—The student is satisfied with *good wine*.

Adjectives are most frequently strong when they appear in plural cases:

Gute Freunde teilen viele Geheimnisse—Good friends share many secrets.

Die Eltern kleiner Kinder sind oft müde—The parents of small children are often tired.

4.2. Adjectives also will have strong endings when they succeed the indefinite article (ein) in masculine and neuter nominative cases and in the neuter accusative case. Here are examples:

Ein guter Mann (masculine nominative) ist hier—A good man is here.

Ein gutes Kind (neuter nominative) ist hier—A good child is here.

Der Mann kennt ein gutes Kind (neuter accusative)—The man knows a good child.

Because in these cases the indefinite article *ein* does not reveal the gender of the noun, the adjective following *ein* (guter, gutes) will tell you the gender instead.

All definite and indefinite articles are strong (since they are always the first adjectives to modify the noun; i.e., one always says: "the good cat" rather than "good the cat"). Other adjectives that are always strong are the possessive adjectives (mein—my; dein—your, sein—his, its; ihr—her, their; unser—our; euer—your, and Ihr—your [see 7.8-9]); kein—no; and the der words (dieser—this, this one; jeder—each, every; solcher—such; and welcher—which, what).

Any adjective (such as *old*, *new*, *happy*, etc.) can be strong when it is the only adjective modifying a noun. Examples are:

Alte Freunde sind gute Freunde—Old friends are good friends.
Gutes Gespräch kürzt den Weg—Good conversation shortens the way.

4.3. However, most adjectives follow an article or some other adjective, which is always strong. Here are examples:

Das gute Beispiel ist nützlich—The good example is helpful.

Die Katze des netten Mannes ist dick—The cat of the nice man is fat.

Eine freundliche Grüße ist immer willkommen—A friendly greeting is always welcome.

Jede neue Aufgabe ist schwer—Each new task is difficult.

Whenever an adjective follows an article or a *der* word, it will end in either *-e* or *-en*. The endings for these adjectives are called "weak" endings because, unlike the endings of articles or other strong adjectives, they do not reveal the gender or case of the noun. Here is a chart:

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural*
nominative	der gute Wein	das neue Auto	die rote Lampe	die alten Katzen
accusative	den guten Wein	das neue Auto	die rote Lampe	die alten Katzen
genitive	des guten Weins	des neuen Autos	der roten Lampe	der alten Katzen
dative	dem guten Wein	dem neuen Auto	der roten Lampe	den alten Katzen

^{*}Note that the plural weak ending is always -en, so die + -en on the end of an adjective will always be plural!

Whenever adjectives appear before nouns they **always** will have endings; the endings will be:

-e, -en, -es, -er, or possibly -em.

4.4. If two or more adjectives (other than articles or *der* words, etc.) stand together, they generally will have the same endings. They both will have strong endings if they are not preceded by an article, and they will have weak endings if they are preceded by an article. Here are examples:

Schwarze dicke Nashörner sind im Zoo—Fat black rhinoceri are in the zoo. (strong endings)

Die schwarzen dicken Nashörner sind im Zoo—The fat black rhinoceri are in the zoo. (weak endings)

4.5. When an adjective normally ends in -el or -er, the -e will be omitted whenever the adjective has an ending. Here are examples of such adjectives: teuer, ungeheuer, übel, and dunkel. Compare:

Der Wein ist teuer; Der teure Wein schmeckt gut—The expensive wine tastes good. Das Tier ist ungeheuer; Das ungeheure Tier ist gefährlich—The monstrous animal is dangerous.

Die Hexe ist übel; Die üble Hexe ist häßlich—The evil witch is ugly.

4.6. An adjective with either a strong or a weak ending will always appear immediately before the noun it modifies, not afterwards. Eine junge Katze—a young cat

In this respect, German is not like French or Spanish.

4.7. Adjectives that do not appear before the noun they modify will not take an ending. However, such adjectives will always be predicate adjectives (adjectives following verbs such as to be, to become, to look, taste, feel, smell, seem, appear, etc.) Here are examples:

Die Kerze ist rot—The candle is red.

Das Essen schmeckt gut—The food tastes good.
Es wird dunkel—It is growing dark.

4.8. Adverbs

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. Common adverbs are: heute (today), bald (soon), hier (here), dort (there), doch (nevertheless), auch (also, even), noch (still), sehr (very), ganz (very, entirely), vielleicht (perhaps), meistens (for the most part, mostly), darum (therefore), aber (but, however), fast (almost), and nicht (not).

Adverbs will usually be found close to the words they modify. Here are examples of adverbs:

Das Kind geht oft in den Zoo-The child often goes to the zoo.

Der sehr fleißige Briefträger ist immer hier—The very industrious mailman is always here.

Vielleicht ist Fräulein Meier deshalb meistens morgens zu Hause—Perhaps Fräulein Meier is therefore mostly (or usually) at home mornings (or in the morning).

However, if *nicht* or another adverb appears at the end of the clause, it will negate the verb: Der Winter schadet dem fleißigen Hamster *nicht*—The winter does *not* harm the industrious hamster.

4.9. Noncomparative adverbs will never have a special ending, as adjectives do. In fact, adverbs often can be differentiated from adjectives only by whether or not they have endings. For example, Sie hat ein *schönes*, gemaltes Bild—She has a *beautiful*, painted picture (a painted picture, which also happens to be beautiful) is different from: Sie hat ein *schön* gemaltes Bild—She has a *beautifully* painted picture (a picture, which may have an ugly scene, but is still painted beautifully).

It is extremely important to remember that any descriptive words that do not have endings and that are not predicate adjectives will **always** be adverbs! Here are more examples:

Der Zug fährt langsam nach Berlin-The train goes slowly to Berlin.

Der Kolibri summt *leise* in der Finsternis—The hummingbird hums *softly* in the darkness.

Ein Reh steht still und verklärt wie im Traum—A deer stands quietly and radiantly as if in a dream.

However, German adverbs and predicate adjectives will have the same form:

Fräulein Meier schreibt *gut*—Fräulein Meier writes *well.* (adverb) Fräulein Meier ist *gut*—Fräulein Meier is *good.* (predicate adjective)

4.10. Here are the most common types of adverbs. This is to give you a general idea of adverbs, and is not meant to overwhelm you.

A. Adverbs indicating time (cf. Appendix G)

morgens (mornings), abends (evenings), nachts (nights), damals (at that time), bald (soon), dann (then), oft (often), schon (already), immer (always), nun (now), lange (for a long time), endlich (finally).

B. Adverbs indicating place

hier (here), dort (there), überall (everywhere).

C. Adverbs indicating "manner"

- 1. Limitation: fast (almost), ungefähr (approximately).
- 2. Extension: außerdem (moreover), sonst (otherwise), auch (also, even), sogar (even), ziemlich (rather), noch (still), eigentlich (actually), vielmehr (rather).
- 3. Exaggeration: sehr (very), recht (really), besonders (especially), ganz (quite, very, entirely).

- 4. Caution: vielleicht (perhaps), möglich (possibly), wahrscheinlich (probably).
- 5. Extent: meistens (mostly, for the most part), wenigstens (at least), zu (too), genug (enough).
- 6. Cause or reason: daher (therefore), darum (therefore), deshalb (on that account), dahei (thereby).

4.11. Note that many words have different meanings depending on whether they are adjectives or adverbs. *Gleich, gerade, eben, lauter* (see your Troublesome Word list, 36.1) are examples.

Die Freunde haben die *gleichen* Meinungen—The friends have the *same* opinions. (adjective)

Der Vater des Briefträgers geht *gleich* weg—The mailman's father leaves *immediately*. (adverb)

The adjectival meaning usually will be listed first in your dictionary. If an adjective and an adverb have essentially the same meaning, only the adjective may be listed. For example, *leicht* will be listed as an adjective with the definitions *light*, *easy*, but it can also be translated as an adverb—*lightly*, *easily*.

4.12. Translate these sentences, noting which words are adjectives and which are adverbs. Try to guess the gender of the noun by looking at the adjectives:

- 1. Ein hungriger Bär tanzt schlecht.
- 2. Alte Kirchen haben dunkle Fenster.
- 3. Magre Mücken stechen (*sting*) übel. (If you are puzzled by the form *magre*, review 4.5)
- 4. Gestrenge (strict) Herren regieren nicht lange.
- 5. Verbotenes Obst (fruit) ist süß.
- 6. [Die] Armut ist die Erfinderin aller Dinge. (Erfinderin is feminine because Armut is feminine.)
- 7. Stumme *Hunde* und *stille Wasser* sind gefährlich (*dangerous*). (Is *Wasser* singular or plural? How do you know?)
- 8. Eine alte Wunde blutet leicht.
- 9. Finstere Gedanken sind die Kinder eines *melancholischen* Kopfes. (Is *Kopfes* singular or plural? How do you know?)
- 10. Ein gutes Gewissen (conscience) ist ein sanftes (soft) Ruhekissen (pillow).
- 11. Kinder sind der Reichtum armer Leute.
- 12. Eine *Hand wäscht* die *andere*.
- 13. Arbeit hat bittere Wurzeln, aber süße Frucht.
- 14. Tod ist der Arzt des armen Mannes.

- 15. Der Teufel *hindert* und verdirbt das *tägliche Brot* und *alle* Gaben Gottes.(Luther)
- 16. Der *Historiker sieht* rückwärts (backwards); endlich glaubt er auch rückwärts. (Nietzsche)
- 17. Wind mit dunklen Wolken (clouds) bringt Regen, und heimliches (secret) Geschwätz (gossip) schafft saure Gesichter. (Proverbs)
- 18. Ein törichter (foolish) Sohn ist seines Vaters Herzeleid (suffering), und ein zänkisches (cranky) Weib ist wie (like) ein ständig triefendes (dripping) Dach (roof). (Proverbs) (Is ständig an adjective or an adverb? How do you know?)
- 19. Die üblen Mücken tötet Fräulein Meier. (Who dies? How do you know?)

Vocabulary

- * all—all, every
- * ander (adj.)—other
- * arm (adj.)—poor die Armut—poverty
- * auch—also, even der Bär (-en, -en)—bear bitter (adj.)—bitter bluten (i)—to bleed das Dach (-es, =er)—roof
- * das **Ding** (-s, -e)—thing
- * dunkel (adj.)—dark
- * endlich (adv.)—finally der Erfinder (-s, -)—inventor das Fenster (-s, -)—window finster (adj.)—dark, gloomy
- * die **Frucht** (-e)—fruit die **Gabe** (-n)—gift
- * der **Gedanke** (-ns, -n)—thought **gefährlich** (adj.)—dangerous
- * gern (adv.)—gladly; er tut das gern—he likes to do that das Geschwätz (-es)—gossip
- * das Gesicht (-es, -er)—face das Gewissen (-s, -)—conscience
- * glauben (i)—to believe
- * gut (adj.)—good; (adv.)—well
- * der **Herr** (-n, -en)—Lord, Master, Mr.

das Herzeleid—suffering hindern—to hinder der Historiker (-s, -)—historian der Hund (-es, -e)—dog die Kirche (-n)—church

- * der Kopf (-es, -e)—head
- * lange (adv.)—for a long time
- * leicht (adj. & adv.)—easy, easily
- * die Leute (pl.)—people
- machen—to make, do mager (adj.)—thin melancholisch—melancholy
- * der Mensch (-en, -en)—person die Mücke (-n)—gnat das Obst (-es, -arten)—fruit (Northern European fruit only!) der Regen (-s, -)—rain regieren—to rule der Reichtum (-s,)—wealth rückwärts (adv.)—backwards sanft (adj.)—soft sauer (adj.)—sour schaffen—to create
- * schlecht (adj. & adv.)—bad, guilty
- * sehen (sieht)—to see
- sein (poss. adj.)—his ständig (adj. & adv.)—constant, constantly

- * still (adj. & adv.)—quiet, quietly stumm (adj.)—mute süß (adj.)—sweet
- täglich (adj. & adv.)—daily
 tanzen—to dance
 der Teufel (-s, -)—devil
- * der Tod (-es, -e)—death
 töten—to kill
 übel (adj. & adv.)—evil, bad,
 wicked
 verboten (adj.)—forbidden

- verderben (verdirbt)—to spoil
- * viel (adj.)—many; (adv.)—much, a
- * vielleicht (adv.)—perhaps das Werk (-es, -e)—work die Wolke (-n)—cloud die Wunde (-n)—wound waschen (wäscht)—to wash die Wurzel (-n)—root das Wasser (-s, -)—water das Weib (-s, -er)—wife

4.13. Vocabulary aid

- 1. Der Weintrinker hat oft ein schlechtes Gewissen (conscience).
- 2. Die Katzen Fräulein Meiers sind vielleicht hungrig.
- 3. Die Kinder alter Leute haben oft Probleme.
- 4. Ein armer Mensch hat keine Freunde.
- 5. Viele Leute trinken gern Wein.
- 6. Was (what) ist den Herren verboten?
- 7. Auch ein Feind ist zu viel.
- 8. Die Arbeit des Historikers interessiert den Professor.
- 9. Die gesammelten (collected) Werke der amerikanischen Historiker sind auch in einer Bibliothek in Berlin. (Is *Historiker* singular or plural? How do you know?)
- **4.14. Guess these cognates** if you do not know them already: kühl; täglich; das Licht; hilflos; freundlos; der Realismus; komisch; der Sohn; der Fuß; der Schneemann; das Brot; westlich; Montag; Freitag; Juni; die Klasse; dumm; Auge; nervös; natürlich; die Glasvase; die Hoffnung; der Fingernagel; der Schuh; göttlich; der Segelboot

Farben (colors): rot, blau, grün, grau, rosa, braun, weiß, schwarz (cf. swarthy)

Prepositions

5.1. German prepositions are often quite difficult to translate because there is no simple one-to-one correspondence between them and English prepositions.

Often they will have to be translated according to what seems intuitively right. Most so-called German idioms are merely German nouns or verbs used in conjunction with various prepositions. Do not worry about the preposition chapters, as they are primarily reference chapters with an overwhelming amount of information.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR REVIEW (see also my grammar explanations in Appendix C): A preposition is a word that shows the relationship of one word (usually a noun or pronoun) to another word in the sentence. Note the following prepositions in the squirrel and tree sentences: The squirrel runs **up** the tree; The squirrel runs **down** the tree; The squirrel runs **under** the tree; The squirrel runs **behind** the tree; The squirrel runs **along** the tree's branches; The squirrel runs **between** the trees.

German prepositions are usually a nuisance, as there is no consistent correlation between them and English prepositions, and they will essentially all mean: *up*, *to*, *at*, *on*, or *from*. Thus looking them up in your dictionaries is generally unhelpful. *Mostly, your translation will be correct if you allow your common sense to help you:*

Das Kind spielt **mit** der Katze—The child plays **with** the cat. Er fährt **mit** dem Bus—He goes **by** bus. Sie lacht **über** den Witz—She laughs **at** the joke.

Leben auf dem Mississippi—Life on the Mississippi Wer hat Angst vor Virginia Woolf?—Who's afraid of Virginia Woolf?

5.2. German prepositions fall into four categories:

- 1. those taking the accusative case: bis (until), durch (through, by), für (for), gegen (against), ohne (without), um (around, at), entlang (along), wider (against)
- 2. those taking the dative case: aus (out of, of, from), außer (except), bei (at, near, with), mit (with), nach (after, according to), seit (since), von (of, from), zu (to, at), gegenüber (opposite, vis-à-vis)
- 3. those taking either the **dative or** the **accusative** case according to the verb use: **an** (on, at, to), **auf** (on, upon, on top of), **hinter** (behind), **in** (in, into), **neben** (next to), **über** (over, about), **unter** (under, among), **vor** (before, ago), **zwischen** (between)
- 4. those taking the **genitive**: trotz (in spite of), statt (instead of), während (during), wegen (because of), um... willen (for the sake of).

By "taking" a case, I mean that the noun following the preposition will be in the case that the preposition dictates. Note: the noun following the preposition will not be nominative. Although it is rarely necessary to memorize what prepositions take what case when reading German, it will be useful at this point to identify the case for practice in memorizing case endings.

In these two chapters I have listed the most common definitions of each preposition, along with the most frequent idioms. At this point, you should memorize only the initial definitions of the prepositions and the idioms which I have asterisked. Note that the prepositions and the most common idioms are also listed in Appendix D.

5.3. Sometimes the preposition following the verb will completely dictate the translation of the verb. When you look up verbs, you should check for prepositions accompanying them to see if the verbs and prepositions have specific definitions. Here are examples:

halten—to stop
halten für—to consider
bestehen auf—to insist on
bestehen aus—to consist of
kommen auf—to think of
kommen aus—to come from
kommen zu—to get around to

5.4. Sometimes prepositions are used in German, which can be omitted in your English translations:

Ein Gast wird zu einer Last—A guest becomes a burden.

Er hält den Mann für ein Genie—He considers the man a genius.

Er frevelt an das Gesetz—He violates the law.

- 5.5. Note that whenever the article der follows a preposition, it will be feminine dative case 95% of the time. This is because:
- I. a noun following a preposition cannot be nominative
- 2. der cannot be accusative
- 3. prepositions taking the genitive occur only about 5% of the time.

Here are examples: zu der Frau (to the woman); vor der Tür (in front of the door); in der Hütte (in the hut); mit der Katze (with the cat); nach der Legende (according to the legend)

- **5.6.** Moreover, whenever the article **den** follows a preposition, and the noun has an *-n* ending, it will be plural 80% of the time. This is because:
- den can be either masculine accusative or dative plural, and few masculine nouns end in -en
- 2. -n is the dative plural ending for most nouns

Here are examples: zu den Frauen; vor den Türen; in den Hütten; mit den Katzen; nach den Legenden

5.7. Prepositions taking the accusative

bis—until (with reference to time), as far as (with reference to space)

Bis heute hat Fräulein Meier den Witz nicht gehört— Until today, Fräulein Meier had not heard the joke.

Der Student fährt nur bis Chicago—The student travels only as far as Chicago.

This preposition is often also used in conjunction with other prepositions such as:

Er fährt bis um neun Uhr—He travels until nine o'clock.

Er tut das bis zum bitteren Ende-He does that to the bitter end.

durch—through, by means of, across

Der Wanderer geht durch den Wald—The hiker goes through the woods. Viele steigen durch Sünde, manche fallen durch Tugend—Many rise through (by means of) sin, some fall through (by means of) virtue.

für-for, instead of

Fräulein Meier bäckt für den Briefträger-Fräulein Meier bakes for the mailman.

* Was für ein Mann ist er? — What kind of man is he?

gegen—against, towards

- * Der Ritter kämpft gegen den Drachen—The knight fights against the dragon.
- * Es wird gegen Abend kühler—It grows cooler towards evening.
- * Gegen zehn Uhr kommt er—Around ten o'clock he is coming.

ohne-without

Ohne ihre Katzen ist Fräulein Meier traurig—Fräulein Meier is unhappy without her cats.

um—at, around

- * *Um* sechs Uhr ist sie gewöhnlich hier—*At* six she is usually here.
- * Der Briefträger läuft um die Rennbahn—The mailman runs around the track. Fräulein Meier bittet den Briefträger um Hilfe—Fräulein Meier asks the mailman for help.

Manchmal schleicht Fräulein Meier wie die Katze um den heißen Brei—Sometimes Fräulein Meier beats around the bush. (Literally: creeps like a cat around the hot porridge).

wider—against, contrary to

Das ist wider meinen Willen-That is against my will.

There is also an accusative preposition that generally follows its object:

entlang—along

Der Wanderer läuft den Fluß entlang-The hiker walks along the river.

[The prepositions taking the accusative can be memorized by singing them to the tune of *London Bridge is Falling Down:* durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, ohne, um; durch, für, gegen, ohne, um; bis, bis, bis, bis.]

5.8. Translate these sentences:

- I. Ein Glaube ohne Tat ist wie (like) ein Feld ohne Saat (seed).
- 2. Unglück, Nägel und Haar wachsen durch das ganze Jahr.
- 3. Liebe ohne Gegenliebe ist wie (like) eine Frage ohne [eine] Antwort.
- 4. Furcht (fear) hält alle Speisen (food) für Gift (poison).
- 5. Fünf Jahre lang kämpfte (fought) der Professor gegen die Windmühlen. (Note that lang is actually an adverb meaning for: for five years. . .)
- 6. Fräulein Meier wickelt (wraps) den Briefträger um den kleinen Finger.
- 7. Was für ein Mann ist der Briefträger?
- 8. Der Gesundheitsfanatiker (health fanatic) schwimmt jeden Morgen um sechs Uhr wider den Strom.

Vocabulary

- * bis-until
- * durch—through das Feld (-es, -er)—field
- * die Frage (-n)—question
- * fünf—five
- * **für**—for
- * die Furcht—fear
- * ganz—whole, entire
- * gegen—against, towards, around die Gegenliebe (-n)—reciprocal love der Glaube (-ns, -n)—faith, belief das Haar (-s, -e)—hair
- * halten für—to consider
- * das **Jahr** (-s,-e)—year
- * jeder—every, each
- * klein-small, little

- * lang—for
- * die **Liebe** (-n)—love
- * der **Morgen** (-s, -)—morning der **Nagel** (-s, -)—nail
- * **ohne**—without die **Saat** (-en)—seed
- * sechs—six der Strom (-s, -e)—stream
- * die Tat (-en)—deed
- * die Uhr (-en)—clock
- * um—at, around das Unglück (-s, -e)—misfortune wachsen (wächst) (i)—to grow
- * was für—what kind of
- * wider—against die Windmühle (-n)—windmill

5.9. Prepositions taking the dative

aus—out of, of, from (cities or countries)

42 German Quickly

- * Sie geht aus dem Haus—She goes out of the house.
- * Sie kommt *aus* Zürich—She *is from* Zurich. *aus* verschiedenen Gründen—*for* many reasons

 Das Haus *besteht aus* Stroh—The house *consists of* straw.

außer-out of, outside, without, except

* Alle außer dem Kind verstehen den Witz—Except for the child, everyone understands the joke.

bei-near, with, among, at the house of, at; beim is a contraction of bei and dem.

Die Kneipe liegt bei der Universität—The pub is near the university. Das Kind wohnt bei seinen Eltern—The child lives with his parents.

beim succeeded by any verb turned into a neuter noun means while doing something:

Beim Kaffeetrinken besprechen die Studenten die Philosophie Hegels— *While* drinking coffee, the students discuss the philosophy of Hegel.

mit—with, by, at

* Das Kind spielt mit seinen Freunden—The child plays with his friends.

Er fährt mit dem Bus-He goes by bus.

Mit zehn Jahren begann der Briefträger zu arbeiten—At the age of ten, the mailman began to work.

nach—after, according to, to (with regard to direction)

- * *Nach* der Vorlesung geht der Student in die Kneipe—*After* the class, the student goes to the pub.
- * Nach meiner Uhr ist es halb elf—According to my watch it is 10:30.
- * Sie fliegt nach Europa—She is flying to Europe.

Sie geht nach Hause—She goes home.

- * Die Studentin fragt nach der Bedeutung des Übels—The woman student asks about the meaning of evil.
- * Moreover, this preposition often follows the noun when it means according to:

Meiner Meinung nach ist das wahr-In my opinion that is true.

seit-since, for

* Seit vielen Tagen warten Vladimir und Estragon auf Godot—For many days Vladimir and Estragon have been waiting for Godot.

Generally, although *seit* will be used with a present verb, it should be translated into English as a present perfect or a present perfect progressive to make the translation sound smoother. Germans use the present tense with *seit* in order to indicate an ongoing activity: *Seit* acht Jahren wohnt die Studentin in Chicago—*For* eight years, the woman student has been living in Chicago (and she is living there even now). Only the following sentence would signify a completed action: Acht Jahre *lang* hat die Studentin in Chicago gewohnt—*For* eight years the woman student lived in Chicago (but now she is happily living elsewhere).

von-from, of, by, about; vom is a contraction of von and dem.

* Schiller war ein Freund von Goethe-Schiller was a friend of Goethe's.

Zwei von uns-Two of us

Sie spricht von dem Dichter—She speaks of the poet.

Ein Gedicht von Brecht—A poem by Brecht.

Von jetzt an -- From now on

zu—to, at, in addition to; **zum** is a contraction of zu and dem; **zur** is a contraction of zu and der

Sie ist nett zu dem alten Mann—She is nice to the old man.

- * zum Beispiel (often abbreviated z.B.)—for example.
- * zu Hause—at home

zum letzten Male-for the last time

gegenüber—vis-à-vis, opposite

This preposition will nearly always follow the noun:

Sie sitzt dem Wahrsager gegenüber-She sits opposite the fortune teller.

[These prepositions can be sung to the tune of *The Blue Danube:* aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu; aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu; gegenüber, gegenüber, gegenüber, gegenüber.]

5.10. Translate these sentences (although I am still putting cognates in italics, I am not consistently doing so with cognates you have already seen several times):

- 1. Hunger treibt (drives) den Wolf aus dem Busch.
- 2. Faulheit ist der Schlüssel (key) zur Armut.
- 3. Die Leidenschaft (passion) ist ein reißendes (grasping) Tier mit scharfen Zähnen (teeth).
- 4. Ich rede von Enten (ducks), und du sprichst von Gänsen (geese). (In other words, we are speaking at cross-purposes.)
- 5. Der Mensch lebt nicht vom Brot allein.
- 6. Seit drei Jahren liest der Student die Philosophie Kants.
- 7. Kinder sind eine Brücke (bridge) zum Himmel.
- 8 Der Stolz (pride) frühstückt mit dem Überfluß (abundance), speist (eats) zu Mittag mit der Armut und ißt zu Abend mit der Schande (shame). (Note that Stolz is personified.)
- 9. Krankheit kommt mit Extrapost und schleicht (creeps) wieder weg wie (like) Schnecken (snails).
- 10. Von Sparenberg (thrift-mountain) kommt man leicht nach Reichenberg (fat city).
- 11. Hoffnung ist ein Schiff mit einem Mast von Stroh. (Hoffnung tends to be very unreliable in proverbs.)
- 12. Gott gegenüber hat der Christ (Christian) das Herz eines Kindes; dem Nächsten (neighbor) gegenüber hat er das Herz einer Mutter; und sich (himself) gegenüber hat er das Herz eines Richters (judge). (Note: Gott is not the subject of the first clause. What is?)

Vocabulary

- * der Abend (-s, -e)—evening
- * allein—alone die Armut—poverty
- * aus—out of, of, from
- * außer—except for, out of
- * bei—near, with, at the house of der Busch (-es, -e)—bush
- * der Christ (-en, -en)—Christian die Ente (-n)—duck
- * essen (ißt)—to eat
 die Extrapost—special delivery
 die Faulheit—laziness
 frühstücken—to breakfast

- die Gans ("e)-goose
- * gegenüber—opposite, vis-à-vis
- * das **Herz** (-ens, -en)—heart
- * der Himmel (-s, -)—heaven, sky
- * die **Hoffnung**—hope die **Krankheit** (-en)—sickness
- * leben—to live
- * leicht—easily
 die Leidenschaft (-en)—passion
 lesen (liest)—to read
- * machen—to do, make der Mast (-s, -en)—mast
- * mit-with

```
der Mittag (-es, -e) - noon
* nach—after, according to, towards
* oft—often
* reden—to speak
```

reißend-grasping der Richter (-s, -)-judge die Schande-shame, scandal

scharf—sharp

das **Schiff** (-es, -e)—ship schleichen (i)—to creep der **Schlüssel** (-s, -)—key * **seit**—since, for der Stolz (-es)—pride

das **Stroh** (-es)—straw das Tier (-es, -e)—animal treiben—to drive

der Überfluß (-sses)—abundance * von—of, from * weg—away

* wieder—again der **Zahn** (-es, -e)—tooth

zu—to, towards

Prepositions

5.11. Prepositions taking either the dative or the accusative

These prepositions take the dative or the accusative, according to whether or not, in the course of the verbal action, a borderline is crossed by either the subject or the object. If a border is crossed, the preposition will take the accusative; if no border is crossed, the preposition will take the dative. Here are examples:

In the sentence, Der Mann geht in das Haus (The man goes into the house), the object of the preposition in will be accusative. In the sentence, Der Mann ist in dem Haus (The man is in the house), the object of the preposition in is dative because no border is being crossed.

In some instances, a sentence can have a slightly different meaning, depending on whether the object of the preposition is accusative or dative. For example, Das Flugzeug fliegt *über die* Berge (accusative)—The airplane flies over the mountains means that the plane has had to increase its altitude in order to fly over the mountains; Das Flugzeug fliegt *über den* Bergen (dative)—The airplane flies over the mountains, on the other hand, means that the airplane is flying over the mountains at a steady altitude; the airplane is parallel to the mountains. (However, this will rarely affect your translation; such a distinction is more important when learning to speak and write German.)

When these prepositions follow verbs of "mental activity" such as antworten (answer), denken (think), erinnern (remind), hoffen (hope), lachen (laugh), sprechen (speak), and warten (wait), the object generally will be accusative. Examples are:

Fräulein Meier hofft auf einen schönen Tag-Fräulein Meier hopes for a beautiful day.

Der Student wartet auf den Professor—The student waits for the professor. Sie lacht über den Witz—She laughs at the joke.

Whenever verbs such as *sein*, *bleiben*, and *sitzen* are used, the object of the preposition will always be dative, because these verbs cannot imply motion or direction. Here are examples:

Die Katze ist in der Küche (dative)—The cat is in the kitchen. Der Student sitzt an dem Schreibtisch (dative)—The student sits at the desk.

For each of the following prepositions I have listed both a dative and an accusative example, as well as idioms:

an—at, on, to, in, near to; am is a contraction of an plus dem.

Ich hänge das Bild an die Wand (acc.)—I hang the picture on the wall.

Das Bild hängt an der Wand (dat.)—The picture hangs on the wall.

Sie denkt an eine Sache (acc.)—She thinks of a thing.

Er glaubt an eine Sache (acc.)—He believes in a thing.

* Der Dichter schreibt an sie (acc.)—The poet writes to her.

Am Morgen (dat.)—In the morning

Der Verkäufer steht an der Tür (dat.)—The salesman stands at the door.

an sich (dat.)—in itself

von jetzt an-from now on

auf—on, upon, on top of, in, at, to

Er stellt den Brief auf den Tisch (acc.)—He puts the letter on the table.

Der Brief liegt auf dem Tisch (dat.)—The letter is on the table.

- * auf jeden Fall (acc.)—in any case; auf keinen Fall (acc.)—in no case.
- * warten auf (acc.)—to wait for. Sie wartet auf den Briefträger—She is waiting for the mailman.

antworten *auf (acc.)*—to answer (no preposition in English). achten *auf (acc.)*—to pay attention *to*. Wir achten *auf die* folgenden

Schwierigkeiten—We are paying attention to the following problems. auf Deutsch (acc.)—in German

hinter—behind

Der Wolf läuft hinter den Busch (acc.)—The wolf goes behind the bush. Der Wolf lauert hinter dem Busch (dat.)—The wolf lurks behind the bush.

in-in, into; im is a contraction for in plus dem; ins is in plus das

Ehrgeiz und Flöhe springen gern in die Höhe (acc.)—Ambition and fleas like to jump up into the air.

Der Funke glimmt auch *in der* toten Asche (dat.)—The spark glimmers even *in* the dead ash.

neben-beside, near, next to

Der Briefträger stellt das Paket *neben die* Tür *(acc.)*—The mailman puts the package *next to* the door.

Das Kind sitzt neben seinem Vater (dat.)—The child sits next to his father.

über-above, over, about, across

Der Briefträger geht über die Straße (acc.)—The mailman goes across the street. Die Sonne scheint über den Bergen (dat.)—The sun shines over the mountains.

Das Kind lacht über den Witz (acc.)—The child laughs at the joke.

* sprechen über (acc.)—to talk about über 100 Elefanten—more than 100 elephants

unter-under, beneath, among, below

Das Buch fällt *unter den* Tisch (acc.)—The book falls *under* the table. *Unter dem* Tisch liegt das Buch (dat.)—The book is lying *under* the table.

* Unter den Blinden ist der Einäugige König (dat.)—Among the blind, the oneeyed person is king.

vor-before, in front of, ago, with, of

Der Student geht vor die Kneipe (acc.)—The student goes in front of the pub.

* Jetzt steht der Student *vor der* Kneipe *(dat.)*—Now the student stands *in front* of the pub.

- * Vor sechs Minuten stand der Student vor der Kneipe (dat.)—Six minutes ago, the student stood in front of the pub.
- * Vor used in conjunction with time will always mean "ago!"
- * vor allem—above all.

Fräulein Meier ist vor allem kein Dummkopf-Fräulein Meier is above all no dolt.

* vor Freude (dat.)—with joy

zwischen - between

Das Buch fällt zwischen den Tisch und den Stuhl (acc.)—The book falls between the table and the chair.

Der unglückliche Mann sitzt zwischen einem Felsen und einer harten Stelle (dat.)— The unlucky man sits between a rock and a hard place.

5.12. Translate these sentences, note the cases of all the nouns when articles are given: (Hint: 95% of the time, der after a preposition will be feminine and dative—5.5.)

- 1. Zeit, Ebbe und Flut warten auf niemanden.
- 2. Ein alter Fuchs geht nie in die Falle.
- 3. Tugend (virtue) sitzt nicht an den Tischen großer Herren.
- 4. Gras und Unglück wachsen über Nacht.
- 5. Vor vielen Jahren studierte (studied) der Briefträger die Philosophie Schopenhauers.
- 6. Im Wein ist die Wahrheit
- 7. Das Kräutlein (little herb) Geduld (patience—this is the name of the Kräutlein) wächst nicht in allen Gärten.
- 8. Jammer (sorrow) steht vor der Tür, und Elend (misery) schlägt (beats) die Trommel (drum).
- 9. Schlafen bringt kein Geld ins Haus.
- 10. Der Briefträger trifft den *Nagel* auf den Kopf mit seinen *(his)* Beobachtungen *(observations)* über Fräulein Meier.
- II. Alte Freunde, alter Wein und altes Geld haben Wert in aller Welt.
- 12. Fräulein Meier lebt wie Gott in Frankreich. (The English expression for this is: leads the life of Riley—i.e., leads a wonderful life. What does the German expression mean literally?)

Vocabulary

```
* alle—all, everyone
```

- * alt—old
- * an—on, at
- * auf—on, on top of die Beobachtung (-en)—observation

die **Brücke** (-n)—bridge die **Ebbe** (-n)—ebb

das **Elend** (-s)—misery

die Flut (-en)—flow

* das Frankreich (-s)—France der Fuchs (-es, -e)—fox

die **Geduld**—patience * das **Geld** (-es)—money

* groß—large, great

* der **Herr** (-n, -en)—lord, master

* hinter—behind

* in—in, into

der Jammer (-s)—sorrow

* jeder—each, every

* der **Kopf** (-es, -e)—head

* leben—to live

- * der **Mensch** (-en, -en)—person der **Nagel** (-s, -)—nail
- * neben—next to
- * nicht—not
- * **nie**—never
- * niemand—no one das Schlafen—sleeping schlagen (schlägt)—to hit, to beat
- * sitzen (i)—to sit
- * stehen (i)—to stand der Tisch (-es, -e)—table treffen (trifft)—to hit die Tugend (-en)—virtue die Tür (-en)—door
- * **über**—over, about
- * unter—under, among
- * vor—before, ago
- * vor allem—above all
- * die Wahrheit (-en)—truth
- * warten auf—to wait for der Wein (-s, -e)—wine
- * der Wert (-es, -e)—value

5.13. Prepositions taking the genitive

These prepositions are used rarely. Here are the most common of them. Note that many of them include the English preposition of with their translation.

trotz—in spite of

Trotz des Einwandes seines Vaters besucht der Briefträger Fräulein Meier—In spite of the objection of his father, the mailman visits Fräulein Meier.

statt-instead of

Statt eines Hundes hat der Philosoph eine Katze—Instead of a dog, the philosopher has a cat.

während-during

Während des Tages denkt Fräulein Meier an den Briefträger—During the day, Fräulein Meier thinks about the mailman.

wegen—because of (This is another preposition that occasionally follows the noun.)

Wegen des schlechten Wetters bleibt Fräulein Meier zu Hause—Because of the bad weather, Fräulein Meier stays at home.

* Des schlechten Wetters wegen bleibt der Briefträger auch zu Hause—Because of the bad weather, the mailman also stays at home.

Other prepositions taking the genitive which are encountered even more rarely, and which need not be memorized are: **außerhalb** (outside of), **innerhalb** (inside of), **diesseits** (on this side of), **jenseits** (on that side of), **oberhalb** (above), **unterhalb** (below).

- ** A final preposition consisting of two words is um . . . willen—for the sake of
- * Um ihrer Freundschaft willen bäckt Fräulein Meier oft für den Briefträger—For the sake of their friendship, Fräulein Meier often bakes for the mailman.

5.14. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Man leidet den Rauch des Feuers wegen.
- 2. Der Vater des Briefträgers wohnt außerhalb der Stadt.
- 3. Des schönen Wetters wegen ist Fräulein Meier bei guter Laune (mood).
- 4. Statt eines Briefes bekommt Fräulein Meier ein Geschenk von dem Briefträger.
- 5. Trotz des Geschenkes des Briefträgers ist Fräulein Meier etwas traurig.
- 6. Während des Dramas Warten auf Godot wird der Briefträger müde (tired).
- 7. Man küsst das Kind oft um der Mutter willen.

Vocabulary

- * anstatt—instead of außerhalb—outside of
- * bekommen—to receive das Drama (-s, -men)—drama etwas (as an adverb)—somewhat
- * fast—almost das Feuer (-s, -)—fire
- * gern—likes to, gladly das Geschenk (-s, -e)—present küssen—to kiss

- * lachen—to laugh die Laune (-n)—mood leiden—to suffer, endure
- * man—one der Rauch (-es)—smoke die Rede (-n)—speech
- * die Stadt (=e)—city
- * statt—instead of traurig—sad

- * trotz—in spite of
- * um . . . willen—for the sake of
- * vor (with time) ago
- * während—during
- * wegen—because of werden (wird)—to become das Wetter (-s. -)—weather
- * wohnen (i.) to live

5.15. Vocabulary aid

- Hinter, neben, zwischen, vor an, auf, über, unter, in alle wollen (wants to go) nach Aberdeen. Zum, am, im, beim, vom alle Wege führen nach Rom.
- 2. Sein (his) ganzes Leben lang wohnte (lived) der Briefträger in Deutschland.
- 3. Jede Meile ist im Winter zwei.
- 4. Niemand unter diesen Studenten versteht die Philosophie Heideggers.
- 5. Seit einem Jahr arbeitet Fräulein Meier halbtags (part-time).
- 6. Trotz seiner (his) unglücklichen Kindheit hat der Briefträger viel Hoffnung auf die Zukunft (future).
- 7. Fast jeden Abend um halb acht (7:30) bekommt Fräulein Meier einen Brief mit Extrapost.

Reading Selection: Fräulein Meier

Fräulein Meier wohnt in Deutschland, aber sie ist kein typisches deutsches Fräulein, denn die Deutschen sind meistens fleißig, aber Fräulein Meier ist ein wenig faul. Sie bleibt mit ihren Katzen zu Hause und arbeitet halbtags als Ehestifterin (matchmaker). (Sie hilft Unverheirateten [singles], und manchmal heiraten diese dank ihrer [her] Hilfe.) Sie bekommt viele interessante Briefe, und der Briefträger besucht (visits) sie und spricht täglich mit ihr (her). Fräulein Meier und der Briefträger haben verschiedene (different) Weltanschauungen, und ihre (their) Gespräche sind deshalb sehr lebendig.

Fräulein Meier liest gern Sprichwörter, aber die Absichten dieser Sprichwörter sind diesem Fräulein unklar. Die Sprichwörter schildern gute, glückliche Menschen in folgender Weise: sie arbeiten viel, sie fürchten Gott, und sie mißtrauen dem leichten Leben. Aber Fräulein Meier arbeitet wenig, sie tut, was sie will (wants to), und sie

ist doch glücklich. Vielleicht hat sie einen besseren Begriff von der Wirklichkeit als (than) die Erzähler der Sprichwörter.

Vocabulary (Words marked ** will no longer be listed in the chapter vocabularies.)

- * aber—but, however
 die Absicht (-en)—intention, point
- ** bekommen—to receive der Begriff (-s, -e)—grasp, understanding der Beruf (-s, -e)—occupation, job besuchen—to visit
- ** bleiben—to stay, remain
- * denn—for, because deshalb—for that reason
- doch—nevertheless
 ein wenig—somewhat
 der Erzähler (-s, -)—teller, narrator
- * faul—lazy
- * fleißig—hard-working
- * folgend—following
- * fürchten—to fear
 das Gespräch (-es, -e)—conversation
 heiraten—to marry

- irgendwo—somewhere lebendig—lively
- * leicht—easy
- * meistens—mostly
- ** der Mensch (-en, -en)—person, human being mißtrauen (i)—to mistrust schildern—to portray das Sprichwort (-es, -er)—proverb
- * tun—to do verschieden—different
- * vielleicht—perhaps
- * wegen—because of
- * die **Weise (-**n)—way
- * die Weltanschauung (-en)—world view
- * wenig-little
- * die Wirklichkeit—reality
- * wohnen—to live, reside

5.16. The Importance of Case Endings

Case endings are extremely important because

- 1. they tell you the relationship of nouns to one another in the clause
- 2. they provide guidelines for placement of the verb in your English translation.

NOMINATIVE (der, das, die)

If a noun or pronoun is nominative, you will nearly always want to put a verb after it in your English translation:

Der Mann tötet einen Wolf—The man kills a wolf. Dem kranken Mann ist das Licht unangenehm—For the sick man, the light is disagreeable. Oft schreibt der sensible Briefträger E-mails an eine nette Frau—Often, the sensitive mailman writes e-mails to a nice woman.

In einem Park liest eine junge Frau einen Roman—In a park, a young woman reads a novel.

ACCUSATIVE (den, das, die)

If a noun or pronoun is accusative, you will nearly always want to put a verb in front of it in your English translation:

Den Wolf tötet der Mann-The man kills the wolf.

Seit vielen Jahren tötet der Jäger böse Wölfe—For many years, the hunter has been killing evil wolves.

Oft singt die Frau mit vielen Kindern dieses Lied—The woman with many children often sings this song.

You should never try to embellish an accusative noun by inventing a preposition to put in front of it.

GENITIVE (des, der)

If a noun is genitive, you will usually want to connect it with the noun next to it, and the noun will usually be in front of it. Often, you will want to add the preposition "of" to your translation:

Der Freund des Briefträgers tötet den Wolf—The friend of the mailman kills the wolf.

Oft sieht der Freund der Frau neue Filme—The friend of the woman often sees new films.

Sometimes an adjective with an -er ending in front of a noun can indicate that the noun is in the genitive:

Kinder sind der Reichtum armer Leute—Children are the wealth of poor people. Armut ist die Stiefmutter aller Künste—Poverty is the stepmother of all the arts.

DATIVE (dem, der, den)

If a noun or pronoun is in dative case

1. You may want to put a verb in front of it if it is the object of an intransitive verb (if it looks like a direct object in your English translation), and you need not embellish it with a preposition: Der Frau hilft der Mann—The man helps the woman.

Meistens sagt der Vater des Briefträgers der Frau die Wahrheit—Mostly, the father of the mailman tells the woman the truth.

2. Otherwise, you might have to supply a preposition in your translation. The acceptable prepositions to supply are: to, for, and sometimes from. Do not attempt to supply any other prepositions unless there are extreme mitigating circumstances!

Der Frau fällt die Sprache schwer—For the woman, the language is difficult. Sie bringt dem Mann das Buch—She brings the book to the man. Er nimmt dem Kind das gefährliche Spielzeug weg—He takes the dangerous toy away from the child.

Oft bringt der Freund der Frau dem Briefträger ein interessantes Buch—The friend of the woman often brings an interesting book to the mailman.

Basic Verb Placement

In German, the conjugated verb is placed inflexibly in the sentence or clause in one of three places: (1) it can be the second element in the sentence; (2) it can begin the sentence, or (3) it can appear at the end of the clause.

6.1. The verb usually is the second element in the sentence, with the subject appearing either before or after it. Therefore, one can say either:

Ich sehe den Hund—I see the dog, or

Den Hund sehe ich—The dog, I see. (This sentence is more emphatic, stressing that it is *the dog* that I see.) This inverted word order with the object appearing first is crucial to recognize, as it can change the entire meaning of the sentence. Obviously **Der Wolf** tötet Fräulein Meier—The wolf kills Fräulein Meier—is very different from **Den Wolf** tötet Fräulein Meier—Fräulein Meier kills the wolf.

In this respect, recognition of correct case endings is particularly important. Whenever you see a sentence beginning with den or dem, the subject will have to be on the "other side" of the verb. The subject will also have to be on the other side of the verb if the first noun is plural and the verb is singular (Die Bücher liest die Frau—The woman reads the books) or if the first noun is singular and the verb is plural (Die Frau töten die Wölfe—The wolves kill the woman).

6.2. Note that pronouns can also be nominative, even though they are not capitalized:

Dem kranken Mann ist *nichts* angenehm—*Nothing* is agreeable to the sick man. Der Frau ist *alles* interessant—*Everything* is interesting to the woman.

Also, whenever man (one) appears in a sentence it will always be the subject.

Im kalten Ofen bäckt man kein Brot—In a cold oven one bakes no bread.

6.3. Whenever the sentence begins with an adverb or with a prepositional phrase, or even a string of prepositional phrases, the verb will still appear in "second" place and the subject will always appear on the "other" side of the verb:

Überall sieht man Kinder—One sees children everywhere.

Auf und ab tanzt das Glück wie ein Blatt-Fortune dances back and forth like a leaf.

Jetzt ist dieses Sprichwort klar—Now this proverb is clear.

Auf dem Fußpfad wächst kein Gras-No grass grows on the footpath.

Durch Gebet und Müh' erhält man Ochsen und Küh'—Through prayer and effort one keeps well oxen and cows.

In der Mitte der schönen kleinen Stadt mit roten Blumen und großen Brunnen schreibt die Frau (nominative) eine Ansichtskarte—In the middle of the beautiful small city with red flowers and large fountains the woman writes a picture postcard.

6.4. The verb will also appear in second place in sentences containing interrogatives. The most common interrogatives are: wer (who), wann (when), wo (where), warum (why), wie (how), and was (what).

Wer is declined like the masculine definite article der. Here are examples:

Wer (nominative) ist der neue Student? — Who is the new student?

Wen (accusative) kennt der Briefträger? — Whom does the mailman know?

Wem (dative) sendet der Student eine Email? — To whom does the student send an e-mail?

Wann kommt der Briefträger? — When is the mailman coming?

Wo ist er jetzt? — Where is he now?

Warum spricht der Tierarzt mit Fräulein Meier? — Why is the veterinarian speaking with Fräulein Meier?

Wie alt ist die Schildkröte?—How old is the tortoise?

Was schreibt der Student? — What is the student writing?

6.5. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Dem Arbeiter hilft Gott.
- 2. Arme Leute kennt niemand (no one).
- 3. Wohltaten (good deeds) schreibt man nicht in den Kalender.
- 4. Die Gebete der Bettler verjagt der Wind.
- 5. Ein vorwitziges (impertinent) Schäflein frißt (eats) der Wolf.
- 6. Der Tugend (*virtue*) ist kein Ziel (*goal*) zu hoch. (Note: *Tugend* is feminine. Why does this matter?)
- 7. Dem Angeklagten (accused) gehört der letzte Satz.
- 8. Gift findet man nicht in den Küchen armer Leute.
- 9. Den Schuldigen (guilty one) erschreckt eine Maus.
- 10. Einen fröhlichen Geber hat Gott gern.
- 11. Einem faulen Bauer (farmer) ist kein Pflug (plow) gut genug.
- 12. Der Wolle wegen schert (shears) man die Schafe.
- 13. Auf der Erde ist nichts ohne Furcht. (What is the subject? This is tricky.)
- 14. Wen kennt die alte Frau?
- 15. Wer spricht alle Sprachen und behält (retains) immer das letzte Wort? Ein Echo.
- 16. Wie heißt das Weib von Herkules? Antwort: Fraukules!

Vocabulary (Final reminder: vocabulary with a ** will not reappear in the chapter vocabulary lists)

****all**—all

der Angeklagte (-n, -n)-accused

- * arm—poor
- **der **Arbeiter** (-s, -)—worker (cf. Arbeit)

der **Bauer** (-s, -n)—farmer der **Bettler** (-s, -)—beggar

- * die **Erde** (-n)—earth
- erschrecken—to frighten
 * faul—lazy
- * die Furcht—fear
 - der **Geber** (-s, -)—giver das **Gebet** (-es, -e)—prayer
- * **gehören** (i)—to belong to
- * **genug**—enough
- * gern haben—to like

das Gift (-es, -e)—poison

- * glauben (i)—to believe
- * heißen (i)—to be called
- * hoch—high
- * immer—always der Kalender (-s, -)—calendar
- * kennen—to know die Küche (-n)—kitchen
- * letzt—last
- **die Leute (pl.)—people
- **man—one (always a pronoun)
- * nichts-nothing
- * niemand—no one
- * ohne-without
- * der Satz (-es, -e)—sentence das Schäflein (-s, -)—little sheep, lamb

der Schuldige (-n, -n)—guilty one

- * die Sprache (-n)—language die Tugend (-en)—virtue verjagen—to chase
- * wann—when
- * warum—why
- * was—what
- * wegen—because of

- **das **Weib** (-es, -er)—wife
- * wer, wen, wem—who, whom
- * wie-how
- * wo—where, what die Wolle—wool das Ziel (-s, -e)—goal
- * **zu**—too
- **6.6.** Occasionally, the sentence can begin with the verb. At this point in your reading, a sentence beginning with a verb will be either a question or a command.

I. Questions

For simple questions (which do not begin with an interrogative), the verb will begin the sentence, and the subject will follow it. Examples are:

Kennt der Professor seine Studenten?—Does the professor know his students? Ist der Tierhüter beim Zoo?—Is the zookeeper at the zoo?

Kommt heute der Briefträger?—Is the mailman coming today?

II. Commands (the imperative)

Although you will not encounter the informal imperative too often in scholarly German (unless you tend to read Nietzsche, the *Bible*, or German literature in general), you should at least be familiar with it. The familiar singular imperative is the same as the stem of the verb; verb stems ending in -d or -t and some other consonants add -e. Here are examples in comparison with the interrogative:

Gehst du oft?—Do you often go?
Geh oft!—Go often!
Siehst du den Seiltänzer?—Do you see the tightrope walker?
Sieh den Seiltänzer!—Watch the tightrope walker!
Beantwortest du die Frage?—Are you answering the question?
Beantworte die Frage!—Answer the question!

The imperative form of sein (to be) is sei:

Sei vorsichtig!—Be careful! Sei glücklich!—Be happy!

The familiar plural imperative is generally the same as the familiar plural indicative. Here are examples in comparison with the interrogative:

Seht ihr den hellen Stern?—Do you see the bright star?
Seht den hellen Stern!—Look at the bright star!
Seid ihr nicht ungeduldig?—Are you not being impatient?
Seid nicht ungeduldig!—Do not be impatient!

In both the informal forms (du and ihr), the pronouns are omitted for the imperative form.

For the formal (Sie) imperative, the Sie form will be used, and the verb will be in the same form as the infinitive. This form will be identical to the interrogative. However, the interrogative will always be punctuated by a question mark, and the imperative will often be punctuated by an exclamation point. Here are examples:

Gehen Sie heute?—Are you going today?

Gehen Sie heute! — Go today!

Sprechen Sie oft mit Ihrer Mutter?—Do you often talk to your mother?

Sprechen Sie oft mit Ihrer Mutter! — Talk to your mother often!

The imperative formal of sein is seien Sie! Here are examples:

Seien Sie vorsichtig!—Be careful! (command)

Seien Sie nicht ungerecht!—Do not be unfair! (command)

Compare: Sind Sie nicht ungerecht? — Aren't you being unfair? (question)

6.7. Translate these sentences:

- I. Pfau (peacock), schau auf deine (your) Beine!
- 2. Stelle keine Fragen, und du hörst keine Lügen.
- 3. Sei eine Schnecke (snail) im Raten (advice), ein Vogel in Taten!
- 4. Glauben Sie an Liebe auf den ersten Blick?
- 5. Nimm' deine (your) Sorgen (worries, cares) nicht mit (with you) in das Bad (bath)!
- 6. Ist ein Lehrer (teacher) ohne Leben wie eine Wolke (cloud) ohne Regen?
- 7. Scherze nur mit deinesgleichen (people like you)!
- 8. Sei nicht aller Welt Freund!
- 9. Läßt Fräulein Meier oft die Katze aus dem Sack?
- 10. Lernen Sie Deutsch!
- II. Lernen Sie Russisch?
- 12. Hat der Briefträger ein Herz aus Gold?
- 13. Ein Trinklied:

Trink, trink, Brüderlein trink,
Laß doch die Sorgen (worries) zu Haus,
Trink, trink, Brüderlein trink,
Laß doch die Sorgen zu Haus!
Meide (avoid) den Kummer (sorrow) und meide den Schmerz (pain),
Dann ist das Leben ein Scherz (joke)!
Meide den Kummer und meide den Schmerz,

Vocabulary

das **Bad** (-es, -er)—bath das **Bein** (-es, -e)—leg der **Blick** (-es, -e)—glance das **Brüderlein** (-s, -)—little brother

Dann ist das Leben ein Scherz

- * dann—then
- * doch—just, nevertheless
- * dort—there
- * **erst**—first
- * die Frage (-n)—question fürchten—to fear
- ****glauben**—to believe
- **das **Herz** (-ens, -en)—heart der **Kummer** (-s)—grief, sorrow
- * lassen (läßt)—to let, leave
- **das Leben (-s, -)—life
- * der Lehrer (-s, -) teacher
- **die Liebe (-n)—love

die **Lüge** (-n) **meiden**—to avoid

- * nehmen (nimmt)—to take
- * nur—only, just
 das Raten (-s)—advice
 der Regen (-s, -)—rain
 der Sack (-es, -e)—sack, bag
 schauen (auf) (i)—to look at
 scherzen (i)—to joke
 der Schmerz (-es, -en)—pain
- * stellen—to ask, pose
- * die Tat (-en)—deed das Trinklied (-es, -er)—drinking song
- * wie—like die Wolke (-n)—cloud zu Hause—at home

6.8. In dependent clauses, the verb will appear at the end of the clause.

Here are examples:

Kehre erst vor deiner Tür, *ehe* du über andere *redest*—First sweep in front of your door *before* you *talk* about others.

Herren bleiben Herren, auch wenn sie bis zum Mittag schlafen—Masters are masters, even if they sleep until noon.

Jedes Gleichnis hinkt, sobald es über einen gewissen Grad hinausgeht—Every comparison limps as soon as it goes beyond a certain point.

When the sentence begins with a dependent clause, the main clause usually will begin with a verb as the second element in the sentence. Here are examples:

Was in einer Wurst ist, wissen nur Gott und der Schlächter—What is in a sausage, only God and the butcher know.

Wer Geld hat, hat auch Freunde—He who has money also has friends.

Dependent clauses will always be separated from main clauses by commas.

Although you should begin to recognize this construction, I will explain it to you in more detail in Chapters Twenty-three-Twenty-five. Therefore I have not given you any practice sentences for this section.

6.9. Vocabulary aid: memorize and guess the words (in italics) in the following sentences:

- 1. Um der vollen Wahrheit willen läßt Fräulein Meier die Katze aus dem Sack.
- 2. Ist die Liebe immer schön?
- 3. In einem Sommergarten pflückt (plucks) ein romantischer junger Mann mit einer Neigung (inclination) für Idealismus eine Blume.
- 4. Um fünf Uhr besucht (visits) ein netter Freund des Briefträgers eine interessante Dame mit vielen Katzen.
- 5. Um *Mitternacht denkt* ein philosophisch gesinnter (minded) Mann an die Bedeutung (significance) des Daseins (existence; literally: *being there*).
- In der Nachbarschaft der alten Universität mit großen Bibliotheken und seltsamen (strange) Professoren schreibt ein einsichtsvoller Student ein sehr interessantes Buch.
- 7. Auf wen wartet der faule Mann?
- 8. Was ist ohne Furcht?
- 9. Sei immer freundlich mit guten Menschen.

Reading Selection: Meeresstrand (Theodor Storm)

Ans Haff (lagoon) nun fliegt die Möwe (seagull),

Und Dämmerung <u>bricht hinein</u> (arrives);

Über die feuchten Watten (shoals)

Spiegelt der Abendschein (evening glow).

Graues Geflügel (fowl) huschet (scurries)

Neben dem Wasser her;

Wie Träume liegen die Inseln

Im Nebel (fog) auf dem Meer.

Ich höre des gärenden (swirling) Schlammes (sand) Geheimnisvollen (secret) Ton, Einsames Vogelrufen— So war es immer schon. (It was always like that)

Noch einmal schaudert (shudders) leise Und schweiget dann der Wind; Vernehmlich (clear) werden die Stimmen. Die (which) über der Tiefe sind.

Vocabulary

* dann—then die **Dämmerung** (-en)—twilight einsam—lonely **feucht**—wet, damp fliegen (i)—to fly grau-grey her—hither die Insel (-n)—island leise—quietly der Meeresstrand (-es, -e)—seashore

- * noch einmal—once again **schweigen** (i)—to be silent **spiegeln**—to reflect, to mirror die Stimme (-n)—voice die **Tiefe** (-n)—depth der **Ton** (-es, -e)—tone der **Traum** (-es, -e)—dream das Vogelrufen (-s, -rufe)—bird call * werden—to become

The Pronouns

7.1. German pronouns are declined in a way similar to articles. Here are the forms:

nominative	accusative	dative
ich (I)	mich (me)	mir (me, to me)
du (you)	dich (you)	dir (you, to you)
er (he)	ihn (him)	ihm (him, to him)
es (it)	es (it)	ihm (it, to it)
sie (she)	sie (her)	ihr <i>(her, to her)</i>
wir (we)	uns (us)	uns (us, to us)
ihr (you)	euch (you)	euch (you, to you)
sie (they)	sie (them)	ihnen (them, to them)
Sie (you)	Sie (you)	Ihnen (you, to you)

At this point, it is very important for you to learn the declensions of *er* (*he*), *es* (*it*), and *sie* (*she* and *they*) because they are also the pronouns for masculine, neuter, feminine and plural nouns. (Although there are also pronouns that take genitive case, they occur rarely, and you will be able to identify them if you come across them.)

7.2. Notice the similarity between the declensions of these four pronouns and the definite articles. In each case, the pronoun either rhymes with the definite article, or it has the same last letter. Compare:

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	der	das	die	die
	er	es	sie	sie
accusative	den	das	die	die
	ihn	es	sie	sie
dative	dem	dem	der	den
	ihm	ihm	ihr	ihnen

7.3. Here are sentences including these four pronouns in nominative, accusative and dative cases: Note that when an inanimate masculine or feminine noun is used, it is still replaced with a masculine or feminine pronoun in German, even though it is translated into English as *it*.

Nominative

Fräulein Meier bäckt einen Kuchen, und er riecht gut—Fräulein Meier bakes a cake, and it smells good.

Der Briefträger kauft Brot, wenn es frisch ist—The mailman buys bread when it is fresh.

Die Lampe ist hell; sie ist vielleicht zu hell—The lamp is bright; it is perhaps too bright.

Fräulein Meier hat *neue* Handschuhe, und *sie* sind warm—Fräulein Meier has new gloves, and they are warm.

Accusative

Der Mann kauft einen Apfel, dann ißt er ihn—The man buys an apple, then he eats it.

Das Kind mag das Brot und isst es gern—The child likes the bread and likes to eat it. Die Frau lernt die Melodie und singt sie oft—The woman learns the melody and sings it often.

Wohlstand schafft Freunde, Not prüft sie-Prosperity creates friends; need tests them.

Dative

Wenn die kranke Frau mit *einem* Arzt spricht, erklärt sie *ihm* ihre Krankheiten— When the sick woman speaks with a doctor, she explains her illnesses *to him*.

Die Mutter des Kindes hilft ihm mit seinen Schularbeiten—The mother of the child helps him with his homework.

Der Vater der Tochter hilft ihr-The father of the daughter helps her.

Wenn der Professor *die* Studenten sieht, ist er freundlich mit *ihnen*—When the professor sees the students he is friendly with *them*.

7.4. Replace all the nouns in the following sentences with pronouns:

- 1. Der Briefträger findet das Stinktier.
- 2. Die Frau geht ohne den Mann.
- 3. Das Kind ist glücklich mit der Katze.
- 4. Der Professor sieht die alten Frauen mit den Studenten.
- 5. Außer den Elefanten sind die Tiere nicht hungrig.
- 6. Die Frau sitzt dem Fußballspieler nicht gegenüber.
- 7. Der Pfadfinder (Boy Scout) hilft der alten Dame.
- 8. Das Mädchen trinkt die Milch.

7.5. Here are the masculine, neuter, feminine and plural pronouns and their possibilities. Note which pronouns are identical.

- er only masculine nominative (he)
- es neuter nominative and accusative (it)
- sie feminine and plural nominative (she, they) and feminine and plural accusative (her, them)
- ihn only masculine accusative (him)
- ihm masculine dative (him) and neuter dative (it)
- ihr feminine dative (her); also informal you plural nominative
- *ihnen* **only** plural dative (*them*, or *to them*) The pronoun with the most letters is always plural.

7.6. Translate the following sentences (vocabulary is on pp. 70-71):

- 1. Wenn Fräulein Meier den Briefträger mit einer anderen Dame sieht, wird sie böse auf ihm.
- 2. Er hilft ihnen oft.
- 3. Wann sprechen sie mit ihr?
- 4. Ihn kennt sie.
- 5. Es ist ihm nicht klar.
- 6. Versprechen sind wie Pastenkruste (pie crust); man bricht sie.
- 7. Ihm helfen sie.
- 8. Wenn der Briefträger eine Studentin sieht, sagt er ihr: "Guten Tag."
- 9. Wenn die Tochter ein Lied singt, hört die Mutter es gern.

7.7. The pronouns du, ihr, and Sie

The informal pronouns *du* (*singular*) and *ihr* (*plural*) are seldom encountered in most reading material; therefore you do not need to pay too much attention to them. However, do not confuse *ihr* (*informal you plural*) with *ihr* (*feminine dative*). Compare:

Ihr helft den Kindern oft — *You* often help the children; and Der Mann hilft *ihr* — The man helps *her*.

Also note that *Sie* (*formal you*) and *sie* (*they*) are declined in the same way. However, *Sie* (the *formal you*) will **always** be capitalized. Compare:

Nominative: Wann gehen Sie—When are you going?

Wann gehen sie-When are they going?

Accusative: Wer kennt Sie—Who knows you?

Wer kennt sie—Who knows them?

Dative: Wer hilft *Ihnen*—Who is helping *you?*

Wer hilft ihnen—Who is helping them?

When the sentence begins with Sie and the verb is plural, the pronoun will be translated either you or they depending on context.

Sie gehen jetzt—They (or you) are going now.

7.8. The possessive adjectives

Possessive adjectives in English are the words my, your, his, her, its, our, and their placed directly in front of a noun:

My friend is brilliant.

His cat is obnoxious.

Her mother is a friend of their father.

They are not to be confused with **pronouns**, which aren't attached to nouns, even though *her* sometimes appears as a possessive adjective and sometimes as a "simple" pronoun:

He sees *her* often. *Her* in this context is not a possessive adjective, it is **only** a pronoun.

He sees *her friend* often. *Her* in this context *is* a possessive adjective, modifying friend.

This difference is crucial, because possessive adjectives have **two** equally important functions whenever they are used.

- I. Like *der* and *ein* words, they are adjectives, which must indicate the gender and case of the noun: Er sieht sein**en** *Freund* oft *(Freund* is masculine, accusative).
- 2. Like possessive adjectives in English, they indicate possession: Er sieht seinen Freund oft (sein indicates that the friend is related to er).

Here are	e all the possess	sive adjectives in th	e masculine nominative case:
mein	(my)	unser	(our)
dein	(your)	euer	(your)
sein	(his, its)	ihr	(their)
ihr	(her)		
	Ihr	(your—formal)	

These possessive adjectives will have exactly the same adjective endings as *ein* words. Here is the complete declension *of mein* in comparison with *ein*:

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	ein Mann	ein Kind	eine Frau	_
	mein Mann	mein Kind	meine Frau	meine Kinder
accusative	einen Mann	ein Kind	eine Frau	_
	meinen Mann	mein Kind	meine Frau	meine Kinder
genitive	eines Mannes	eines Kindes	einer Frau	_
	meines Mannes	meines Kindes	meiner Frau	meiner Kinder
dative	einem Mann	einem Kind	einer Frau	_
	meinem Mann	meinem Kind	meiner Frau	meinen Kindern

7.9. As with all other adjectives, the ending of a possessive adjective is determined by the noun that immediately follows it:

Sein Kind (neut. nom.) ist hier—His child is here.

Der Mann liebt seinen Sohn (mas. acc.)—The man loves his son.

Der Hund seiner Mutter (fem., gen.) ist freundlich—The dog of his mother is friendly.

Er schreibt seinen Freunden (pl. dat.) viele E-mails—He writes his friends many e-mails.

The form of the possessive adjective (whether it is my, your, his, its, her, our, your, or their) is determined by the noun to which it refers. Here are examples:

Ich liebe meine Katze—I love my cat. (meine indicates that Katze is feminine accusative.)

Liebst du deinen Hund?—Do you love your dog? (deinen indicates that Hund is masculine accusative.)

Er hilft sein*er* Mutter—He helps *his* mother (sein*er* indicates that *Mutter* is feminine dative.)

Sie liebt ihre Tochter—She loves her daughter (ihre indicates that *Tochter* is feminine accusative.)

Es hat seine Schwierigkeiten—It has its problems (seine indicates that Schwierigkeiten is plural accusative.)

Wir glauben unseren Freunden—We believe our friends (unseren indicates that Freunden is plural dative.)

Seht ihr *euer* Kind?—Do *you* see your child? (euer with *no* ending indicates that *Kind* is neuter accusative.)

Kennen sie ihren Briefträger?—Do they know their mailman? (ihren indicates that Briefträger is masculine accusative.)

Kennen Sie Ihre Nachbarin? — Do you know *your* neighbor? (Ihre indicates *Nachbarin* is feminine accusative.)

7.10. It is particularly important to memorize the possessive adjectives for *his* and *its* (*sein*) and for *her* and *their* (*ihr*), because these are the adjectives most often encountered. Note that these possessive adjectives also will be used for inanimate nouns, depending on whether the nouns are masculine, neuter, feminine, or plural. Here are examples:

Jeder Tag (masculine) hat seinen Abend—Every day has its evening.

Jedes Dach (neuter) hat sein Ungemach—Every roof (or household) has its adversity.

Die Schule (feminine) hat ihre Regeln—The school has its rules.

Die Länder (plural) haben ihre eigenen Sitten—The countries have their own customs.

Note that sein (his, its) as a possessive adjective has nothing to do with the verb sein (to be). If it is a possessive adjective, it will usually appear in front of the noun: Sein Freund ist hier—His friend is here.

7.11. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Folget meinen Worten, nicht meinen Taten!
- 2. Die Freundschaft hat ihre Grenzen (limits).
- 3. Lerne Ordnung, übe (practice) sie; Ordnung spart dir Zeit und Müh' (effort)!
- 4. Kleiner Tom in großer Not singt abends für sein Abendbrot, singt für Butter und für Brot, doch ein Messer hat er nicht, und eine Frau, sie kriegt er nicht.
- 5. Ein weiser Sohn macht seinem Vater Freude, ein törichter (foolish one) macht seiner Mutter Kummer (trouble). (Proverbs)
- 6. Jede Flut hat ihre Ebbe.
- 7. Der Horcher (*listener*) an der Wand hört seine eigne (own) Schand'. (Note that an 'will always stand for an e.) (Moral: don't eavesdrop!)
- 8. Wenn der Briefträger Fräulein Meier sieht, fragt er sie nach ihrem Kurs im Korbflechten (basket-weaving).
- 9. Die Reue (repentance) ist ein hinkender (limping) Bote (messenger); sie kommt langsam, aber sicher (certainly).
- 10. Jedes *Haar* hat seinen Schatten (shadow), und jede Ameise (ant) hat ihren Zorn (wrath). (Even the smallest object is of some consequence.)
- 11. Faulheit geht so langsam, daß Armut (poverty) sie einholt (catches up with).
- 12. Der Briefträger ist der Lieblingssohn seiner Eltern (parents).
- 13. Die Schule, wie (as) sie ist, verblödet (dulls) die Kinder, da (since) sie ihre geistigen Fähigkeiten (capabilities) verzerrt (distorts).
- 14. Wahrlich, ich sage euch . . .
- 15. Liebe ist wie Tau (dew), sie fällt auf Rosen und auf Nesseln (nettles).
- 16. Jede Wolke hat ihren Silberstreifen.
- 17. Arme Gäste sendet uns Gott.
- 18. Dein Hirtenstab (shepherd's crook) und Stock (staff), sie sind mein Trost (comfort).

Du deckst für mich einen Tisch angesichts (in the face of) meiner Gegner.

(Note: is Gegner singular or plural?)

Du salbst (anoint) mein Haupt mit Öl.

Mein Becher (cup) ist übervoll. (Aus dem 23. Psalm)

Vocabulary

das Abendbrot—supper die Ameise (-n)—ant

* ander—other

die **Armut**—poverty

* außer—except for der Becher (-s, -)—cup

- * böse—angry, evil der Bote (-n, -n)—messenger
- * da—since
- * daß—that decken—to set, cover
- * dein—your
- ** doch nevertheless die Ebbe (-n) — ebb
- * eigen—own
 einholen—to catch up with
 die Eltern (pl.)—parents
 die Fähigkeit (-en)—ability
 die Faulheit—laziness
- * folgen (i)—to follow die Flut (-en)—flood
- * fragen nach—to ask about
- * die Freude (-n)—joy der Gast (-es, -e)—guest der Gegner (-s, -)—opponent
- * **geistig**—spiritual, intellectual die **Grenze** (-n)—limit
- * das **Haupt** (-s, -er)—head der **Hirtenstab** (-es, -e)—shepherd's crook der **Horcher** (-s, -)—listener
- * ihr—her, their
- * Ihr—your
- * kennen—to know

kriegen—to get

der Kummer-trouble

der Kurs (-es, -e)—course

langsam—slow, slowly

* mein—my

das Messer (-s, -) -knife

die Mühe (-n)—effort, trouble

- * nicht—not die Not—need
 - die **Schule** (-n)—school
- * sein—his, its
- * sicher—certain sparen—to save
- * die Tat (-en)—deed das Tier (-s, -e)—animal der Tisch (-es, -e)—table
- * tragen—to wear, carry übervoll—overflowing
- * unser—our das Versprechen (-s, -)—promise wahrlich—verily die Wand ("e)—wall
- * weise—wise
- * wenn—if, when
- * wie—like die Wolke (-n)—cloud der Zorn (-s)—wrath

7.12. Pronoun practice: use these sentences to help you memorize the pronouns.

- 1. Sie macht ihn glücklich.
- 2. Es ist ihr eine Freude.
- 3. Es gefällt ihnen nicht.
- 4. Vorsicht (caution, cf. foresight) spart dir Zeit.
- 5. Wo sind sie?
- 6. Sie erzählt ihrem Freund die Geschichte.
- 7. Die Faulheit des Kindes ist seinem Vater unerklärlich (inexplicable), und er versteht (understands) sie nicht.
- 8. Das Kind trägt immer seinen blauen Mantel, denn er gefällt ihm.
- 9. Ihn kennt sie nicht.

German Quickly

- 10. Ihr helfen sie oft.
- Ist das Ihnen klar?Sie kauft ihm ein interessantes Buch.
- 13. Meinen Freund sieht sie oft.
- 14. Kennt er uns nicht?
- 15. Wo findet ihr die Antwort?
- 16. Unsere Freundschaft ist mir sehr wichtig.
- 16. Unsere Freundschaft ist mir sehr wichtig.

 17. Ihm glauben sie.
- 18. Ihre Antwort versteht er nicht. (There are three correct translations for *Ihre Antwort*.)

Weak Nouns and Adjectives Used as Nouns

8.1. Weak nouns

There are some masculine and a very few neuter nouns that are called "weak nouns." These nouns will require an -en or -n ending to every case but the nominative singular. Some of these nouns will end in -e—such as der Junge (boy), der Kollege (colleague), der Soziologe (sociologist). Other common masculine weak nouns are: der Mensch, der Student, der Herr (man, lord), and der Philosoph. These nouns are problematic because they often look plural because of their -en endings; however they will rarely seriously affect your translations. I am discussing them at this point in order to give you still more practice in looking carefully at case endings.

Here are sentences indicating how the noun Student appears in all four cases:

Nominative: Der Student liest die Werke Spinozas-The student is reading the

works of Spinoza. (In this instance, it does not matter if you recognize

this noun as being weak.)

Accusative: Seine Eltern sehen *den Studenten* selten—His parents see *the student*

seldom.

Genitive: Der Freund *des Studenten* liest die Werke Nietzsches—The friend

of the student is reading the works of Nietzsche.

Dative: Seine Kurse sind *dem Studenten* wichtig—His courses are important *to the student.*

Most weak nouns—der Mensch (person), der Theologe (theologian), der Bär (bear), der Löwe (lion)—are animate. However, there are also a few inanimate weak nouns—der Name, der Gedanke (thought), der Friede (peace), das Herz (heart)—which are declined like animate weak nouns, except that they add -ens rather than -en to the genitive singular. Here is an example:

Nominative: Der Gedanke des Philosophen ist interessant—The thought of the

philosopher is interesting.

Accusative: Die Studenten verstehten den klaren Gedanken—The students

understand the clear thought.

Genitive: Der Kern des Gedankens gefällt dem Studenten-The essence of

the thought pleases the student.

Dative: Man hört sehr viel von dem Gedanken des Professors—One hears

very much about the thought of the professor.

8.2. Such nouns will be indicated in your dictionaries by (-en, -en), showing that their genitive ending is -en. I also use this convention in my vocabulary lists.

8.3. Weak nouns always have *-en* plural endings. Consequently, whether such a noun is singular or plural can be determined only by the preceding *der* or *die* articles. Compare the following:

	der Mensch	der Junge	der Name	das Herz
nominative				
singular	der Mensch	<i>der</i> Junge	<i>der</i> Name	das Herz
plural	die Menschen	die Jungen	<i>die</i> Namen	<i>die</i> Herzen
accusative				
singular*	den Menschen	<i>den</i> Jungen	den Namen	das Herz
plural	die Menschen	die Jungen	<i>die</i> Namen	<i>die</i> Herzen
genitive				
singular	des Menschen	des Jungen	<i>des</i> Namens	des Herzens
plural	der Menschen	der Jungen	der Namen	<i>der</i> Herzen
dative				
singular	dem Menschen	dem Jungen	dem Namen	dem Herzen
plural*	den Menschen	den Jungen	<i>den</i> Namen	den Herzen

*Note that the forms of the dative plural and masculine accusative singular are identical; therefore, only your knowledge of cases will tell you if a masculine weak noun is singular or plural.

Compare: Er spricht mit dem Propheten (dative singular)—He speaks with the prophet.

Er spricht mit den Propheten (dative plural)—He speaks with the prophets.

Er kennt den Propheten (masculine accusative)—He knows the prophet. Er kennt die Propheten (plural accusative)—He knows the prophets.

einen Studenten, einen Menschen, einen Elefanten, etc. will of course always be singular because *ein* is a singular article.

8.4. Translate these sentences (vocabulary is on pp. 77-78):

- 1. Das Auge ist des Herzens Zeiger (indicator).
- 2. Man erkennt den Löwen an den Klauen.
- 3. Das Unglück spricht gewaltig (powerfully) zu dem Herzen.
- 4. Feuer im Herzen bringt Rauch in den Kopf.
- 5. Der Wunsch ist oft der Vater des Gedankens.
- 6. Des Menschen Wille ist sein Himmelreich (kingdom of heaven).
- 7. Manchmal spricht die Professorin mit ihren Studenten.
- 8. Oft hat der Briefträger einen Brief für den netten Studenten.
- 9. Warum sind die Fußspüren vom Elefanten *rund*? Damit (so that) seine *Füße* hineinpassen!

8.5. Adjectives used as nouns

German adjectives often can be used as nouns. For example, faul (lazy) can be changed into der Faule (the lazy one); glücklich (happy) can be changed into der Glückliche (the happy one); and gelehrt (learned) can be changed into der Gelehrte (the learned one, or the scholar). These adjectives are capitalized and function as nouns; however, they still retain adjective endings according to whether they modify an understood masculine or feminine noun, or whether they are plural. Compare:

-	masculine	feminine	plural
nominative			-
adjective	der <i>gute</i> Mann	die <i>gute</i> Frau	die <i>guten</i> Leute
adjectival noun	der Gute	die <i>Gute</i>	die <i>Guten</i>
accusative			
adjective	den <i>guten</i> Mann	die <i>gute</i> Frau	die <i>guten</i> Leute
adjectival noun	den <i>Guten</i>	die <i>Gute</i>	die <i>Guten</i>
genitive			
adjective	des <i>guten</i> Mannes	der <i>guten</i> Frau	der <i>guten</i> Leute
adjectival noun	des Guten	der <i>Guten</i>	der <i>Guten</i>
dative			
adjective	dem guten Mann	der <i>guten</i> Frau	den <i>guten</i> Leuten
adjectival noun	dem Guten	der <i>Guten</i>	den <i>Guten</i>

Because the adjectival noun *der Guten* can be either feminine genitive, plural genitive, or feminine dative, you will be able to tell the case only by context. However, when it is genitive, *der Guten* will usually be plural rather than feminine.

Whenever a masculine adjectival noun is preceded by *ein* (which will happen only in the nominative case), its ending will be *-er:* ein Deutsch*er;* ein Gut*er;* ein Glücklich*er.*

8.6. Note that if an adjective refers to a noun that appears in a previous clause, it is not capitalized:

Die alten Propheten sind tot; den *neuen* glaubt man nicht—The old prophets are dead; one does not believe the new ones. If *Neuen* had been capitalized, the final part of the sentence would have been: one does not believe *new people*.

8.7. Although adjectives turned into nouns are officially nouns, their endings are the same as if they were adjectives. Here are all the possible endings for adjectives used as nouns. *Case ending exercise: what cases are these nouns in?* (If you are uncertain, consult 4.3)

ein Guter - a good one (only one possibility)
eine Gute - a good woman (two possibilities)
der Gute - the good one (only one possibility)
die Gute - the good woman (two possibilities)

die Guten - the good ones (two possibilities)

den Guten - the good one; the good ones (two possibilities)

der Guten - of the good ones (most common), of the good woman, to the good woman (three possibilities)

dem Guten - to the good one (only one possibility)

- **8.8. Adjectives also can be turned into neuter nouns,** which are generally abstract: das Schöne—the beautiful; das Gute—the good; das Wahre—the true; das Gewöhnliche—the usual.
- **8.9.** Translate the following sentences, stating the gender and case of each of the adjectival nouns (although some of these adjectival nouns are technically singular, it will not seriously affect your translation if you translate them as plurals because often these nouns have a plural sense to them, anyway):
 - 1. Das Neue ist für aktuelle Leute immer interessant.
 - 2. Dem Kranken ist nichts angenehm.
 - 3. Dem Kühnen gehört die Welt.
 - 4. Im Hause eines Faulen ist es immer Feiertag (holiday).
 - 5. Andere *Völker* haben Heilige, [aber] die [antiken] *Griechen* haben Weise [whom they worship]. (Nietzsche)
 - 6. Kleine Feinde und kleine Wunden verachtet kein Weiser.
 - 7. Des Menschen Leben hängt an einem Faden.
 - 8. Die Gesunden und die Kranken haben verschiedene Gedanken.
 - 9. Des Faulen Werktag ist morgen; sein Ruhetag ist heute.
- 10. Neue Heilige werfen die alten ins Gerumpel (junk pile). (Why isn't die alten capitalized? An explanation is in 8.6.)
- 11. Dem Reinen ist alles rein.
- 12. Wer kennt den Alten?
- 13. Fräulein Meier fragt nach den Alten.
- 14. Hoffnung ist das Brot des Elenden.

Vocabulary

- * abends—evenings
- * **aktuell**—current, modern, up-to-date
- * alles—everything
 angenehm—agreeable
 antik—ancient
 elend—miserable

- * erkennen—to recognize der Faden (-s, =)—thread der Feiertag (-es, -e)—holiday
- * fleißig-industrious
- **fragen (nach)—to ask (about) der Fußspur (-s, -en)—footprint der Gedanke (-ns, -n)—thought

German Quickly

- * gehören (i)—to belong to gesund—healthy gewaltig—powerfully der Grieche (-n, -n)—Greek heilig—holy, saintly; der Heilige—saint
- * heute—today hineinpassen—fit in

78

- * immer—always die Klaue (-n)—claw
- * der Kopf (-es =e)—head krank—sick kühn—daring, bold der Löwe (-n, -n)—lion manchmal—sometimes

- **der Mensch (-en, -en)—person
- * morgen—tomorrow
- * nichts—nothing
 der Rauch (-s)—smoke
 rein—pure
 der Ruhetag—day of rest
 verachten—to despise
 verschieden—different
- * weise—wise, sage
 werfen—to throw
 der Werktag (-es, -e)—work day
- * der **Wille** (-ns, no plural)—will die **Wunde** (-n)—wound
- * der **Wunsch** (-es, -e)—wish der **Zeiger** (-s, -)—indicator

8.10. Guess the following proper names:

Aristoteles	Sankt Georg	Salomo
Friedrich der Große	Tschaikowskij	Ödipus
Horaz	Johannas	Matthäus
Iwan der Große	Don Quichotte	Platon
Markus	Katharina die Große	Dostojewskij
Äsop	Erich der Rote	Dr. Schiwago
Richard Löwenherz	Chruschtschow	Lukas
Iwan der Schreckliche	Kain	Hiob (aus der Bibel)
Rachmaninow	Cupido	Karl der Große

The Various Uses of Es

Although *es* is the pronoun for *it*, there are several instances in which it will not be translated literally.

9.1. Es gibt

Es gibt (literally: it gives) means either there is if the object is singular, or there are if the object is plural. Examples are:

Es gibt keinen Rauch ohne Feuer — There is no smoke without fire.

Es gibt leider kein Bier mehr—Unfortunately, there's no more beer.

Es gibt viele Antworten auf diese komplizierte Frage—There are many answers to this complicated question.

In alten Häusern gibt es viele Mäuse, in alten Pelzen gibt es viele Läuse—In old houses there are many mice; in old furs, there are many lice.

9.2. Es ist and es sind

Es ist and es sind are both used in a similar way. Es ist will mean there is (and the predicate nominative will be singular), and es sind will mean there are (and the predicate nominative will be plural). Examples are:

Es ist eine Katze im Haus—There is a cat in the house.
Es sind keine Mäuse in der Nähe—There are no mice near by.

9.3. The "pay attention" es

Occasionally, the subject of a German sentence will appear later in the sentence so that it can receive emphasis; therefore the sentence will begin with *es* merely in order to gain the reader's attention. In these cases, *es* is best left untranslated. You can recognize these sentences because

- 1. they will always begin with es;
- 2. the "real" subject of the sentence will be in the nominative case; and
- 3. occasionally the verb will be plural.

Here are examples of the "pay attention" es:

Es ist nicht jede schwarze Katze eine Hexe—Not every black cat is a witch.

Es fällt kein Baum beim ersten Streich—No tree falls from the first blow.

Es hat alles einen Anfang und ein Ende-Everything has a beginning and an end.

Es gehen viele geduldige Schafe in einen Stall—Many patient sheep go into a stable. (Because the sheep are patient, the stable can accommodate all of them.)

9.4. Translate these sentences:

- I. Es gibt keine Regeln ohne Ausnahmen (exceptions).
- 2. Es beißt kein Wolf den anderen (i.e. There is honor among thieves.)
- 3. Es hilft keine Krone für das Kopfweh. (No matter how powerful you are, a Kopfweh still hurts!)
- 4. Es führen viele Wege nach Rom.
- 5. Es gibt keine Würde (dignity) ohne [eine] Bürde.
- 6. Es sind zu viele Köche in der Küche.
- 7. Es *findet* auch ein *Blinder* ein Hufeisen *(horseshoe)*. (Even a blind man sometimes has good luck.)
- 8. Es fallen keine Äpfel weit vom Baum.
- 9. Es hofft der Mensch, solang (as long as) er lebt.
- 10. Es gibt keine häßlichen Liebchen und keine schönen Gefängnisse.
- 11. Die Herrscher (rulers) wechseln nie; es wechseln nur die Namen.
- 12. Niemand stirbt jetzt an tödlichen Wahrheiten: *es gibt* zu viele Gegengifte. (Nietzsche)
- 13. Selbst (even) unter *Dieben* gibt es Ehre (*honor*).
- 14. Es *fällt* kein Gelehrter vom Himmel. (In other words, no one is born welleducated.)

Vocabulary

- **ander—other
- **auch—also, even
 die Ausnahme (-n)—exception
 der Baum (-es, =e)—tree
 beißen—to bite
 das Dieb (-es, -e)—thief
- * fallen (fällt) (i)—to fall das Gefängnis (-ses, -se)—prison
- * gehen (i)—to go gelehrt—learned, scholarly

die Ehre-honor

- * es gibt—there is, there are das Gegengift (-es. -e)—antidote häßlich—ugly der Herrscher (-s, -)—ruler
- * der **Himmel** (-s, -)—heaven, sky das **Hufeisen** (-s, -)—horseshoe

- der Koch (-es, "e)—cook das Kopfweh (-s)—headache die Krone (-n)—crown die Küche (-n)—kitchen das Liebchen (-s, -)—little loved one
- * **nur**—only
- * die Regel (-n)-rule
- * solang—as long as
- * sterben (i)—to die tödlich—deathly
- * unter—among
- * viel—much, many wechseln—to change
- * weit—far die Würde—dignity
- * zu—too

Reading Selection: Das Sprichwort

(Vocabulary for this section can be found in the back of the book, in Appendix K. Or you may wish to use a dictionary in order to increase your speed in looking up words. Note: underlined words indicate that the translation is provided for all of them.)

In jedem Land hört man Sprichwörter. Die folgenden Sprichwörter sind Ihnen wahrscheinlich schon bekannt (*familiar*): "Blut ist dicker als Wasser"; "Ein Vogel auf der Hand ist besser als zwei im Busch", und so weiter.

Die meisten Sprichwörter sind sehr alt—viele erscheinen sogar in der Bibel. Die typischen Gestalten der Sprichwörter sind der Bauer, der König, der Fürst (prince), die gehorsame (obedient) Frau, der Arzt, der Dieb, der Heilige (saint), Gott und der Teufel. Die Sprichwörter beschreiben oft das wünschenswerte Benehmen (behaviour) eines anständigen (decent, respectable) Menschen. Solch ein Mensch arbeitet viel, er hilft seinen Nachbarn, er fürchtet (und liebt) Gott, und er ist vorsichtig. Er ist auch der Meinung, sein Glück möge (may) nicht lange dauern (last).

In den Sprichwörtern begegnet man auch vielen Tieren. Typische Tiere sind das Huhn, die Kuh (und ihr Kalb), das Pferd, der Esel, der Hund, die Katze, die Maus, der Wolf und der Fuchs. Manche Sprichwörter beschreiben das Verhältnis (relationship) zwischen dem Menschen und dem Tier. Beispiele sind: "Wenn der Reiter nichts taugt (amount to), gibt er dem Pferd die Schuld"; "Wer zwei Hasen (rabbits) auf einmal jagt (hunts), fängt keinen"; "Alte Hühner machen gute Suppen"; "Bellende (barking) Hunde beißen nicht".

Man findet oft in den Tiersprichwörtern eine Personifizierung des Tieres. Hier sind einige wiederkehrende (recurring) Themen solcher Sprichwörter. (1) Man ist immer, was man ist: "Wenn der Esel eine Löwenhaut (lionskin) trägt, gucken die Ohren hervor (peek out from under it)", "Ein Pudel, dem man eine Mähne geschoren hat (that one has sheared so that it has a mane), ist noch kein Löwe (lion)" (2) Ein behindertes (handicapped) Geschöpf (creature) hat manchmal Glück: "Auch (even) eine blinde Sau findet eine Eichel (acorn)" (3) Irren ist "menschlich": "Auch der beste Gaul (nag, horse) stolpert (stumbles) einmal"; "Auch kluge Hühner legen (Eier) einmal in Nesseln". (4) Das Prahlen (bragging) taugt nichts: "Hühner, die (who) viel gackern (cackle), legen keine Eier".

Die kleinen Tiere (zum Beispiel das Schäflein und das Kalb) symbolisieren meistens menschliche Kinder: "Ein vorwitziges (impertinent) Schäflein frißt der Wolf; "Eine gute Kuh hat manchmal ein übles Kalb"; "Wer als (as a) Kalb in die Fremde (abroad) geht, kommt als Kuh heim (home)".

Natürlich findet man noch weitere wiederkehrende Themen in den Sprichwörtern. Die Beobachtungen über Hoffnung, Glück, Armut und Alter sind besonders interessant. Wenn Sie die Sprichwörter jetzt lesen, beachten Sie, wie (how) verschiedene Themen behandelt werden (are treated)!

The Future Tense

10.1. There is less use of the future tense in German than in English. For example, whenever a sentence contains a future adverb in German, the present tense will be used, even though the sentence will be translated into English as a future tense. Examples are:

Morgen kommt der Briefträger - Tomorrow the mailman will come.

Übermorgen kommt der Bibelverkäufer — The day after tomorrow the Bible salesman will come.

Fräulein Meier fliegt nächstes Jahr nach Berlin-Fräulein Meier will fly to Berlin next year.

Eines Tages schwimmt sie im kalten See—One day she will swim in the cold lake.

10.2. However, when the time sequence is unclear, the verb werden will be used in conjunction with another verb in order to form the future tense. Note that werden is conjugated and appears in "second" place in the sentence while the other verb appears in its infinitival form at the end of the clause:

Vielleicht wird Fräulein Meier nach Berlin fliegen—Perhaps Fräulein Meier will fly to Berlin.

Die Studenten werden bestimmt viel lernen—The students will certainly learn a lot.

Here is a chart:

ich werde hier sein ich werde das singen (I will sing that) (I will be here) du wirst hier sein du wirst das singen (you will be here) (you will sing that) er wird hier sein sie wird das singen (she will sing that) (he will be here) wir werden hier sein wir werden das singen (we will be here) (we will sing that) ihr werdet hier sein ihr werdet das singen (vou will be here) (you will sing that) sie werden das singen sie werden hier sein (they will be here) (they will sing that) Sie werden hier sein Sie werden das singen (you will be here) (you will sing that)

In dependent clauses, the word order will be as follows:

Sie weiß nicht, wann der Briefträger kommen wird— She does not know when the mailman will come.

Es ist nicht klar, ob Fräulein Meier viele Zeitungsartikel schreiben wird—It is not clear if Fräulein Meier will write many newspaper articles.

10.3. From now on be careful when you see the verb werden! When it is the only verb in the sentence, it will only mean to become, to grow. When werden is used with any infinitive (which will appear at the end of the clause), it will always mean will. Compare the following:

Der Mann wird alt—The man grows old. (present)

Moreover, whenever *wird* is followed by *zu*, *werden* will often mean *become*, and the *zu* will not be translated:

Es wird zu Staub—It becomes dust.

Der Mann wird den Film sehen-The man will see the film. (future)

Now, whenever you see *werden*, be on the lookout for verb infinitives lurking at the end of the clause; if there are any, the sentence will have to be translated in the future tense (*will*).

10.4. Translate these sentences. Be particularly aware of verb tenses!

- I. Ein dreitägiger Gast wird zu einer Last.
- 2. Der Briefträger wird mit Fräulein Meier in den Zoo gehen.
- 3. Morgen früh (tomorrow morning) besucht ein Bibelverkäufer (Bible salesman) Fräulein Meier.
- 4. Irgendwann (at some point) wird der Student eine Fremdsprache (foreign language) lernen.
- 5. Die *Ersten* werden die *Letzten* und die Letzten werden die Ersten sein. (Note: *sein* is the infinitive for both *werden* auxiliaries)
- 6. Der Irrtum eines Augenblicks wird zur Sorge eines Lebens. (Proverbs)
- 7. Wird Fräulein Meier die Weltanschauung des Briefträgers je verstehen?
- 8. Es wird dem Gerechten kein Leid (sorrow) geschehen; aber die Gottlosen werden voll (filled with) Unglücks sein. (Proverbs)
- 9. Wer wird der Spatzen (sparrows) wegen das Säen (sowing) unterlassen (neglect)?
- 10. Wenn der Berg nicht zum Propheten kommt, so kommt er zu ihm.
- II. Wanderers Nachtlied (This is a famous and beloved poem; note that the sounds become softer and softer.)

Über allen Gipfeln (mountain peaks)
Ist Ruh,
In allen Wipfeln (tree tops)
Spürest du
Kaum (barely) einen Hauch (breath):
Die Vögelein schweigen im Walde.
Warte nur, balde
Ruhest du auch.
(Goethe)

Vocabulary

- * der Augenblick (-es, -e) moment
- * bald—soon
 der Berg (-es, -e)—mountain
 besuchen—to visit
 dreitägig—three day
- * endlich—finally
- * erst—first
 fliegen (i)—to fly
 die Fremdsprache (-n)—foreign
 language

- der Gast (-es, -e)—guest gerecht—righteous
- * geschehen (geschieht) (i)—happen, to occur der Hauch (-es, -e)—breath irgendwann—at some point
- * je—ever kaum—hardly, barely die Last (-en)—burden das Leid—sorrow

- **letzt—last
 morgen früh—tomorrow morning
 das Nachtlied (-es, -er)—night song
- **nur—only, just
 die Ruhe—peace
 ruhen (i)—to rest, sleep
 ruhig—quiet
- * über—over
 schweigen (i)—to be silent
 die Sorge (-n)—worry
 spüren—to feel

- das Unglück (-s, -e) misfortune
- * unter—among
- * verstehen—to understand der Vogel (-s, =)—bird der Wald (-es, =er)—woods, forest
- * warten (i)—to wait
- **wegen—because of
- **die **Weltanschauung** (-en)—worldview
- * werden (wird)—to become; will
- * wissen (weiß)—to know

10.5. Vocabulary aid: continue to be aware of verb tenses!

- 1. Ich werde die Dramen Georg Kaisers nie verstehen.
- 2. Ein Gast wie ein Fisch bleibt nicht lange frisch.
- 3. Eines Tages wird sie den Armen helfen.
- 4. Vielleicht werden die Studenten die Philosophie Schopenhauers studieren.
- 5. Niemand von diesen Studenten wird das ganze Buch lesen.
- 6. Morgen fliegen sie nach Europa.
- 7. Wer weiß, was der Abend bringt?
- 8. Sage mir, mit wem du umgehst (go around), und ich sage dir, wer du bist.

Comparison (and Superlative) of Adjectives and Adverbs

Note: this chapter is trickier than it looks. The recognition of comparatives requires a careful observation of adjectival and adverbial endings.

11.1. Comparison of adjectives

There are three basic forms of the adjective, both in German and in English: **regular** (happy), **comparative** (happier), and **superlative** (happiest). Here are examples:

regular	comparative	superlative
nett (nice)	netter (nicer)	nettest-* (nicest)
warm (warm)	wärmer (warmer)	wärmst-* (warmest)
lang (long)	länger (longer)	längst-* (longest)

^{*}The dash at the end of the superlative adjectives indicates that these adjectives must have adjective endings following the superlative (-st) ending. An example is: "der wärmste Tag"—The warmest day.

Monosyllabic adjectives with stem vowels a, o, or u generally will take an umlaut.

Here are examples:

alt (old) älter (older) ältest- (oldest)
kalt (cold) kälter (colder) kältest- (coldest)
dumm (dumb) dümmer (dumber) dümmst- (dumbest)

11.2. Like regular adjectives, adjectives with comparative and superlative endings will also take the traditional adjective endings (see 4.1–4.4 for review). The comparative or superlative ending is added to the adjective before the usual ending that indicates the declension. Because adjectives following *der* and most *ein* words will have *-e* or *-en* endings, sometimes the comparative or superlative ending will seem hidden. Here are examples:

der nettere Mann—the nicer man (masculine nominative comparative)
der netteste Mann—the nicest man (masculine nominative superlative)
die netteren Frauen—the nicer women (plural nominative or accusative comparative)
die nettesten Frauen—the nicest women (plural nominative or accusative superlative)
den netteren Mann—the nicer man (masculine accusative comparative)
den nettesten Mann—the nicest man (masculine accusative superlative)

Do not mistake the strong masculine adjective ending for the comparative! "Ein netter Mann" is only "a *nice* man." The correct form for "a *nicer* man" would be "ein netterer Mann."

Here are other instances in which -er endings are not comparative:

Alter Wein ist guter Wein—Old wine is good wine.

Die Suppen armer Leute sind dünn—The soups of poor people are thin.

Die Frau ist bei schlechter Laune—The woman is in a bad mood.

11.3. Note the following regular and comparative adjective endings:

Regular: der alte Freund—the old friend

ein alter Freund-an old friend

Regular Predicate Adjective: der Freund ist alt—the friend is old

Comparative: der ältere Freund—the older friend

ein älterer Freund-an older friend

Comparative Predicate Adjective: der Freund ist älter—the friend is older

When the superlative form of the adjective is a predicate adjective, it will appear in the following way:

Das kleine Kind ist am nettesten—The small child is the nicest.

Or: Das kleine Kind ist das netteste-The small child is the nicest.

Die ältesten Lieder sind am schönsten (or die schönsten)—The oldest songs are the most beautiful.

11.4. Common adjective combinations

The most common adjective combination is als (than)

Geben ist seliger als Nehmen—Giving is more blessed than receiving.

When this construction is used, the comparative adjective is always a predicate adjective and therefore always ends in -er.

Here are more examples:

Eine Biene ist *besser als* tausend Fliegen—One bee is *better than* a thousand flies. Der Arzt ist oft *gefährlicher als* die Krankheit—The doctor is often *more dangerous than* the disease.

Other comparative adjective combinations are: so . . . wie (as . . . as), je . . . desto (the . . . the), and immer with a comparative adjective.

Here are examples:

Das kaiserliche Wort ist so kräftig wie ein Eid—The imperial word is as strong as an oath.

Das Huhn ist nicht so klug wie der Fuchs-The hen is not as clever as the fox.

Je höher der Kirchturm, desto schöner das Geläute—The higher the church tower, the more beautiful the chimes.

Fräulein Meier und der Briefträger werden immer freundlicher—Fräulein Meier and the mailman are becoming friendlier and friendlier.

Wenn die Katze aus dem Haus ist, werden die Mäuse *immer frecher*—When the cat is out of the house, the mice become *bolder and bolder*.

11.5. The following adjectives will have irregular forms:

regular	comparative	superlative	
groß (large, tall)	größer <i>(taller)</i>	größt- <i>(tallest)</i>	
gut (good)	besser (better)	best- (best)	
hoch (high)	höher (higher)	höchst- (highest)	

nah(e) (near)	näher (nearer)	nächst- (nearest)
viel (many)	mehr (more)	meist- (most)

11.6. Comparison of adverbs

The forms of the adverb in the comparative and superlative are the same as the forms of the predicate adjective:

Das Kind läuft schnell—The child runs fast. (Regular)

Der Student läuft schneller—The student runs faster. (Comparative)

Der Wanderer läuft am schnellsten-The hiker runs the fastest. (Superlative)

The superlative adverb will always have the $am \dots -en$ form, regardless of where it appears in the sentence.

Here is an example of a superlative adverb modifying an adjective:

Die am frühesten erscheinenden Erdbeeren schmecken am besten—The earliest appearing strawberries taste the best.

Note that the *am* has nothing to do with *an* + *dem*. Because superlative is the best, by definition, regard the *am* as a kind of pedestal to prop up the adverb or predicate adjective to indicate its splendor!

11.7. The adjective formulas also apply to adverbs:

Ein Doktor und ein Bauer wissen *mehr als* ein Doktor allein—A doctor and a farmer know *more than* a doctor alone.

Sie lieben einander so zärtlich wie Tristan und Isolde—They love one another as tenderly as Tristan and Isolde.

Je tiefer ich grabe, desto mehr Wasser finde ich — The deeper I dig, the more water I find. Ich grabe immer tiefer — I dig more and more deeply.

11.8. The adverbs bald (soon) and gern (gladly) have irregular forms:

bald (soon)	eher (sooner)	am ehesten (soonest)
gern (likes to,	lieber(prefers to,	am liebsten (best of all,
gladly)	preferably)	most preferably)

Gern and its comparative forms are translated as follows:

Der Briefträger trinkt gern Wasser—The mailman likes to drink water, aber er trinkt Coca-Cola lieber—but he prefers to drink Coke, und er trinkt Wein am

liebsten—and he likes to drink wine the best. Note that lieber means preferably rather than lover.

11.9. Realize, also that whenever an adverb has an -er ending, it will nearly always be comparative! This is still another reason for you to distinguish between adjectives and adverbs. Here are some more comparative adverbs:

Er läuft schneller, wenn es kalt ist—He walks more quickly when it is cold.
Ein freundlicher Mann hilft seiner Familie öfter—A friendly man helps his family more often.

Die Freunde alter Leute laufen langsamer als die Freunde junger Leute—The friends of old people walk more slowly than the friends of young people.

11.10. Note the important rule of thumb: Whenever an adjective with an -er ending is before a noun, it will rarely be comparative; if it has an -er ending and no noun is near it, it will most likely be comparative!

Heute ist ein lang**er** Tag—Today is a **long** day. Heute scheint läng**er als** gestern—Today seems **longer** than yesterday.

Although it is possible for an adjective preceding a noun to be comparative, the adjective ending right before the noun will usually be -e or -en: der ältere Mann (the older man); der netteren Frau (to or for the nicer woman); des freundlicheren Kindes (of the friendlier child)

11.11. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Je magerer der Hund, desto fetter die Flöhe.
- 2. Die süßesten Trauben (grapes) hängen am höchsten.
- 3. Die Augen sind größer als der Magen (stomach).
- 4. Es ersaufen (drown) mehr Leute im Wein als im Rhein.
- 5. Ein Dummer findet zehn Dümmere.
- 6. Es gibt kein süßeres Leiden als Hoffen.
- 7. Die Liebe der Bürger ist des Landes stärkste Mauer (wall).
- 8. Die Kühe fremder Leute haben größere Euter.
- 9. Der faulsten Sau gehört immer der größte Dreck (mud).
- 10. Erfahrung (experience) ist ein langer Weg.
- 11. Schlaf nach dem Mittagstisch ist so gesund wie ein fauler Fisch.
- 12. Dem Schuster (cobbler) ist der Schuh wichtiger als der Fuß.
- 13. Es gibt mehr alte Weintrinker als alte Ärzte.

- 14. Überzeugungen *(convictions)* sind gefährlichere *Feinde* der Wahrheit als Lügen. (Nietzsche)
- 15. Die Lüge ist ein *Schneeball*; je *länger* man sie wälzt *(rolls)*, desto größer wird sie. (Luther)
- 16. Wird Fräulein Meier immer schöner mit jedem Tag?
- 17. Liebe ist stärker als Tod. (Paul Tillich)
- 18. Ein guter Ruf (reputation) ist köstlicher als großer Reichtum, und anziehendes (attractive) Wesen (character) [ist] besser als Silber und Gold. (Proverbs)

Vocabulary

- * allein—alone
- * als—than
- * alt, älter, am ältesten—old
- * das Beispiel (-s, -e)—example
- ** böse—bad
 der Bürger (-s, -)—citizen
 dumm, dümmer, am dümmsten—
 dumb
- * dunkel—dark
 die Erfahrung (-en)—experience
 ersaufen (ersäuft)—to drown
 das Euter (-s, -)—udder
 der Floh (-es, -e)—flea
 fremd—strange, other
 gefährlich—dangerous
- * **gefallen** (i)—to please
- * **gehören** (i)—to belong to
- * **gelten** (gilt)—to be valid, worth
- * **gern, lieber, am liebsten**—likes to, preferably, best
- * gleich—same, equal
- ** groß, größer, am größten—tall, large, great
 - hängen (i)—to hang
- * hoch, höher, am höchsten—high
- * immer—always
- * immer (& comparative)—more and more immer wieder—again and again
- * je . . . desto—the . . . the

kosten—to cost köstlich—costly

- ** die **Kuh** (-e)—cow
- * das Land (-es, =er)—country das Leiden (-s, -)—sorrow die Lüge (-n)—lie der Magen (-s, -)—stomach mager—thin die Mauer (-n)—wall
- der Mittagstisch—lunch

 * der Morgen (-s, -)—morning
- * nach—after
- * das **Pfund** (-es, -e)—pound * das **Recht** (-es, -e)—justice
- der **Reichtum** (-s)—wealth
 der **Rhein**—Rhine river
 der **Ruf** (-es, -e)—reputation, calling
 die **Sau** (-e)—sow
 der **Schlaf** (-es)—sleep
 der **Schuster** (-s, -)—cobbler
- * schwer—heavy, hard
- * **so...wie**—as...as der **Spaß** (-es, -e)—fun
- * stark—strong die Traube (-n)—grape die Überzeugung (-en)—conviction die Unze (-n)—ounce
- ** viel, mehr, am meisten—much, more, most wälzen (wälzt)—to roll

- * der **Weg** (-es, -e)—way
- * wert—worth das Wesen (-s, -)—being, character
- wichtig-important
- * wiederholen—to repeat

11.12. Vocabulary Aid

- 1. Alte Freunde und alter Wein sind am besten.
- 2. Eine Hand voll (full of) Gold ist schwerer als ein Sack voll Recht und Wahrheit.
- 3. Er ist so hungrig wie eine Kirchenmaus.
- 4. Der Spaß (fun) kostet mehr, als er wert ist.
- 5. Doktor Maß (moderation), Doktor Stille und Doktor Frohmann (good cheer) sind die größten Ärzte.
- 6. Eine Unze guten Beispiels gilt mehr als ein Pfund Worte.
- 7. Lieber allein als in böser Gemein (company).
- 8. Jedes Pferd (horse) findet seinen Packen (pack) am schwersten.
- 9. Die Kette (chain) ist nicht stärker als ihr schwächstes Glied (link).
- 10. Je dunkler die Nacht, desto schöner der Morgen.

11.13. Comparative (or superlative) or not exercise:

ein armer Mann, die freundlichere Frau, er ist glücklicher, die Freunde schöner Leute, ein freundlicher Briefträger, er schreibt schneller, die schönste Frau, Tom ist bei schlechter Laune, ein großer Hund, er ist dicker als sie, die schöner singende Frau, teurer Wein, die nettesten Hunde, größere Elefanten, am höchsten, die Eltern kleiner Kinder

Da- and Wo-Compounds

Da- and *wo*- compounds are used as placeholders in place of pronouns when inanimate objects are dealt with as objects of prepositions. They are called compounds because they combine with the preposition to become one word.

12.1. Da-compounds

As a compound, da-generally means it, this, that, or them. Here are examples:

Er schreibt *mit* dem Bleistift—He writes *with* the pencil.

Er schreibt damit—He writes with it.

Fräulein Meier denkt manchmal an ihre Arbeit—Fräulein Meier sometimes thinks about her work.

Denkt sie daran? - Does she think about it?

Der kleine Hund hat Angst *vor dem Donner*—The small dog is afraid *of the thunder*. Der kleine Hund hat Angst *davor*—The small dog is afraid *of it*.

However, while *da* will virtually always mean *it* (or sometimes *them*), the same *da*-compound can be translated differently depending on the *verb* in the clause. Here is an example:

Fräulein Meier wartet *auf den Bus*—Fräulein Meier is waiting *for the bus*. Fräulein Meier wartet *darauf*—Fräulein Meier waits *for it.*

Fräulein Meier sitzt auf dem Sofa-Fräulein Meier sits on the sofa.

Fräulein Meier sitzt darauf-Fräulein Meier sits on it.

Fräulein Meier hört nicht auf die Warnungen—Fräulein Meier does not listen to the warnings.

Fräulein Meier hört nicht darauf-Fräulein Meier does not listen to them.

Therefore, be careful to understand the entire context of the sentence before you translate the *da*-compound.

In the previous sentences, darauf meant for it, on it, and to them.

If a preposition begins with a vowel, an "r" is added for purposes of pronunciation. Here are examples:

Er denkt an das Buch—He thinks of the book.

Er denkt daran-He thinks of it.

Sie lacht über ihren Lieblingswitz-She laughs at her favorite joke.

Sie lacht darüber-She laughs at it.

12.2. Translate the following (memorize the verbs and prepositions if you aren't already familiar with them):

- 1. Sie fragt danach.
- 2. Glauben Sie daran?
- 3. Er spricht davon.
- 4. Schreiben sie darüber?
- 5. Wir helfen ihr damit.
- 6. Haben sie keine Zeit dafür?
- 7. Er spricht dagegen.
- 8. Sie hofft darauf.
- 9. Es gibt kein Wasser darin.
- 10. Sie hat Angst davor.

12.3. When prepositions normally follow verbs in German (in set phrases such as denken an, warten auf, etc.), a da-compound will be used as a place-holder in an independent clause which will indicate the arrival of a dependent clause:

Fräulein Meier denkt oft *daran*, daß der Briefträger ihr schöne Gedichte schreibt—Fräulein Meier often thinks *about the fact* that the mailman writes beautiful poems to her.

Der Briefträger wartet *darauf*, daß er eine Antwort bekommt—The mailman waits so that he will get an answer.

In these cases, the *da*-compound may be translated, or it may be left out, whichever sounds smoother.

12.4. Wo is used as an interrogative, generally meaning "which" or "what":

Worauf wartet er? — For what is he waiting? Worüber lacht sie? — At what is she laughing? Womit schreiben Sie? — With what are you writing?

A wo-compound can also be used in the middle of a sentence:

Hier ist der Bleistift, *womit* er schreibt—Here is the pencil *with which* he is writing. Das ist die Antwort, *worauf* sie wartet—That is the answer *for which* she is waiting.

12.6. Translate these sentences:

- I. Der Reichtum (wealth) gleicht dem Seewasser; je mehr man davon trinkt, desto durstiger wird man. (Schopenhauer)
- 2. Die Heirat (marriage) gleicht einem Vogelhaus; wer darin ist, will (wants) hinaus.
- 3. Die Henne legt (lays) gern ins Nest, worin Eier (eggs) schon sind.
- 4. Wo Gott eine Kirche baut, stellt der Teufel eine Kapelle daneben (nämlich ein Wirtshaus [tavern]).
- 5. Der Mund sagt es, aber das Herz weiß nichts davon.
- 6. Wer (whoever) nach dem Kranze (wreath) strebt, bekommt eine Blume daraus (as a consolation prize!).
- 7. Höre darauf, was andere sagen, und sei vorsichtig, ehe (before) du sprichst.
- 8. Die Furcht des Herrn [Gott] ist ein gesegneter (blessed) Garten; die schönsten Blumen wachsen darin.
- 9. Der junge Arzt weiß nicht immer, wovon er spricht.
- 10. Worauf wartet Fräulein Meier? Auf wen wartet der Briefträger?

Vocabulary

- * bauen—to build die Blume (-n)—flower
- * da—it
 durstig—thirsty
- * ehe—before das Ei (-s, -er)—egg
- * die Furcht—fear
- * gegen—against gesegnet—blessed

- * gleichen (i)—to resemble die Heirat (-en)—marriage
- * hinaus—out
- * hoffen auf—to hope for
- * je ... desto—the ... the die Kapelle (-n)—chapel die Kirche (-n)—church der Kranz (-es, =e)—wreath der Mund (-es,-er)—mouth

- * nämlich—namely
- * schon—already
- * schreiben (über)—to write about das Seewasser (-s, -)—sea water
- * stellen—to place streben nach—to strive for das Vogelhaus (-es, -er)—birdhouse

vorsichtig-careful

- ** warten auf—to wait for
- * was—what
- * wer—who, whoever
- **wissen (weiß)—to know
- * wo—which, what, where

Reading Selection: *Der Elefant* (Eine Umarbeitung einer Kurzgeschichte von Slawomir Mrozek)

Der *Direktor* des Zoos ist kein redlicher Mann. Die Tiere benutzt er lediglich (merely) als [die] Mittel (means) seiner eigenen Karriere. In seinem Zoo hat die Giraffe einen kurzen Hals (neck); das Stachelschwein hat keine Stacheln; und der Waschbär (raccoon) wäscht sich nicht. Dieser Zustand ist um so bedauerlicher, weil (because) oftmals viele Schulkinder in diesen Zoo gehen.

Der Zoo liegt in einem kleinen Dorf, und es fehlt ihm an manchen (some) der wichtigsten Tiere. Zum Beispiel fehlt es ihm an einem Elefanten. (Dreitausend Kaninchen [rabbits] sind kein guter Ersatz dafür!) Aber endlich bekommt der Zoo das Geld für den Kauf (purchase) eines Elefanten. Alle Bewohner (inhabitants) des Dorfs erwarten die Ankunft (arrival) des Elefanten mit Freude.

Aber der Direktor des Zoos hat einen heimlichen (secret) Plan. Elefanten sind allerdings (to be sure) sehr teuer. Statt eines lebendigen Tiers wird der Zoo also einen Elefanten aus Gummi (rubber) bekommen. Denn jeder weiß, Elefanten sind sehr träge (sluggish); so wird man ein Plakat (sign) vor den Gummielefanten stellen, worauf man schreibt: "Besonders träge."

So kauft der Direktor des Zoos einen Elefanten aus Gummi. Dann haben zwei Angestellte (employees) die Aufgabe (task), ihn aufzublasen (of inflating it). Aber diese Aufgabe ist ihnen unmöglich (impossible), weil das Gummitier einfach zu groß ist. Als die zwei Männer ruhen (rest), bemerken sie ein Gasrohr (gas pipe), und sie kommen auf eine wunderbare Idee. Sie werden den Gummielefanten mit dem Gas von dem Gasrohr aufblasen. Sie tun das, und der Elefant wird sofort sehr groß. Die Angestellten betrachten (observe) das Tier mit Freude. Weil es jetzt sehr spät ist, kehren (return) die Angestellten zufrieden (satisfied) nach Hause.

Am anderen (next) Morgen stellt der Direktor des Zoos den Elefanten neben den Affenkäfig (monkey cage). Das Plakat "Besonders träge—läuft überhaupt nicht" steht vor ihm. Nach der Meinung des Direktors ist der Elefant großartig (splendid).

Unter den ersten Besuchern (visitors) des Zoos sind viele Schulkinder und ihr Lehrer. Der Lehrer hat eine gute Kenntnis der Tierkunde (zoology). Er erzählt viel über die Größe und die Macht des Elefanten.

Aber während der Rede (lecture) des Lehrers geschieht etwas. Der Wind setzt den Elefanten in Bewegung (motion), und so springt er immer höher in die Luft (air). Eine Weile lang betrachten die Schulkinder die vier Kreise (circles) der Füße, den herausragenden (bulging) Bauch und den Rüssel (trunk). Aber dann verschwindet (vanishes) das Tier über die Baumkronen. Sogar die Affen sind erstaunt (astonished) darüber. Endlich findet man das Gummitier in dem benachbarten botanischen Garten. Es liegt zerschmettert (smashed to pieces) auf der Erde in der Nähe einer Kaktuspflanze.

Die Schulkinder des Dorfes machen jetzt keine Schularbeiten mehr. Und sie werden *Rowdys*. Wahrscheinlich *trinken* sie jetzt *Wodka*, und sie zerschmettern Fenster. Und jetzt glauben sie nicht mehr an Elefanten.

Vocabulary

- * als—when, as
- * also—thus, so
 der Angestellte (-n, -n)—employee
 aufblasen—to inflate
 die Aufgabe (-n)—task
 der Bauch (-es, -e)—belly
 die Baumkrone (-n)—treetop
 bedauerlich—deplorable, regrettable
- * zum Beispiel—for example bemerken—to notice benachbart—neighboring benutzen—to use
- * besonders—especially betrachten—to observe botanisch—botanical
- ** dann—then
- * denn—because, for das Dorf (-es, -er)—village
- * eigen—own
- * einfach—simple
- * endlich—finally

- ** die **Erde** (-n)—earth, ground der **Ersatz** (-es)—substitute
- * erwarten—to await, expect
- * erzählen—to explain, tell
- * etwas—something
- fehlen to lack;
 es fehlt ihm an etwas he is lacking something
- * die Freude (-n)—joy das Gasrohr (-s, -e)—gas pipe
- * das **Geld** (-es, -er) money
- * geschehen (i)—to happen die Größe (-n)—size, magnitude, greatness
- ** jeder—each, every, everyone
- * jetzt—now die Karriere (-n)—career der Kauf (-es, -e)—purchase die Kenntnis (-sse)—knowledge
- kurz—short die Kurzgeschichte (-n)—short story

- * lang (adv.)—for laufen (i)—to run; to move
- * liegen (i) —to lie, be situated
- * die Luft—air
- * die Macht (-e)—strength, power
- * die Meinung (-en)—opinion das Mittel (-s, -)—means nach Hause—home
- * die **Nähe**—vicinity
- * nicht mehr—no longer oftmals—often das Plakat (-es, -e)—sign, placard redlich—honest der Rowdy (-s, -s)—scoundrel
- die Schularbeit (-en)—schoolwork
 * sofort—immediately
- * sogar—even
- * spät—late der Stachel (-s, -n)—quill das Stachelschwein (-s, -e) porcupine

- * **statt**—instead of
- * stellen—to place
- * teuer—expensive das Tier (-s, -e)—animal
- * tun—to do
- überhaupt nicht—not at all
- um so (& comp.)—all the more die Umarbeitung (-en)—adaptation
- * vier—four
- * während—during
- * wahrscheinlich—probably waschen (r)—to wash
- * weil—because die Weile—while
- * wichtig important der Wodka — vodka zerschmettern — to smash der Zustand (-es, =e) — condition, situation

Verb Prefixes

In German, it is possible to form new meanings to a verb by adding a prefix to the root. While steigen means to climb, einsteigen means to board (a train or plane), and umsteigen means to change (trains, etc.); and while lernen means to learn, verlernen means to forget what one has learned. There are both separable and inseparable verb prefixes.

13.1. Separable verb prefixes

The separable verb prefixes are more numerous and more complicated than the inseparable. For, in independent clauses, and in sentences beginning with a verb, the verb root appears in its usual place, while the prefix appears at the end of the clause. Here are examples:

Der Letzte *macht* die Türe *zu*—The last one closes the door.

Heute *sieht* der Briefträger gut *aus*—Today the mailman looks good. *Steht* Fräulein Meier früh *auf*?—Does Fräulein Meier get up early?

Hören die Kinder ihrer Mutter *zu*?—Do the children listen to their mother?

In order to find the infinitive in such sentences, you must attach the prefix at the end of the sentence to the conjugated verb, and then look up the prefixed verb. In the sentences used as examples, the infinitives are: *zumachen*, *aussehen*, *aufstehen*, and *zuhören*.

13.2. Here is a list of the most common verb prefixes and their most common meanings (the ones with an * often can be translated consistently, while the others can have a variety of meanings):

away, downwards: abgehen—to leave; to pass out; to be sent; to be ab taken off; to branch off; to walk at, on, to: angehen—to begin; to tackle; to concern anup, open: aufgehen—to rise; break up; open auf out, out of, with: ausgehen—to go out, to fall out; to start; to end aus through: durchgehen-to walk, go, pass through, to be tolerated; to durch pass into: eingehen-to go in; enter; to grasp; to have some influence; to ein die; to agree away, continuing: fortgehen—to go away, to continue fort motion towards a speaker: hergehen—to go here, proceed her * motion away from a speaker: hingehen—to go there, pass away hin * with: mitgehen—accompany, go along mit * away from, imitating, toward: nachgehen-follow; investigate; to nach practice down, low: niedergehen-go down; fall nieder * over, more: übergehen-to turn into; to pass to someone; (inseparaüber ble)—to pass over; to ignore around, embracing: umgehen—to go around; to circulate; to avoid umunder: untergehen—to perish; to set unter before, forward: vorgehen—to act; to proceed; to happen; to advance voraway, gone: (hin) weggehen—to go away weg * to continue: weitergehen—to continue weiter * to, towards, closed: zugehen-go on; shut; happen; to approach zu

13.3. Whenever you find any of these prefixes isolated at the end of a clause, you should identify them as separable prefixes. Then you must attach the prefix to the verb root in order to translate the infinitive correctly. Because most of these prefixes are short, they are sometimes easy to overlook; therefore, watch out for them! They will always be found with their prefix attached: darstellen (to portray), zumachen (to close), ausflippen (to freak out).

back: zurückgehen-to go back, fall back

zusammen * together: zusammengehen-to go together, close; diminish

zurück *

Sometimes a verb prefix can change the meaning of a verb radically. For example, while *bringen* means to *bring*, *umbringen* means to *kill*, while *bören* means to *hear*, *aufhören* means to *stop*; while *fangen* means to *capture*, *anfangen* means to

begin. Consequently it is crucial to look up a verb with its prefix in order to discover its correct meaning in the sentence you are translating. You will nearly always find the prefixed verb in your dictionaries in alphabetical order according to the prefix: abnehmen, zustimmen, ausfallen, durchbringen, etc.

Moreover, sometimes, the same prefixed verb can have radically different meanings. The verb *aufnehmen* can mean *to take; to record; to photograph* and *to admit*. The verb *aufnehen* (often used by Hegel) means both *to raise up* and *to abolish*. *Eingehen* means both *to start* and *to stop*.

13.4. However, at other times, the prefixed verb may not appear in your dictionary. In this case, you should look up both the verb and its prefix and combine them in a logical manner. For example, if you had to translate the sentence, "Die zwei Menschen gehören nicht zusammen," and you could not find the verb zusammengehören, you could still translate the sentence accurately if you realized that zusammen meant together and gehören meant to belong to and if you then translated the verb as to belong together. But before you resort to this method, first look in your dictionary for the verb with its prefix. Moreover, this will happen mainly with prefixes that have only one meaning, such as zusammen, which always means together.

13.5. In clauses when the verb appears at the end, the prefix will no longer be separated from the verb. Here are examples:

Wann wird der langweilige Mann mit seiner langen Rede *aufhören*—When will the boring man end his long tirade?

Wo Verdacht *einkehrt*, nimmt die Ruhe Abschied—When suspicion enters, peace leaves.

- **13.6.** Do not confuse verb and preposition combinations with verb prefixes. Compare "Er hört auf diese Frage"—He listens to this question (a verb and preposition combination) with "Er hört mit dieser Frage auf—He ends with this question (auf is now a verb prefix). A separable verb prefix will nearly always be at the end of the clause, and it will **never** be immediately followed by a noun without at least some intervening punctuation, such as a comma.
- 13.7. Hin and her are two common directional prefixes. Wo geht er hin? means "Where is he going to? and Wo kommt er her? means "Where is he coming from?" Often they do not need to be translated into English. Hin geht die Zeit, her kommt der Tod.—There goes time, here comes death (Or: Time goes, death comes.)

Also, they are often used in conjunction with another prefix for emphasis. Examples are: *hinein* (*into*), *heraus* (*out of*), and *hindurch* (*through*).

13.8. Translate these sentences. Underline the whole verb in each sentence (vocabulary is on p. 104-5):

- 1. Die Dummen sterben nie aus.
- 2. Wer (he who) mit Hunden zu Bett geht, steht mit Flöhen auf.
- 3. Ein kleiner Topf (pot) kocht bald über.
- 4. Wo man Liebe aussät (sows), dort wächst Freude hervor.
- 5. Dieses Bild stellt eine Frau mit zwei Katzen dar.
- 6. Wo Elefanten tanzen, bleiben die Ameisen weg.
- 7. Mache den Mund zu und die Augen auf. (How do you want to translate den Mund and die Augen? Why?)
- 8. Furcht steckt oft an.
- 9. Liebe deine Nachbarn, aber lege den Zaun (fence) nicht nieder.
- 10. Schlächter (butchers) und Schwein stimmen nicht überein.
- 11. Das arme Kind bringt der böse Wolf um.
- 12. Ein Stein, der (that) rollt, setzt kein Moos an.
- 13. Üble Botschaft kommt immer zu früh.
- 14. Es *lernt* niemand aus, bis das *Grab* ist unser *Haus*. (Note that the second part of the proverb isn't strictly grammatical; however, it rhymes.)

13.9. Inseparable verb prefixes

There are seven common inseparable verb prefixes—be-, ent- (or emp-), er-, ge-, miss (or: miß-), ver-, and zer-. Unfortunately, the meanings of these prefixes are not always consistent. However, here are some of the more common meanings of some of them:

be- commonly changes an intransitive verb into a transitive. Examples are: antworten, beantworten (to answer); achten, beachten (to pay attention to); dienen, bedienen (to serve); gehen, begehen (to walk on, commit).

ent-can mean away from: entdecken (to uncover) vs. decken (to cover); entgehen (to go away from, escape) vs. gehen (to go); entfallen (to fall away from)

er-indicates the beginning of an action: erbleichen (to begin to turn pale) or an achievement of the aim set by the action: erkennen (to recognize); erreichen (to reach). And the prefix er- attached to the verbs of violence means that the action is fatal: erschießen (to shoot to death); erstechen (to stab fatally).

miss or miß- corresponds to the English mis- or dis-. Examples are: mißbrauchen (to misuse) mißdeuten (to misinterpret); mißtrauen (to distrust); mißfallen (to displease).

ver- has a wide range of meanings. It can mean a variety of "negative" things such as waste, or disappearance, or errors in action. Examples are: versprechen (to misspeak); vergehen (to disappear, pass, elapse); verschlafen (to oversleep). On the other hand, it can also mean to intensify or to come together when added to a verb. Examples are: versprechen (to promise); verbessern (to improve); vermischen (to mix together).

zer- denotes the destruction resulting from the root verb, and it means to pieces, in pieces. Examples are: zerbrechen (to break into pieces); zerreißen (to rip to shreds); zerstören (to destroy).

13.10. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Der Vater des Briefträgers beklagt das Benehmen (behavior) seines Sohnes.
- 2. Gute *Schwimmer* ersaufen zuerst. (Because they venture into the deepest water!)
- 3. Die Rosen verblühen, die Dornen bleiben.
- 4. Wenn die Sonne scheint, erbleicht der Mond.
- 5. Den Elefanten erschreckt die Maus.
- 6. Wann erwartet Fräulein Meier den Briefträger?
- 7. Die Furcht vergrößert die Gefahr.
- 8. Fräulein Meier mißtraut der Vater des Briefträgers.
- 9. Wer wird das häßliche Photo zerschneiden?
- 10. Der Student zertritt den Kakerlak (cockroach).

Vocabulary (In this section, verb prefixes are hyphenated.)

die Ameise (-n)—ant
an-setzen—to accumulate, to
gather
an-stecken—to contaminate, to be
catching

- * auf-machen—to open
- * auf-stehen (i)—to get up aus-lernen—to finish learning aus-säen—to sow aus-sterben (i)—to die out
- * bald—soon
 be-klagen—to complain about
 das Benehmen (-s)—behavior
- * bis—until
 die Botschaft (-en)—news
 dar-stellen—to portray, depict
 der Dorn (-es, -en)—thorn
 er-bleichen (i)—to pale
 er-saufen (i)—to drown
 er-schrecken—to frighten

- * er-warten—to expect
- ** der **Floh** (-s, -e)—flea
- ** die **Freude** (-n)—joy
- * früh—early, soon die Gefahr (-en)—danger häßlich—ugly
- * her—whence (from)
 hervor-wachsen (i)—to grow forth
- * hin—whither (to)
- * klein—small
 klug—clever
 miß-trauen (i)—to mistrust
 der Mond (-es, -e)—moon
 das Moos (-es, -e)—moss
 der Mund (-es, -er)—mouth
 der Nachbar (-s, -n)—neighbor
- * nie—never nieder-legen—to take down, to give up
- * **scheinen** (i)—to shine; to seem

das Schwein (-s, -e)—swine der Schwimmer (-s, -)—swimmer der Stein (-es, -e)—stone

- * der Tod (-es, -e)—death der Topf (-es, -e)—pot übel—bad, evil
 - **über-kochen** (i)—to boil over **um-bringen**—to kill

ver-blühen (i)—to wither ver-größern—to enlarge, increase,

magnify

- * wann—when weg-bleiben (i)—to stay away
- ** wo-where, when
- ** die **Zeit** (-en)—time **zer-schneiden**—to cut into pieces

zer-treten (zertritt)—to stomp on **zu-erst**—first of all

* zu-machen—to close

Verb Tenses (Part I)

14.1. The four German verb forms

German has only four indicative verb forms—present, past, present perfect, and past perfect. They are:

present: Er *hört* den Lärm—He *hears* (or *is hearing*) the noise.

past: Er hörte den Lärm—He heard (or was hearing) the noise.

present perfect: Er hat den Lärm gehört—He has heard (or heard) the noise.

past perfect: Er hatte den Lärm gehört—He had heard the noise.

The present and past perfects are formed by using an auxiliary (helping verb) with a participle. *English grammar review:* a participle is a verb that requires a helping verb: has *seen*: have *made*; had *written*; are *rung*; was *done*; were *lost*; has *opened*.

14.2. "Easy" verbs (These are usually called either "weak" or "regular" verbs. I call them "easy" verbs because their infinitives are easy to find, but you should call them whatever makes them seem most familiar to you.)

Easy/weak/ regular verbs are verbs that require no vowel change for their past and perfect forms. Comparable English verbs are: look, looked, has looked; close, closed, has closed; enjoy, enjoyed, has enjoyed. In German, the first and third person past will end in -te, and the participle will usually begin with ge- and end with -t. Here are examples:

present infinitive	past (first and third	present perfect
•	person singular)	(third person singular)
hör en (to hear)	hör te (heard)	hat ge hör t (has heard)
lach en (to laugh)	lach te (laughed)	hat ge lach t (has laughed)
sagen (to say)	sag te (said)	hat ge sag t (has said)
leb en (to live)	leb te (lived)	hat ge leb t (has lived)

Moreover, most verbs with umlauts in their roots are easy, even though their definitions seem as if they would be hard because they are rarely cognates with English: ähneln, ähnelte, geähnelt (to resemble); lösen, löste, gelöst (to solve); üben, übte, geübt (to exercise, practice); gönnen, gönnte, gegönnt (to grant).

14.3. Finding an infinitive of an easy verb

I. In order to find the infinitive when you encounter the past tense of an easy verb, simply eliminate the final -te and add -en:

past	hör <i>te</i>	lach <i>te</i>	wohn <i>te</i>	sag <i>te</i>	schau <i>te</i>
infinitive	hör <i>en</i>	lach <i>en</i>	wohn <i>en</i>	sag <i>en</i>	schau <i>en</i>

Find the infinitives of these easy verbs in past tense:

glaubte, bewegte, löste, lernte, gehörte, setzte, legte, lobte, machte, hütete

2. In order to find the infinitive when you encounter the participle of an easy verb, eliminate the initial *ge*- and the final -*t* and add -*en* to the ending:

participle	ge <i>lob</i> t	ge <i>lach</i> t	ge <i>mach</i> t	ge <i>sag</i> t	ge <i>frag</i> t
infinitive	<i>lob</i> en	<i>lach</i> en	<i>mach</i> en	<i>sag</i> en	<i>frag</i> en

Find the infinitives of these easy verbs in the perfect form:

gekauft, geschaut, geantwortet, gesetzt, geleistet, gelobt, geliebt, gehütet

14.3. The German past is used much less frequently than the English past; primarily it is used for narration or story-telling. However, the past also is used with the two most common German verbs, *sein* (to be) and *haben* (to have), and with the modals (which are discussed in Chapter Nineteen).

Gestern war der Student glücklich—Yesterday the student was happy. Gestern hatte Fräulein Meier Besuch—Yesterday Fräulein Meier had a visitor. 14.4. The present perfect tense (has looked, has opened) is used much more often in German than in English, and it can be translated either as a simple past (looked, opened), or as the present perfect (has looked, has opened) depending on context. It is more common to translate the present perfect into English as a simple past tense. In English the present perfect is used with something that happened in the past and is still ongoing: Sie haben mit ihren Katzen oft gespielt—They have often played with their cats [and will continue to do so]. Er hat schon viele Briefmarken gesammelt—He has already collected many postage stamps.

14.5. In sentences containing the present or past perfect tenses, the auxiliary verb will be conjugated and will appear in "second" place in the clause while the participle will appear at the end of the clause:

Gestern hat der Student gearbeitet—Yesterday the student worked. Er hat die Frage nicht gehört—He did not hear the question. Er hat mit ihr getanzt—He danced with her. Hat sie mit ihren Katzen gespielt? Did she play with her cats?

14.6. Here are all the conjugations of the weak/easy verb *leben* (to live):

	present	past	present perfect	past perfect
ich	lebe	lebte	habe gelebt	hatte gelebt
du	lebst	lebtest	hast gelebt	hattest gelebt
er, sie, es	lebt	lebte	hat gelebt	hatte gelebt
wir	leben	lebten	haben gelebt	hatten gelebt
ihr	lebt	lebtet	habt gelebt	hattet gelebt
sie	leben	lebten	haben gelebt	hatten gelebt
Sie	leben	lebten	haben gelebt	hatten gelebt

14.7. If a verb has an inseparable prefix—be-, emp-, er-, ge-, ver-, or zer- (cf. 13.9), or if the verb ends in -ieren, the participle will have no ge- prefix. Example are: verlernen, verlernte, hat verlernt; beantworten, beantwortete, hat beantwortet; studieren, studierte, hat studiert. Here is the conjugation of erwarten (to expect, await);

	present	past	present perfect	past perfect
ich	erwarte	erwartete	habe erwartet	hatte erwartet
du	erwartest	erwartetest	hast erwartet	hattest erwartet
er, sie, es	erwartet	erwartete	hat erwartet	hatte erwartet
wir	erwarten	erwarteten	haben erwartet	hatten erwartet
ihr	erwartet	erwartetet	habt erwartet	hattet erwartet
sie	erwarten	erwarteten	haben erwartet	hatten erwartet
Sie	erwarten	erwarteten	haben erwartet	hatten erwartet

When the verb has an inseparable prefix or ends in *-ieren*, the third person singular present will be the same as the participle. Here is an example:

Sie studiert Deutsch—She is studying German. Sie hat Deutsch studiert—She studied German.

However, the participle usually can be recognized as a participle because

- 1. it will be accompanied by an auxiliary verb, and
- 2. it will appear at the end of the clause.

14.8. The present and past perfect tenses will always require an auxiliary verb—haben (to have) or sein (to be)—which will be conjugated, while the participle (as in English) will remain the same. Here is an example, using the infinitive sagen:

Ich habe das oft gesagt.	I <i>have said</i> that often.	
Du <i>hast</i> das oft <i>gesagt</i> .	You have said that often.	
Sie hat das oft gesagt.	She has said that often.	
Wir haben das oft gesagt.	We have said that often.	
Ihr habt das oft gesagt.	You have said that often.	
Sie haben das oft gesagt.	They have said that often.	
Sie haben das oft gesagt.	You have said that often.	

14.9. While most verbs will take *haben* as an auxiliary, as all verbs do in English, some verbs will take *sein* as an auxiliary. Verbs of motion (which are intransitive) such as *fliegen* (to fly), *kommen* (to come), *steigen* (to climb), and *gehen* (to go) will take *sein* as an auxiliary, as do the verbs *sein*, *werden* (to become), and *bleiben* (to remain). Your dictionary will note in parentheses if a verb takes *sein* with the symbol (*aux. s.*). Here is a paradigm using the infinitive *folgen* (to follow):

Ich bin ihm gefolgt.	I have followed him.
Du <i>bist</i> ihm gefolgt.	You have followed him.
Er ist ihm gefolgt.	He has followed him.
Wir <i>sind</i> ihm gefolgt.	We have followed him.
Ihr seid ihm gefolgt.	You <i>have followed</i> him.
Sie sind ihm gefolgt.	They have followed him.
Sie sind ihm gefolgt.	You have followed him.

Whenever *sein* is used as an auxiliary, it must be translated into English as *has* or *have*—it can never be translated as *is* or *are*. Here are more examples:

Ich bin oft nach Berlin gefahren—I have often gone to Berlin.

Schon ist er nach Hause gegangen—Already he has gone home.

Selten ist sie hier gewesen—She has seldom been here.

Oft sind wir zu Hause geblieben—We have often stayed home.

[Note: many verbs that have *sein* as an auxiliary are strong/hard and require a vowel change, which is why the participles end in *-en*. I will explain this ending in 14.13.]

14.10. Note that the past perfect is formed by using the past tense of either *sein* or *haben* with a participle:

Er hatte in Berlin schon gewohnt—He had already lived in Berlin. Sie war nach Bern geflogen—She had flown to Bern.

14.11. Conjugations of sein and haben:

	present	past	present perfect	past perfect
	(he is)	(he was)	(he has been)	(he had been)
ich	bin	war	bin gewesen	war gewesen
du	bist	warst	bist gewesen	warst gewesen
er, sie, es	ist	war	ist gewesen	war gewesen
wir	sind	waren	sind gewesen	waren geweser
ihr	seid	wart	seid gewesen	wart gewesen
sie	sind	waren	sind gewesen	waren gewesei
Sie	sind	waren	sind gewesen	waren geweser

haben (to h	pave)	_		
ich	habe	hatte	habe gehabt	hatte gehabt
du	hast	hattest	hast gehabt	hattest gehabt
er, sie	hat	hatte	hat gehabt	hatte gehabt
wir	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hatten gehabt
ihr	habt	hattet	habt gehabt	hattet gehabt
sie	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hatten gehabt
Sie	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hatten gehabt

14.12. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Armut (poverty) hat viele Städte gebaut.
- 2. Der alte Ochs ist auch ein Kalb gewesen.
- 3. Wer auf Hoffnung traut, hat auf [dünnes] Eis gebaut.
- 4. Das Goldene Zeitalter (age) existierte damals, als das Gold noch nicht vorhanden war.
- 5. Der Teufel war schön in seiner Jugend.
- 6. "Gut und Böse sind die Vorurteile (prejudices) Gottes", sagte die Schlange. (Nietzsche)
- 7. Fräulein Meier hat die Antwort des Briefträgers nicht erwartet.
- 8. Nachdem der Student in Deutschland gewohnt hatte, studierte er die Romane Grimmelshausens.
- 9. Pussikätzchen, Pussikätzchen.

Wo bist du gewesen?

Ich war in London,

um die Königin anzuschauen (to look at).

Pussikätzchen, Pussikätzchen,

Was hast du da gemacht?

Ich habe eine kleine Maus erschreckt

unter ihrem Stuhl.

- 10. Wo wohnte Fräulein Meier vor drei Jahren?
- 11. Vorher hat Sie die ganze Zeit eine nette Frau bedient.
- 12. (ich) Habe nun, ach!* *Philosophie*, Juristerei (*law*) und *Medizin*

und leider auch Theologie durchaus studiert

mit heißem Bemühn (effort).

Da steh'** ich nun, ich armer Tor (fool)!

und bin so klug als wie zuvor (none the wiser) . . .

(Goethe—Faust)

^{*} This is just an exclamation—it does not indicate the end of the sentence.

^{**} The apostrophe stands for an "e": steh'—stehe

Vocabulary

ach—alas

* als—when

* die **Antwort** (-en)—answer die **Armut**—poverty

* **bauen**—to build

bedienen—to wait on, serve

* da—there

* damals—then, at that time dünn—thin

durchaus—thoroughly
** das Eis (-es, -)—ice

erschrecken—to frighten
existieren (i)—to exist

** ganz—entire

* gewesen—been

Grimmelshausen—a Baroque German writer [a proper name]

** haben, hatte, hat gehabt—to have

* heiß—hot, ardent

herrschen—to rule die Jugend—youth

das **Kalb** (-es, -er)—calf **leider**—unfortunately

nachdem—after

noch nicht-not yet

nun—now der Ochs—ox

der **Roman** (-s, -e)—novel die **Schlange** (-n)—snake

sein, war, ist gewesen (i)—to be

* die **Stadt** ("-e)—city

* stehen (i)—to stand der Tor (-en, -en)—fool

trauen (auf)—to trust (in)

vor (with time)—agovorhanden—available;

vorhanden sein—to exist vorher—previously

das **Vorurteil** (-s, -e)—prejudice

* wer—who
das Zeitalter (-s, -)—age

14.13. Hard (or "strong" or "irregular") verbs

Hard verbs are verbs that require a vowel change for their past and perfect forms (thus making them sometimes hard to find in your dictionaries). Comparable English hard/strong verbs are: see, saw, has seen; ring, rang, has rung; fight, fought, has fought; cut, cut, has cut.

present infinitive	past	present perfect	
schreiben (to write)	schrieb (wrote)	geschrieben (written)	
fliegen (to fly)	flog (flew)	geflogen (flown)	
singen (to sing)	sang (sang)	gesungen (sung)	
stehlen (to steal)	stahl (stole)	gestohlen (stolen)	
lesen (to read)	las (read)	gelesen (read)	
tragen (to carry)	trug (carried)	getragen (carried)	
fallen (to fall)	fiel (fell)	gefallen (fallen)	

There are seven different types of verb changes, which are listed in the appendix E, and eventually these patterns should become familiar to you. But until then, if you look up the past or participle of a hard verb, most dictionaries will give you the infinitive.

14.14. While easy verbs end in -te in the past tense and in -t in the perfect tenses, hard verbs usually will end in a consonant in the past tense, and in -en in the perfect tenses. Compare the following:

	easy/weak (-te, -t)		hard/stro	hard/strong (consonant, -en)	
present infinitive	fragen	loben	geben	greifen	
past	fragte	lobte	gab	griff	
present perfect	gefragt	gelobt	gegeben	gegriffen	

Whenever a verb for first or third person singular ends in a consonant other than -t (stahl, ging, schrieb), it will always be past (unless it is a modal or wissen or werden).

It is extremely important for you to know the difference between an easy verb and a hard verb because past and participial tenses of weak/easy verbs will not be listed in your dictionaries, while the past and participial tenses of strong/hard verbs will be. Knowing whether a verb is easy or hard makes it easier to find it in your dictionary.

14.15. Here are all the conjugations of the strong verb singen:

	present	past	present perfect	past perfect
ich	singe	sang	habe gesungen	hatte gesungen
du	singst	sangst	hast gesungen	hattest gesungen
er, sie, es	singt	sang	hat gesungen	hatte gesungen
wir	singen	sangen	haben gesungen	hatten gesungen
ihr	singt	sangt	habt gesungen	hattet gesungen
sie	singen	sangen	haben gesungen	hatten gesungen
Sie	singen	sangen	haben gesungen	hatten gesungen

14.16. Whether it is easy or hard, if a verb has an inseparable prefix (see 13.9; 14.9) the participle will have no ge- prefix. Here are examples:

present indicative	past	present perfect	
vergessen (to forget)	vergaß (forgot)	hat vergessen (has forgotten)	
bestehen (to consist)	bestand (consisted)	hat bestanden (has consisted)	
erfinden (to invent)	erfand (invented)	hat erfunden (has invented)	

When a hard verb has an inseparable prefix, the infinitive and the participle can sometimes be the same. Examples are: *vergessen*, *erfahren*, *verlesen*, and *gefallen*.

Wir erfahren viel — We experience a lot.

Wir haben viel erfahren-We have experienced a lot.

However, as with easy verbs, the participle usually can be recognized as a participle because (1) it will be accompanied by an auxiliary verb, and (2) it will appear at the end of the clause.

14.17. Look at the patterns of hard verbs in my book, appendix E:

Sometimes you will be able to guess the definition of the verb because it will be similar to English: sprach-spoke; aß-ate; sah-saw; kam-came; begann-began; schwamm-swam; saß-sat; stand-stood; geholfen-helped; gestohlen-stolen; gebunden-bound; gewonnen-won

Also, the participles of many hard verbs will look like the infinitive with a *ge*- on it: lesen—*ge*lesen; wachsen—*ge*wachsen; fallen—*ge*fallen; sehen—*ge*sehen

Other times, you will be somewhat clueless as to what the vowel change has been. In these cases, if you look up the past or participial form in your dictionaries, they will guide you to the correct infinitival form. If you look up glich, the dictionary will tell you the infinitive is gleichen; if you look up gezogen, your dictionary will tell you the infinitive is ziehen. There is also a verb chart in your dictionary that gives the changes for hard verbs. All dictionaries, even small ones, have them, although they sometimes seem hidden; finding them, however, is worth the effort. Usually, they can be found at the beginning or the end of the dictionary. Put a paper clip or some marker in your dictionary so you can find them easily. Or copy the verb list in Appendix E of German Quickly and paste it into your dictionary, as it gives definitions of the verbs as well, and also includes some easy verbs that can occasionally be difficult to find, such as those with geprefixes.

14.18. Here are some suggestions for finding the infinitive of a hard verb. (If this section seems confusing, you may wish to return to it later, when you are more familiar with verb tenses; you can use the alphabetical verb chart until you become more familiar with the patterns.)

PAST:

Note: there will always be a vowel change in the past of hard verbs

- I. if the past is *ie*, either "flip" the vowels (*ei*) or try an *a*: blieb-bleiben; schien-scheinen; stieg-steigen fiel-fallen; riet-raten
- if the past is a, either try e or i. Most of the verbs with e in their stem will have i in third person singular:
 gab-geben (gibt); half-helfen (hilft); nahm-nehmen (nimmt);

sprach-sprechen (spricht); aß-essen (ißt)

sang-singen; fand-finden; band-binden

3. if the past is a *u*, try *a* trug-tragen; wuchs-wachsen; fuhr-fahren

PARTICIPLE:

If the participle is *ie*, "flip" the vowels: gebl*ie*ben-bl*ei*ben; gest*ie*gen-st*ei*gen; gesch*ie*nen-sch*ei*nen If the participle is *o*, the infinitive might be *e* or *ie*: gesprochen-sprechen; geholfen-helfen; genommen-nehmen geflogen-fliegen; geflohen-fliehen

14.19. Guess the infinitives of the following verbs. State whether they are easy or hard. (Review: verbs ending in -te or -t (with the auxiliary haben or sein) will be easy, while verbs ending in any other consonant or -en (with the auxiliary haben or sein) will be hard. VERBS WITH AN UMLAUT IN THEIR PAST AND PARTICIPIAL FORMS WILL USUALLY BE EASY: hütete, gelöst, geläutet, läuten, hüten.

glaubte; schrieb; sang; half; legte; ist gefallen; hat gemerkt; hat gemalt; zähmte; fand; hat geholfen; sah

14.20. Moreover, the following steps are needed for finding an infinitive in your dictionary when you encounter a hard verb with an inseparable prefix:

If the verb is in past tense,

- 1. eliminate the prefix temporarily,
- 2. look up the past tense to find the verb stem,
- 3. reattach the prefix to the stem

Here are examples:

bestand-stand-stehen-**be**stehen **ver**sprach-sprach-sprechen-**ver**sprechen

If the verb is a participle,

- 1. eliminate the prefix temporarily,
- 2. add ge- to the rest of the verb,
- 3. look up the participle to find the verb stem,
- 4. reattach the prefix to the stem.

Here are examples:

Participle: **er**stochen. Look up **ge**stochen to discover the stem infinitive *stechen*, then look up **er**stechen. (Or try to remember that participles with an o in them have either an e or an ie in their roots)

Participle: **ent**nommen. Look up **ge**nommen to discover the infinitive *nehmen*, then look up **ent**nehmen.

Participle: **be**schrieben. Look up **ge**schrieben to discover the stem infinitive schreiben, then look up **be**schreiben.

Always reattach the prefix to the infinitive!

14.21. State the infinitives of the following hard verbs:

blieb, geflogen, las, gestohlen, versprochen, nahm, erfunden, getrunken, trug, beschrieben, fiel, erschien, flog, aß, gekommen, mißverstanden.

Verb Tenses (Part II)

15.1 Irregular weak ("curve ball") verbs

There are also some "irregular weak" verbs that have both vowel changes and the standard weak endings. The most important of these verbs are:

definition	present infinitive	past	present perfect
to be acquainted with	kennen	kannte	hat gekannt
to bring	bringen	brachte	hat gebracht
to think	denken	dachte	hat gedacht
to know	wissen	wußte	hat gewußt

I consider these verbs to be "curve ball" verbs because they cause you to worry that other verbs ending in *-te* or *-t* will also have a vowel change. This is NOT the case. These are the main such verbs that will cause you trouble.

15.2. There are also some verbs with a ge-prefix that can be confused with verbs with the same stem and no prefix. Compare:

gebrauchen	(to use)	vs.	brauchen	(to need)
gefallen	(to please)	vs.	fallen *	(to fall)
gehorchen	(to obey)	vs.	horchen	(to hear)
gehören *	(to belong to)	vs.	hören	(to hear)

```
geraten * (to land, succeed) vs. raten (to advise)
gestehen (to confess) vs. stehen (to stand)
```

Because verbs with a *ge*-prefix look the same in the participial form as their non-*ge*-stems, meanings can be ambiguous and determined *only* by context. For example, "Fräulein Meier hat dem Briefträger gehorcht" can mean either that Fräulein Meier has listened to the mailman, or that she has obeyed him. * In these instances, telling the difference is not so difficult, however, as *fallen* and *geraten* take *sein* as an auxiliary, while *gefallen* and *raten* take *haben*. While *hören* is transitive, *gehören* takes a dative object.

15.3. Here is the conjugation of a separable verb, ansehen (to look at):

	present	past	present perfect	past perfect
ich	sehe an	sah an	habe angesehen	hatte angesehen
du	siehst an	sahst an	hast angesehen	hattest angesehen
er, sie, es	sieht an	sah an	hat angesehen	hatte angesehen
wir	sehen an	sahen an	haben angesehen	hatten angesehen
ihr	seht an	saht an	habt angesehen	hattet angesehen
sie	sehen an	sahen an	haben angesehen	hatten angesehen
Sie	sehen an	sahen an	haben angesehen	hatten angesehen

Here are sentences containing each of the four tenses:

Das Kind sieht die Katze an—The child looks at the cat.

Das Kind sah die Katze an—The child looked at the cat.

Das Kind hat die Katze oft angesehen—The child has often looked at the cat.

Das Kind hatte die Katze oft angesehen—The child had looked at the cat often.

15.4. The participle of a separable verb can be recognized because the *ge*-pre-fix will always separate the prefix (an) from the stem (sehen).

To find the infinitive of an easy separable verb, eliminate the *ge*- in the middle and replace the final -*t* with -*en*. Examples are:

Participle	an <i>ge</i> hör <i>t</i>	aus <i>ge</i> frag <i>t</i>	nieder <i>ge</i> leg <i>t</i>	auf <i>ge</i> bau <i>t</i>
Infinitive	an-hör <i>en</i>	aus-frag <i>en</i>	nieder-leg <i>en</i>	auf-bau <i>en</i>

To find the infinitive of a hard separable verb,

- 1. eliminate the prefix temporarily,
- 2. look up the participle in your dictionary to find the verb stem,
- 3. re-attach the prefix to the stem.

Here are examples:

Participle: angegriffen. Look up gegriffen to discover the stem infinitive greifen, then look up the infinitive angreifen.

Participle: ausgezogen. Look up gezogen to discover the stem infinitive ziehen, then look up the infinitive ausziehen.

Participle: *aufgenommen*. Look up *genommen* to discover the stem infinitive *nehmen*, then look up the infinitive *aufnehmen*.

15.5. Give the infinitive of the following separable verbs; state whether the verbs are easy, hard, or "curve ball" verbs: (Hint: participles ending in -en are always hard!)

ausgeholt, aufgestanden, abgestiegen, zugemacht, aufgebaut, niedergeschrieben, eingebrochen, umgedeutet, umgebracht, mitgegangen, vorgewiesen, ausgeflippt, ausgedeutscht (a word I invented, which means to feel saturated after having studied too much German).

Note: not all of the above verbs can be found in a small dictionary.

15.6. Translate these sentences:

- I. Die *Hoffnung* ist in den Brunnen *(well) gefallen*. (In other words, *Hoffnung* is irretrievably lost!)
- 2. Dankbarkeit ist in den Himmel gestiegen und hat die *Leiter (ladder)* mitgenommen. (*Dankbarkeit* is as hard to retrieve as Hoffnung!)
- 3. Als der Tag anbrach, noch ehe *(before)* die Sonne aufgegangen war, *schrieb* der Briefträger ein langes, *romantisches* Gedicht.
- 4. Ein Wolf im Schlaf fing nie ein Schaf.
- 5. Heute erfährt man, was man gestern nicht gewußt hat.
- 6. Ein süßer Gesang hat manch einen (many a) Vogel betrogen.
- 7. Es sind mehr Leute aus Überfluß (abundance) als aus Armut gestorben.
- 8. Das *Lernen* hat kein Narr erfunden. (What is the subject of this sentence? How do you know?)

120 German Quickly

- 9. Als er böse wurde, bot der Vater des Briefträgers ein Bild starken Zorns, und er *erschreckte* Fräulein Meier.
- 10. Der arme Jack Horner saß in einer Ecke und aß seinen Plumpudding.
- 11. Es war spätabends, als der Fremde ankam. Das Dorf lag in tiefem Schnee.
- 12. Am Anfang schuf Gott Himmel und Erde.

15.7. Note that as is the case with English a participle can be used as an adjective or an adverb. Here are examples:

Gestohlene Äpfel schmecken am besten - Stolen apples taste best.

Wer eine Frau nur des Geldes wegen nimmt, bekommt *ungeratene* Kinder— Whoever takes (marries) a wife only because of her money ends up with *spoiled* children.

Der Dieb läuft erregt auf und ab-The thief walks back and forth excitedly.

Although these participles are to be translated as adjectives, their infinitival forms still must sometimes be found before they can be translated accurately.

15.8. Note: verbs can be found only:

- 1. at the beginning of the clause (for questions or commands);
- 2. in "second" place (for indicative clauses, and for conjugated verbs);
- 3. at the end of the clause (for infinitives, participles, or dependent clauses; cf. chapters 23-25).

A word found in any other place can not be a verb!

15.9. Translate these sentences, being particularly aware of participles used as adjectives:

- 1. Gelehrte Narren sind die besten.
- 2. Eine gezähmte Zunge ist ein seltsamer Vogel.
- 3. Gemalte Fenster machen die Stube (room) nicht hell. (In other words, superficial measures aren't very effective.)
- 4. Ungeladene Gäste gehören nicht zum Feste.
- 5. Mit jeder *neu gelernten* Sprache erwirbst (*gain*) du eine neue Seele. (Is the first *neu* an adjective or an adverb?)

Vocabulary

an-brechen, brach an, ist angebrochen—to begin, to break

- * der Anfang (-s =e) beginning ankommen, kam an, ist angekommen — to arrive die Armut—poverty auf-gehen, ging auf, ist aufgegangen—to rise betrügen, betrog, hat betrogen to deceive bieten, bot, hat geboten—to
- * das **Bild** (-es, -er) picture, image
- * bringen, brachte, hat gebracht—
 to bring
 der Brunnen (-s, -)—well
 die Dankbarkeit—thankfulness
 daraus—from it
 das Dorf (-es, -er)—village
 einst—once
 entgehen, entging, ist
 entgangen—to escape
- * erfahren, erfuhr, hat erfahren—to learn, to discover erfinden, erfand, hat erfunden to invent erschrecken—to frighten
- ** erwarten—to expect
- * fallen, fiel, ist gefallen (i)—to fall
 fangen, fing, hat gefangen—to catch
 fremd—foreign, strange

der Gast (-es, -e)—guest

15.10. Verb Practice

- 1. Er folgt dem Mann
- 2. Er folgte dem Mann.

- das **Gedicht** (-es, -e)—poem die **Gefahr**—danger
- * gehören (i)—to belong to der Gesang—song
- * **gestern**—yesterday **hell**—bright
- ** heute—today
- * der **Himmel**—sky, heaven
- * kennen, kannte, hat gekannt—to know

laden, lud, hat geladen - to invite

- * lehren—to teach
- * legen, lag, gelegen—to lie, to be situated
- * lernen—to learn
 malen—to paint
 mit-nehmen, nahm mit,
 mitgenommen—to take with one
 der Narr (-en, -en)—fool
- * **nie**—never
- * noch—still
 schaffen, schuf, geschaffen—to
 create
 die Seele (-n)—soul
 seltsam—strange, rare
- * die **Sprache** (-n)—language
- * stark—strong
 steigen, stieg, ist gestiegen—to
 climb
- * wissen, wußte, hat gewußt—to know zähmen—to tame der Zorn (-s)—wrath die Zunge (-n)—tongue

- 3. Er ist dem Mann gefolgt.
- 4. Er war dem Mann gefolgt.
- 5. Sie sagt die Wahrheit.
- 6. Sie sagte die Wahrheit.
- 7. Sie hat die Wahrheit gesagt.
- 8. Sie hatte die Wahrheit gesagt.
- 9. Hat sie die Wahrheit gesagt?
- 10. Sie hat die Wahrheit nicht gesagt.
- 11. Sie singt das Lied.
- 12. Sie sang das Lied.
- 13. Sie sangen das Lied.
- 14. Sie hat das Lied gesungen.
- 15. Hat sie das Lied gesungen?
- 16. Warum ist sie nicht dahin gegangen?
- 17. Oft sind sie hier.
- 18. War er hier?
- 19. Er ist oft hier gewesen.
- 20. Er wird hier sein.
- 21. Er brauchte seinen Laptop.
- 22. Er brach die Vase.
- 23. Sie brachte ihm ein Glas Wasser.
- 24. Sie hat die Antwort nicht verstanden.
- 25. Das Gedicht gefiel ihr.

Reading Selection: Abraham und Isaak

[Gott versuchte] Abraham und sprach zu ihm: Abraham! Und er antwortete: Hier bin ich

Und er sprach: Nimm Isaak, deinen einzigen Sohn, den (whom) du liebst, und geh hin in das Land Morija und opfere (sacrifice) ihn dort zum Brandopfer (burnt offering) auf einem Berge, den (which) ich dir sagen werde.

Da stand Abraham früh am Morgen auf und gürtete (saddled) seinen Esel und nahm mit sich (him) zwei Knechte (servants) und seinen Sohn Isaak und spaltete (split) Holz zum Brandopfer, machte sich auf (set out) und ging an den Ort, von dem (of which—see chapter 25) Gott ihm gesagt hatte.

Am dritten Tag hob Abraham seine Augen auf und sah die Stätte von ferne (afar) und sprach zu seinen Knechten: Bleibt hier mit dem Esel. Ich und der Knabe wer-

den dorthin gehen, und wenn wir gebetet haben (have prayed) werden wir wieder zu euch kommen

Und Abraham nahm das Holz zum Brandopfer und legte es auf seinen Sohn Isaak. Er aber nahm das Feuer und das Messer (knife) in seine Hand; und die beiden gingen miteinander.

Dann sprach Isaak zu seinem Vater Abraham: Mein Vater! Abraham antwortete: Hier bin ich, mein Sohn. Und er sprach: Siehe, hier ist Feuer und Holz; wo ist aber das Schaf zum Brandopfer?

Abraham antwortete: Mein Sohn, Gott wird <u>sich ersehen</u> (select) ein Schaf zum Brandopfer. Und die beiden gingen miteinander.

Und als (when) sie an die Stätte kamen, die (which) ihm Gott gesagt hatte, baute Abraham dort einen Altar und legte das Holz darauf und band seinen Sohn Isaak, legte ihn auf den Altar oben auf das Holz.

Und er streckte seine Hand aus und faßte das Messer, so daß er seinen Sohn schlachten konnte (would be able to slay).

Dann rief ihn der Engel des Herrn vom Himmel und sprach: Abraham, Abraham! Er antwortete: Hier bin ich!

Er sprach: Lege deine Hand nicht an den Knaben und tu ihm nichts; denn nun weiß ich, daß du Gott fürchtest und hast deines einzigen Sohnes nicht verschont (spared) um meinetwillen (for my sake).

Dann hob Abraham seine Augen auf und sah einen Widder (ram) hinter sich (him) in der Hecke (hedge) mit seinen Hörnern hängen und ging hin und opferte ihn an seines Sohnes statt.

Vocabulary

auf-heben, hob auf, hat
aufgehoben—to raise

- * auf-stehen, stand auf, ist aufgestanden—to get up aus-strecken—to reach out, to stretch
- * beide—both; die beiden—they, the two of them der Berg (-es, -e)—mountain beten, betete, hat gebetet—to pray binden, band, hat gebunden—to bind

das **Brandopfer** (-s, -)—burnt offering

- * **denn**—for, because
- * dort—there einzig—only

fassen—to seize

- * fern—far
- ** das Feuer (-s, -)—fire
- * **früh**—early
- * fürchten—fear
- * gehen, ging, ist gegangen—to go hängen—stuck das Holz (-es)—wood der Knabe (-n, -n)—boy
 - legen—to lay, place das Messer (-s, -)—knife

miteinander—with each other

- * nehmen, nahm, hat genommen—
- * nun—now
- * oben—above opfern—to sacrifice

der Ort (-es, -e)—place

- * rufen, rief, gerufen—to call das Schaf (-es, -e)—sheep
- ** sprechen, sprach, hat
- gesprochen—to speak die Statt (-)—place, stead die Stätte (-n)—place
 - um meinetwillen—for my sake
- * **versuchen**—to try

The Plurals

16.1. I gave you a list of how plurals are formed in section 1.5; you may wish to review this. Here are some reminders:

16.2. ALWAYS:

das, des, dem are always singular!!! All nouns not ending in -l -e -r -n, or occasionally -s are also always singular. Examples are: b, d, f, g, h, k, m, p, t

16.3. OMINOUS:

- I. *die* or an adjective that is *not* preceded by an article and that ends in *-e* can be singular or plural. Here is a checklist:
 - 1. die + noun ending in something other than -l -e -r -n—has to be singular (b, d, f, g, h, k, m, p, t, v, w, z): die Markt, die Kuh, die Schönheit If there is an adjective ending in -e, the noun will be singular: die gute Regel—the good rule; die schwarze Spinne—the black spider; die nette Schwester—the nice sister
 - 2. die + noun ending in -l, -e, -r could be either, although die + a noun ending in -er is most likely plural: die Dichter—the poets. (Nouns ending in -er are usually masculine; exceptions are: Mutter, Schwester, Tochter and Butter.)
 - 3. die + noun ending in -en is always plural: die Mädchen—the girls
 - 4. die + an adjective ending in -en is always be plural: die langen Titel-the long

- titles; die guten Freunde—the good friends; die langen Bücher—the long books; die alten Dicher—the old poets
- 5. If there is *only* an adjective ending in an -e, and the noun ends in -l-e-r or -n, chances are excellent that the noun will be plural: neue Titel—new titles, gute Freunde—good friends, alte Bücher—old books, dumme Examen—stupid exams

Singular or plural exercise: die Freundlichkeit, die lange Liste, die freundlichen Dichter, die Katzen, gute Kinder, die neue Lampe

- 2. der can be singular or plural. Here is a checklist:
 - I. der + an "obvious" masculine noun (der Mann, der Freund) or der + an adjective with -e will always be singular: der Wolf; der fette Hahn; der neue Titel der + a noun following a preposition will be singular 98% of the time: mit der Liste—with the list; zu der bösen Schlange—to the evil snake der + a feminine noun can be either genitive or dative: mit der Liebe—with the love: die Liebe der Frau—the love of the woman
 - 2. der, unfortunately, can also be genitive plural. In these instances, if there is an adjective following it, it will always be -en; it will also always be in genitive place: der Freund der guten Briefträger—the friend of the good mailmen; die Eltern der jungen Kinder—the parents of the young children.
 - 3. Moreover, if there is only an adjective ending in an -er, and the noun ends in -l-e-r or -n, chances are that the noun will be plural: die Antworten guter Studenten-the answers of good students
 - 4. Compare: der alte Dichter—the old poet (mas. nom) with der alten Dichter—the old poets (pl. gen.)

Singular or plural exercise: der Film; der gute Historiker; der alten Historiker; vor der jungen Katze; die guten Lieder alter Musiker

- 3. den can be either masculine accuastive or dative plural. Here is a checklist:
 - 1. Meanly enough, den can be masculine accusative, and if the noun ends in any consonant other than -n, usually it will be: für diesen Film; ohne den guten Freund; um den Tisch, für den Artikel.
 - 2. The major problem involves adjectives used as nouns or weak nouns, although many of these nouns have a plural sense to them, even if they are technically singular: Den Schuldigen erschreckt eine Maus—A mouse frightens the guilty one. (However, if you were to translate this as "the guilty," you probably would not misunderstand the meaning of the sentence.)

3. However, if you see *den* followed by nouns and adjectives with *-en* endings, especially after prepositions, chances are that they will be plural: den guten Titeln; mit den Frauen; vor acht Jahren—8 years ago; nach diesen Jahren—after these years

Singular or plural exercise: mit den Ideen; für den Mann; mit den Studenten; ohne den Freund; den Kindern; den Häusern; in den Park

16.4. Note that sometimes an -e will be added to a noun in dative case, and this noun will always be singular; you will know because the noun will nearly always be preceded by a dem or a contraction of dem: dem Walde; dem Briefe; nach Hause; zum Feste; dem Kinde. However, the dem or the dative preposition (aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu) is the clue that the noun has to be singular.

16.5. Final exercise: Are these nouns singluar or plural? freundliche Katzen, im Walde, das Kind des alten Dichters, die guten Kinder der alten Dichter, der alte Dichter, die guten Dichter, die guten Dichterinnen

16.6. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Advokaten und Soldaten sind des Teufels Spielkameraden.
- 2. Ein böses Gewissen hat die Zähne eines Wolfs.
- 3. Die dümmsten Bauern ernten die dicksten Kartoffein. (There's no justice!)
- 4. Hunde, Bauern und Edelleute machen keine Türen zu.
- 5. Eine fleißige Mutter hat faule Töchter.
- 6. Anderer Fehler sind gute Lehrer.
- 7. Die Augen suchen, was dem Herzen gefällt.
- 8. Viele Streiche fällen die große Eiche.
- 9. Die schönsten Äpfel sieht der Wurm zuerst.
- 10. Gute Lehrer haben gute Schüler.
- 11. Die Beobachtungen der alten Historiker haben Fräulein Meier überrascht.
- 12. Schöne Vögel haben schöne Federn.
- 13. Die Schlange lauert im Grase.
- 14. Sogar in den Pelz (fur) eines Herrenhundes kommen Flöhe.

Vocabulary

der **Advokat** (-en, -en)—lawyer der **Bauer** (-s, -n)—farmer die **Beobachtung** (-en)—observation die **Edelleute**—noblemen die **Eiche** (-n)—oak die **Feder** (-n)—feather

der Schüler (-s, -)—student, pupil

der **Kartoffel** (-s, -n)—potato

der Lehrer (-s, -) — teacher

der **Pelz** (-es, -e) — fur die **Schlange** (-n)—snake

sogar—even der Streich (-s, -e)—stroke * suchen—to seek ** der **Teufel** (-s, -)—devil **überraschen**—to surprise der **Zahn** (-s -e)—tooth

schweigen—to be silent

zuerst—first of all zumachen—to close

How to Use a German Dictionary

17.1. It is extremely important for you to learn to use a German dictionary correctly. If you are unable to find a word, or if you choose an improper definition, your translation will be wrong even if you have correctly understood all the grammatical constructions. Therefore, read this section carefully, and refer to it whenever you have trouble finding words. (If you are feeling saturated with information after having learned about verb tenses, skim this chapter, then use it as a future reference.)

First I will explain what to look for when you are looking up different parts of speech (and I have listed the parts of speech and other dictionary features in alphabetical order). Note: the advantages and disadvantages of various German-English dictionaries are described in Appendix I. There is an answer key to all the sentences in this chapter in Appendix J.

17.2. Abbreviations

Abbreviations are found in a separate section of some dictionaries, while in more current dictionaries they are found in the body of the text. The most common abbreviations, which are worth memorizing, are:

```
d.h.—das heißt (i.e.—that is)
u.a.—unter anderem (among other things)
```

```
usw.—und so weiter (etc.—and so forth)
vgl.—vergleiche (cf.—compare)
z.B.—zum Beispiel (for example)
```

Note also that the abbreviations *jdn* and *jdm* often appear in your dictionaries along with definitions in your dictionaries. These stand for *jemanden* (someone—accusative) and *jemandem* (someone—dative). *s.* stands for *siehe*, which means you need to look at another entry to find the correct definition.

17.3. Adjectives and adverbs

Adjectives will be indicated by the abbreviation *adj.* and **adverbs** will be indicated by the abbreviation *adv.* Although this seems straightforward, problems arise because some German words can be used both as adjectives and as adverbs. If an adjective has essentially the same meaning when used as an adverb, it will only be listed as an adjective, although it can also be used adverbially. For example, *glücklich* sometimes is listed as an adjective even though it can mean both *happy* and *happily*.

Sometimes the same word will have a radically different meaning depending on whether it is used as an adjective or as an adverb. For example, *lauter* as an adjective means *pure*, but as an adverb it means *nothing but*. **The adjectival meaning will always be listed first.** Therefore, if you are looking up an adverb, make sure you have the correct adverbial definition.

Some adjectives will have different meanings depending on the word that they modify. For example, *faul* means *rotten* when it refers to fruit, but it means *lazy* when it refers to people.

17.4. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Der Student war eben hier.
- 2. Ein halber Laib ist besser als gar kein Brot.
- 3. Fräulein Meier sieht den Briefträger doch glücklich an.
- 4. Die linden Brisen sind ihr angenehm. (Is angenehm a participle or not? How do you know?)

17.5. Nouns

 Nouns will be followed by the symbols m. (masculine), f. (feminine) or n. (neuter). The inflectional forms (genitive singular / nominative plural) will follow in parentheses immediately after the indication of the gender. Because feminine nouns have no form for genitive singular, the first notation in parentheses will be a dash; the second notation will be the plural. (In some dictionaries, only the plural will be indicated.) Here are examples of two feminine nouns:

```
Nadel f. (-; -n) Therefore, the plural of Nadel is Nadeln. Braut f. (-; -e) Therefore, the plural of Braut is Bräute.
```

Here are examples of neuter nouns, which have genitive singular forms:

Grab n. (-[e]s, -er) The genitive singular of Grab is either Grabes or Grabs, and the plural is Gräber.

Modell n. (-s, -e) The genitive singular of Modell is Modells, and the plural is Modelle.

Mädchen n. (-s, -) The genitive of Mädchen is Mädchens, and there is no plural ending.

2. Some masculine and neuter nouns are known as *weak nouns* (cf. 8.1). These nouns can be identified because their genitive form will be listed as *-en* (for animate masculine nouns) or *-ens* (for inanimate masculine and neuter nouns). Here are examples of three such nouns and their singular declensions:

```
Mensch, m. (-en, -en) (plural is: Menschen);
Name, m. (-ens, -n) (plural is: Namen);
Herz, n. (-ens, -en) (plural is: Herzen)
```

Nominative	der Mensch	der Name	das Herz
Accusative	den Mensch en	den Nam en	das Herz
Genitive	des Mensch en	des Nam ens	des Herz ens
Dative	dem Mensch en	dem Nam en	dem Herz en

3. Some nouns will be spelled the same, but their meanings will vary according to their gender and according to their plurals. Here are examples:

```
Band n. (-[e]s, "er) ribbon, tape, conveyor belt
Band n. (-[e]s, -e) bond, fetter, tie

Band m. (-es, "e) volume

Tor m. (-en, -en) fool, simpleton

Tor n. (-[e] s, -e) gate

Leiter m. (-s, -) leader

Leiter f. (-n) ladder
```

A noun sometimes can have radically different meanings according to context. For example, *Einsatz* means *stake* when it refers to a game, and it means *lace insert* when it refers to a dress, and its military definition is *mission*. In an essay, *That Awful German Language*, Mark Twain jokes that *Zug* means virtually anything, from *feature*, to *train*, to *apoplexy*.

4. Moreover, be wary of expressions that include parts of the body (eye, nose, head, heart, etc.), but which do not make sense initially. Such phrases usually will be idiomatic. Examples are: ein flammendes Herz (literally: a flaming heart)—a bleeding heart; auf freiem Fuß (literally: on a free foot)—at liberty; unter vier Augen (literally: under four eyes)—face-to-face. Whenever an idiomatic meaning seems likely, check the definitions of the body part in question.

17.6. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Fräulein Meier hat Schwierigkeiten mit ihren Jalousien.
- 2. Aus einem kleinen Reis wird ein großer Baum.
- 3. Das Buch besteht aus drei Bänden.
- 4. Auf keinen Fall wird Fräulein Meier ihre Katzen aufgeben.
- 5. Müßiggang ist der Anfang aller Laster.
- 6. Morgenstund (e) hat Gold im Mund (e). (possibly the most popular proverb in German)

17.7. Compound nouns (This is extremely important!)

Compound nouns often are not listed as separate entries; instead, *Meisterstück* will be found somewhere after *Meister*, *Gegensatz* may be found somewhere after *gegen*, and the like. Moreover, compound nouns won't always be listed in your dictionary, and often it is buried within the main entry. Whenever you encounter such a compound, divide it into its separate parts (watch for s's, as they may be used as connectives). For a rough, literal definition, translate each word within the compound, then hyphenate your English translation. Examples are: *Karten/spiel* (Karten-Spiel)—card game; *Kinder/freundlichkeit* (Kinder-Freundlichkeit)—child-orientation; *Herz/entzündung* (Herz-Entzündung)—heart-inflammation. Once you have understood the concept, you may wish to add an "of or a "for" to make the translation smoother. Examples are: *Freiheit/s/begriff* (Freiheits-Begriff)—the concept of freedom; *Gerechtigkeit/s/lehre* (Gerechtigkeits-Lehre)—the doctrine of justice; *Unfallversicherung/s/gesellschaft* (Unfall-Versicherungs-Gesellschaft)—the society for accident insurance. The following word appeared in an old edition of Ripley's *Believe It or Not:*

Hinterladung vetterligewehr patronen hülsen fabrikarbeiter verein—society of workers in the factory of bullet cartridges for backloading of Vetterli rifles

17.8. Translate these compounds:

die Unabhängigkeitserklärung; die Erdentstehungslehre; die Seinserfahrung; die Formveränderung; die Wasserversorgungsgesellschaft; der Lebenserhaltungstrieb; das Lieblingstier; der Lieblingsstier; die Einwanderungspolitik; der Ausdruckstanz; die Automobilseile; die Sättigungspunktsbestimmung

17.9. Proper nouns

German proper nouns (including names of countries) will be listed in the back of the large Langenscheidts (after the English-German section), but they will be listed in the text in most other dictionaries. Unlike English, a proper noun used as an adjective will not be capitalized. Here is an example:

die deutsche Sprache—the German language

Sometimes people's names will coincidentally also have a common noun meaning, which should be ignored. Examples are:

Spengler (plumber)—a German philosopher Fichte (pine tree)—a German philosopher Walther von der Vogelweide (bird pasture)—a German poet

For a list of proper German names, see Appendix L.

17.10. Prepositions

Prepositions will be indicated by the abbreviation *prep*. Since prepositions take either accusative, dative, genitive, or dative or accusative cases, the case they take will be indicated in parentheses. When a preposition takes either dative or accusative, your dictionary will list definitions associated with the dative case first. Because preposition entries generally are long, they can be a nuisance, as it is hard to find the meaning sought. If a preposition seems to be joined with a specific verb, the correct idiom generally can be found more quickly if the verb is looked up instead. Examples of verb-preposition combinations are: *bestehen aus* (to consist of), fragen nach (to ask about), erinnern an (to remind of), and warten auf (to wait for).

For the most common meanings of prepositions, consult my preposition list (Chapter Five, section IV of the Appendix D) or my Humanities Vocabulary, Appendix K.

17.11. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Während des Tauziehens sind drei Kinder ums Leben gekommen.
- 2. Der Briefträger besteht auf der Wahrheit.
- 3. Kant hatte einen wichtigen Einfluß auf Kleist.
- 4. Nicholas brachte Recha Tee in einem Aluminumbecher und blickte auf ihr Haar, während sie trank.

17.12. Verbs

I. Verbs will be followed by the abbreviation v. t. (or v.a. or tr. v.) which will indicate that the verb is transitive (it can have a direct object), or it will be followed by the abbreviation v.i. (or v.n. or itr. v.) which will indicate that the verb is intransitive (it cannot have a direct object). If a verb has no other symbols following it, you can assume that it is conjugated regularly, and that it takes haben as its auxiliary verb.

Therefore, if you look up *lachen*, it will be conjugated as follows: *lachen*, *lachte*, *hat gelacht*.

If you look up a verb such as folgen, you will see the following symbols: v.i. (aux. sein or mit sein). The notation aux. sein indicates that folgen is to be conjugated as follows: folgen, folgte, and ist gefolgt. A large dictionary will also note that while folgen (aux. sein) means to follow, folgen (aux, haben: to obey). A large dictionary will also have (dat.) in parentheses to indicate that the verb folgen only takes a dative object. (Er folgt mir—He follows me.)

- 2. Hard verbs will be listed as *irr. v.* or as *unr.* And a list of hard/strong verbs is included in most dictionaries. A hard verb that has *sein* as its auxiliary will be listed as follows: *irr. v. i. (aux. sein)*. Verbs that take *sein* as an auxiliary will be intransitive in German.
- 3. A verb that is reflexive will be listed as follows: v.r. or refl. v. The reflexive meaning of a verb will usually be listed second, except when the reflexive meaning is more common than the non-reflexive meaning. While the non-reflexive definition of erinnern is "to remind," the reflexive definition is "to remember." (Reflexive verbs will be explained in Chapter Twenty-six.)
- 4. Some verbs will even have different definitions depending on whether they are used transitively or intransitively. For example, *heißen* as a transitive verb means

to command, while as an intransitive verb, it means to be called. When verbs have both transitive and intransitive definitions, the transitive meaning will usually be given first, unless the intransitive definition is more common.

5. When a verb combined with a preposition has a radically different meaning, it will be listed in italics or bold face type. For example, bestehen auf means to insist on while bestehen aus means to consist of. Note especially: es geht um—to be a matter of, as this is very hard to find in a large dictionary, yet it appears often in scholarly German. Die Verhandlungen gehen um Leben und Tod—The negotiations are a matter of life and death.

Some verbs also have different definitions depending on whether they are separable or inseparable. While *übersetzen* (separable) means to set over, *übersetzen* (inseparable) means to translate. While wiederholen (separable) means to fetch back, wiederholen (inseparable) means to repeat.

Be cautious of verbs (often with prefixes) that have both literal and figurative meanings. The literal meaning is usually given first, while the more "figurative" meanings—which are generally used in scholarly writings—are listed later, as a third or fourth definition. For example, among other things, einfallen means both to collapse and to occur to someone; zugehen means both to close and to happen.

17.13. Translate these sentences:

- I. Gestern abend hielt der Professor eine Rede über die Entstehung von Pazifismus.
- 2. Plötzlich fiel es dem Soldaten ein, daß er kein Geld hatte.
- 3. Es ging um die Ehre des berühmten Professors.
- 4. Selig sind die Friedfertigen; denn sie werden Gottes Kinder heißen. (Matthäus 5.9)

17.14. Added cautions, false cognates

Be careful when looking up all words. Small carelessnesses such as mistaking *kein* for *klein*, *Lied* for *Leid*, or *Freude* for *Freunde* can seriously affect your translation, regardless of how well you understand German grammar. Whenever a sentence seems unusually awkward or incomprehensible, you should probably double check the definitions of the words in it!

Also, beware of the following false cognates:

absolvieren - to complete adäquat—suitable Akademiker/in—someone who has an academic degree aktuell - modern, current also-therefore die Antike-antiquity die Art-manner, way bekommen—to receive brav—honest, good breit-wide, broad der Christ—Christian denn-because, for die **Diktatur**—dictatorship eventuell—possible Fraktion—party das Geld-money das Gymansium—grammar school, high school hell-bright die Hochschule-university, college human—humane

die Instanz-authority

inference

die Kombination—surmise,

- * die **Konfession**—religious denomination
- * die Konjunktur—economy
- * konkurrieren—to compete
- * konsequent—consistent
- * der **Konvent**—meeting, convention
- das Konzept-draft, notes die Lektüre-reading pathetisch—lofty, elevated, expressive plump—clumsy, awkward die Prägnanz-precision punktuell—selective der Rapport—report restlos-complete, total schmall—narrow sensibel—sensitive seriös — respectable der Sinn-sense, meaning **sparen**—to save spenden—to donate splendid—generous, handsome die Technik-technology
- * In general, be wary of *k* cognates if they do not seem to make sense in the context of your reading. Although *komisch* can be relied upon to mean *comic*, *konkurrieren* means *to compete*.
- 17.15. A final note: If you have trouble memorizing words, you might find it helpful to mark common words and definitions in your dictionary so you can find them more easily whenever you need to look them up. Or make a list of them as a reference.

Common Suffixes

- **18.1.** Common Suffixes (Note: a list of prefixes can be found in Chapter 13)
- -bar generally means ible. It is added to verbs to turn them into adjectives. Examples are: denkbar (thinkable), eßbar (edible), trennbar (separable).
- -chen and -lein are diminutives that are added to nouns. Examples are: Vögelchen (little bird), Häuslein (little house), Fräulein (little woman), Rotkäppchen (Little Red Riding Hood).
- -d changes a verb into a present participle which will always be an adjective or adverb. Examples are: singend (singing), lachend (laughing), spielend (playing); die Studierenden (the ones who are studying). This will be important in Chapter Twenty-seven.
- -e added to an adjective (adding an umlaut to the stem vowel) will change it into a noun. Examples are Güte (goodness) from gut; Kälte (coldness) from kalt; Treue (loyalty) from treu; Schwäche (weakness) from schwach.
- -fach means fold, times. Examples are: dreifach (three times), vielfach (many times).
- -haft means having the quality of the word expressed in the stem. Do not confuse this with Haft, which means imprisonment. Examples are: lehrhaft (didactic; cf. Lehre—teaching), rätselhaft (puzzling; cf. Rätsel—puzzle), zweifelhaft (doubtful; cf. Zweifel—doubt).

- -heit, -keit -igkeit are added to adjectives to form abstract nouns corresponding to English nouns ending in -ity or -ness. Examples are: Ewigkeit (eternity; cf. ewig—eternal), Krankheit (sickness; cf. krank—sick), Genauigkeit (exactness; cf. genau—exact).
- -ig is like the English y. Examples are hungrig (hungry), durstig (thirsty), völlig (fully).
- -isch is added to nouns to turn them into adjectives. Examples are: neidisch (envious; cf. Neid-envy), launisch (moody, cf. Laune-mood), kindisch (childish; cf. Kind-child).
- -ismus is added to adjectives to make them nouns: Examples are: Realismus (realism; cf. realistisch—realistic); Naturalismus—Naturalism; Humanismus—Humanism-ist is added to adjectives to make them people: Humanist—humanist; Pessimist—pessimist
- -lich is added to verbs and nouns to turn them into adjectives. When it is added to verbs, -lich means -able, and when it is added to nouns, it means -ly. Examples are: nützlich (useful; cf. nützen), glaublich (believable; cf. glauben), freundlich (friendly; cf. Freund), monatlich (monthly; cf. Monat).
- -los means without, less. Examples are: hilflos (helpless), farblos (colorless), herzlos (heartless).
- -mal means time, times. Examples are: manchmal (sometimes), einmal (once), zehn-mal (ten times).
- -schaft is added to concrete nouns to make them abstract: Nachbarschaft—neighborhood; Freundschaft—friendship; Gesellschaft—society; Wissenschaft—science
- -ung is added to a verb, and it corresponds to nouns ending in -ing, -tion, and -ment. Examples are: Übung (practice; cf. üben), Trennung (separation; cf. trennen), Vertreibung (banishment; cf. vertreiben).

18.2. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Alles ist flüchtig, nur das Ewige [ist] wichtig.
- 2. Das Geld geht hinkend ein und geht tanzend fort.
- 3. Baue dem fliehenden Feind eine goldene Brücke.
- 4. Ein lebendiger Hund ist besser als ein toter Löwe. (Ecclesiastes)

- 5. Im Spiel gibt es keine Freundschaft.
- 6. Wenn man die Gerechtigkeit biegt (bends), so bricht sie. (In the second clause, is sie nominative or accusative? How do you know?)
- 7. Das große unzerstörbare Wunder ist der Menschenglaube an Wunder. (Jean Paul)
- 8. Bei Gott ist kein Ding unmöglich.
- 9. Eine linde *Zunge* ist ein Baum des Lebens; aber eine lügenhafte bringt Herzeleid. (Proverbs)
- 10. Die Dichter sind gegen ihre Erlebnisse schamlos; sie beuten sie aus. (Nietzsche) (How do you know that schamlos does not modify Erlebnisse?)

Vocabulary

- ** alles—everything
 aus-beuten—to exploit
 aus-gehen (i)—to exit
- * **bauen**—to build
- ** brechen—to break die Brücke (-n)—bridge
- * der Dichter (-s, -)—writer, poet ein-gehen (i)—to enter das Erlebnis (-sses, -sse)—experience ewig—eternal fliehen—to flee flüchtig—fleeting fort-gehen (i)—to go away
- ** gegen—against, with regard to die Gerechtigkeit—justice das Herzeleid—suffering hinken (i)—to limp lind—gentle lügenhaft—lying schamlos—shameless das Spiel (-s, -e)—game
- * unmöglich—impossible unzerstörbar—indestructible
- ** wichtig—important der Wunder (-s, -)—miracle

18. 3. Guess these words:

komisch; hörbar, freundlos, zweimal, Sneewittchen, gehend, bringend, die Arbeitslosigkeit, der Optimismus, der Realist, wochentlich, sonnig, die Verbesserung, göttlich, kindlos, völlig, westlich, danklos, kosmetisch, mächtig, die Wärme, die Kleinigkeit

The Modal Auxiliaries

19.1. In German, there are six modals, known superficially as "helping verbs." Since modals usually express an attitude towards the action expressed by an infinitive rather than a specific action themselves, they seldom appear alone in a sentence. For example, in the English sentence, "I must work," the modal must causes the infinitive work to be perceived as a necessity. In the sentence, "I can work," the modal can indicates that the work is capable of being done, but is no longer a necessity. And in the sentence, "I want to work," the modal want indicates that the work is in fact desirable.

The modals are:

 dürfen
 to be permitted to, may

 können
 can, to be able to

 mögen
 to like to, may

 müssen
 to have to, must

 sollen
 to be supposed to, is to

 wollen
 to want to, to intend to

19.2. Here are the present tense forms for all six modals. Note that the singular form is significantly different from the infinitive for the modals *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, and *wollen*. Also note that the first and third person singular are identical for all modals:

	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ich	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
du	darfst	kannst	magst	mußt	sollst	willst
er	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
wir	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr	dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
Sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

19.3. In a simple indicative sentence with a modal, the modal will be in "second" place, and the infinitive will be at the end of the clause. Here are sentences with each of the six modals:

Wenn sie eine Karte hat, darf sie in die Bibliothek gehen—If she has a card, she is permitted to go to the library.

Der Briefträger kann die lesbare Schrift leicht lesen—The mailman can easily read the legible handwriting. (Note: kann should not be translated as to know!)

Fräulein Meier mag das nicht tun-Fräulein Meier does not like to do that.

Jeden Tag muß der Student viel studieren—The student has to study a lot each day.

Was soll sie tun? - What should she do?

Der Student will ins Theater gehen-The student wants to go to the theater.

19.4. Common idioms involving modals (memorize the asterisked sentences—they are used as often as the more standard meanings):

Er kann Deutsch—He speaks German.

* Das *mag* sein—That *may* be.

Die Behauptung des Briefträgers über Fräulein Meier *mag* wahr *sein*—The assertion of the mailman about Fräulein Meier *may be* true.

Er soll gelehrt sein—He is reputed to be educated.

* Morgen früh soll der mutige Widerstandskämpfer sterben — Tomorrow morning, the courageous resistence fighter is to die. (This will happen, even though it should not happen.)

Das Gebäude soll ein Museum werden—The building is to become a museum. Soll das wahr sein?—Can that be true?

Mögen often appears in its subjunctive form—möchte, which is best translated would like to: Fräulein Meier möchte Zoologie studieren—Fräulein Meier would like to study zoology.

19.5. Sometimes the modals can be dificult to translate because they look so much like English cognates. For example *must* sometimes is better translated as *have to* rather than *must*, especially in clauses with multiple verbs, *können* sometimes should be translated *to be able to* and *sollen* sometimes is better translated *to to* rather than *should*.

Here are examples:

Sie wird dahin gehen müssen-She will have to go there.

Er will seinem Freund helfen können—He wants to be able to help his friend. Das arme Kind der Witwe soll seinen Vater nie kennenlernen—The poor child of the widow is never to meet his father (or will never meet . . .)

19.6. The past and present perfect tenses of modals

The pasts of the modals are formed in the following ways:

ModalPastdürfen—to be permitteddurfte—was permittedkönnen—to be able to, cankonnte—was able to, couldmögen—to like to, maymochte—liked to, mightmüssen—to have to, mustmußte—had tosollen—is to, shouldsollte—was to, was supposed towollen—to want towollte—wanted to

The past tense of müssen is always translated as had to: Sie mußte Finnisch studieren—She had to study Finnish.

The modals almost never appear in their participial forms. Instead, the following construction is much more common:

Er hat nicht gehen dürfen—He was not permitted to go.
Er hat viel dazu sagen können—He was able to say a lot about that.
Sie hat ihrem Freund helfen müssen—She had to help her friend.
Es hat eben nicht sein sollen—That just should not have been (that way).
Sie haben essen wollen—They wanted to eat.

19.7. Modals in combination with other verbs

Modals can be used in combination with (1) the future (2) the past, and (3) other modals. When you are confronted with any of these combinations, you should translate the modal first, the verb at the end of the clause second, and the penultimate verb last. Here is an example:

Sie konnte das getan haben—She could have done that.

I 3 2

I. The future combination with a modal is formed as follows:

Sie wird das tun können—She will be able to do that.

I 3 2

Wir werden alles wissen wollen—We will want to know everything.

I 3 2

Er wird viele Briefe schreiben müssen—He will have to write several letters.

I 3 :

2. Here are modals in combination with the past infinitive:

Ein Dilettant kann das Buch nicht geschrieben haben—An amateur can not have

written the book.

Ehe du Gott suchst, muß dich Gott schon gefunden haben—Before you look for

God, he already must have found you.

3. Here are examples of modals in combination with other modals:

Der Alte soll nicht immer zu Hause bleiben wollen—The old person should not

1 3 2

always want to stay at home.

Das Kind muß endlich schlafen wollen—The child must finally want to sleep.

3

19.8. Sometimes when a modal is used with a verb of action, that verb will be omitted, and only the modal will be used:

Wenn wir nicht [tun] können, was wir [tun] wollen, so müssen wir [tun], was wir [tun] können—If we can not do what we want to do, then we have to do what we can (do). Although the tun is omitted in German, do is added in English. Here are further examples:

Darf ich ins Kino?—May I go to the movies?

Curt konnte von entwaffnendem Charme sein, wenn er wollte, und meistens wollte er—Curt could be of a disarming charm if he wanted to, and mostly, he wanted to. Wo wollen Sie hin—Where do you want to go?

19.9. Additional verbs, which occasionally function as modals

- (1) The verb lassen also can function as a type of modal when it means
 - (a) to let, to permit, to allow, or
 - (b) to have something done, to cause, to make. Here are examples:

Der Briefträger *läßt* Fräulein Meier viele interessante Geschichten *erzählen*—The mailman *lets* Fräulein Meier *tell* a lot of interesting stories.

Ach du großer Gott! Was für kleine Kartoffeln *läßt* du wachsen?—Alas, great God! What kind of small potatoes do you *let grow*? (In other words, why do you make so many stupid little things when you are capable of magnificent creations?)

(2) Other verbs that occasionally function as modals are: heißen (to order, to bid), hören (to hear), lehren (to teach), lernen (to learn), machen (to make), and sehen (to see).

Here are examples:

Der Professor heißt den Studenten hereinkommen—The professor asks the student to come in.

Die Mutter hörte ihr Kind singen-The mother heard her child sing.

Im Zoo sahen die Leute den Bären tanzen—At the zoo, the people saw the bear dance.

Wer will schwimmen lernen—Who wants to learn to swim?

19.10. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Den Alten muß man glauben.
- 2. Liebe und Husten (coughing) kann man nicht verbergen (conceal).

- 3. Das Werk zeigt an, was der Mann kann.
- 4. In den Monaten ohne "r" (Mai, Juni, Juli, August) soll man wenig küssen und viel trinken. (... because it is so hot then.)
- 5. Um eines faulen Astes (branch) willen soll man den Baum nicht umhauen (cut down). (Do not confuse um . . . willen with wollen!)
- 6. Ein Mann, der (who) will, kann mehr als zehn, die (who) müssen.
- 7. Fräulein Meier wollte sich (herself) bessern; also belegte sie einen Fernkurs (correspondence course), und sie studierte Erdkunde (geography).
- 8. Not lehrt den Affen geigen (to fiddle). (When he is desperate, an ape or person can do anything. Is Affen singular or plural? If you are unsure, review chapter 8.)
- 9. Die Hexen haben rote Augen und können nicht weit sehen, aber sie haben eine feine Witterung (sense of smell) wie die Tiere und merken es, wenn Menschen herankommen (aus Hänsel und Gretel) [Note that the es is a placeholder for the next clause, and need not be translated.]
- 10. Wer das Wasser des Lebens sucht, muß lange dürsten können.
- 11. Spucke (spit) nicht in den Brunnen (well), wenn du noch daraus trinken mußt.
- 12. Ein Kritiker machte Hegel darauf aufmerksam, daß die historischen Tatsachen nicht mit seiner Philosophie übereinstimmten. Hegel soll geantwortet haben: "Um so schlimmer für die Tatsachen."
- 13. Der Briefträger hat Fräulein Meier bei ihren Schularbeiten (homework) helfen müssen.
- 14. Von allen Bäumen des Gartens darfst du essen, nur vom Baum der Erkenntnis von Gut und Böse darfst du nicht essen; denn am Tage, an dem du davon ißt, mußt du sterben.
- 15. Willst du immer weiter schweifen (roam)? Sieh, das Gute liegt so nah. (Do you remember the imperative? If not, check 6.6) Lerne nur, das Glück ergreifen (grasp), Denn das Glück ist immer da.

(Goethe)

Vocabulary

- der Affe (-n, -n)—ape also-therefore an-zeigen—to indicate
 - der Ast (-es, -e) branch aufmerksam machen auf-to

draw one's attention to belegen-to take; to enroll in

bessern—to improve der Brunnen (-s, -)—well

* erzählen—to tell

* da-there; then

* denn—for, because

faul-rotten

das Gedicht (-es, -e)—poem

die Erkenntnis-knowledge

die Erdkunde-geography ergreifen—to grasp

dürfen (darf)—to be permitted to

German Quickly

herankommen (i)—to approach

- * heute abend—this evening die Hexe (-n)—witch das Husten (-s, -)—coughing
- * können (kann)—can, to be able to
- * lassen (läßt)—to let
- * lehren—to teach

146

- * liegen (i)—to lie
- * manchmal—sometimes
- * merken—to notice
- * mögen (mag)—like to, may
- * müssen (muß)—to have to
- * nah—near
- ** nehmen—to take die Not (-e)—need schlimm—bad

- die **Schularbeit** (-en)—school work
- * sollen (soll)—should; is to; is said to
 - **spucken**—to spit
- * sterben (i)—to die die Tatsache (-n)—fact das Tier (-s, -e)—animal übereinstimmen—to agree
- um...willen—for the sake of verbergen—to conceal
- * weit—far
- * weiter—further
- * wenig—little
- * wollen (will) ---- want to
- * zehn—ten

19.11. Ein Kindervers:

"Soll ich oder soll ich nicht?"
fragt der Knabe das Mädchen.
"Was willst du oder willst du nicht?"
fragt das Mädchen den Knaben.
"Jetzt aber Schluß (stop)"
sagt der Knabe zum Mädchen.
"Jetzt kriegst du doch den Kuß."

Reading Selection: November (Peter Bichsel)

Er <u>fürchtete sich</u> (was afraid) und wenn er zu jemandem sagte: "Es ist kälter geworden", erwartete er Trost (comfort).

"Ja, November", sagte der andere.

"Bald ist es Weihnachten", sagte er.

Er hatte Heizöl eingekauft, er besaß einen Wintermantel, er war versorgt (prepared) für den Winter, aber er fürchtete sich. Im Winter ist man verloren. Im Winter ist alles Schreckliche möglich, Krieg zum Beispiel. Im Winter kann die Stelle gekündigt werden (one can lose one's job), im Winter erkältet man sich (catches cold). Man kann sich (himself) schützen gegen die Kälte, Halstuch (scarf), Mantelkragen (coat collar), Handschuhe. Aber es könnte (could) noch kälter werden.

Es nützt nichts, jetzt "Frühling" zu sagen. (You will learn this construction in Chapter 20.)

Die Schaufenster sind beleuchtet (lit up), sie täuschen Wärme vor. Aber die Kirchenglocken klirren (clank). In den Wirtschaften (taverns) ist es heiß, zu Hause öffnen die Kinder die Fenster und lassen die Wohnungstür offen, im Geschäft (office) vergist man seinen Hut.

Man bemerkt nicht, wie die Bäume die Blätter fallen lassen. Plötzlich haben sie keine mehr. Im April haben sie wieder Blätter, im März vielleicht schon. Man wird sehen, wie sie Blätter bekommen.

Bevor er das Haus verläßt, zählt er sein Geld nach.

Schnee wird es keinen geben, Schnee gibt es nicht mehr.

Frierende Frauen sind schön, Frauen sind schön.

"Man muß sich an die Kälte gewöhnen (accustom oneself)", sagte er, "man muß tiefer atmen (breathe) und schneller gehen."—"Was soll ich den Kindern zu Weihnachten kaufen?" fragte er.

"Man wird sich an die Kälte gewöhnen", sagte er zum anderen. "Ja, es ist kälter geworden, November", sagte der andere.

Vocabulary

alles Schreckliche—everything (that is) terrible ** bald—soon bemerken—to notice **besitzen**—to own das Blatt (-es, -er)—leaf, page ein-kaufen—to buy frierend—freezing der Frühling (-s)-spring gewöhnen (sich)—to accustom oneself heiß-hot das Heizöl-heating oil der Hut (-es, -e)—hat

- * **ja**—yes, indeed
- * jemand—someone
- ** jetzt—now die Kirchenglocke (-n)—church der Krieg (-es, -e)-war
- lassen—to let

März—March

- * möglich—possible nach-zählen-to count again (es) nützt nichts—it is not worth it
- * plötzlich—suddenly das Schaufenster (-s, -)—show window
- * schnell—fast, quick
- * schon—already schützen—to protect
- * tief—deep
- * vergessen—to forget verlassen—to leave
- * verlieren—to lose
- ** vielleicht—perhaps vor-täuschen—to feign die Weihnachten—Christmas
- * wieder—again die Wohnungstür (-en) apartment door
- ** zum Beispiel—for example

The Zu Construction

20.1. The zu construction is used to take care of a clause fragment; a verb is seen in its infinitival form with a zu in front of it if it is found in a sentence with another verb which is not a modal. It will always appear at the end of the clause, and the trick is to find it and to place it before the object in the clause fragment:

Here are examples:

Es macht Spaß, ins Kino zu gehen—It is fun to go to the movies.

Er hat Angst davor, das zu tun—He is afraid to do that.

Er denkt daran, auf seine Freundin zu warten—He thinks about waiting for his girlfriend.

Es ist schwer, einem alten Hund Kunststücke zu lehren—It is difficult to teach an old dog new tricks.

Fräulein Meier hält es für gut, ihren Katzen Thunfisch zu füttern—Fräulein Meier thinks it good to feed her cats tuna.

Such clauses are traditionally split off from the main clause by a comma; however the spelling reform of 1996 did away with this tradition, so post-1996, you may not see this comma. In this construction, the infinitival form of the verb will appear at the end of the clause.

If the infinitive is an inseparable verb, the zu construction will appear as follows: zu gehen, zu wissen, zu verstehen, zu beschreiben.

If the verb is separable, however, the *zu* will appear between the prefix and the verb root—*aufzumachen*, *fortzuwerfen*, *anzusehen* are examples. And here is a sample sentence:

Manchmal ist es schwer, früh *aufzustehen*—Sometimes it is difficult to get up early. Therefore, in order to find the infinitive, simply eliminate the *zu* in the middle.

20.2. When the noun appearing in the infinitival clause is nominative, the *zu* and the infinitive usually will remain at the end of the clause in your English translation. Here are examples:

Der Fuchs (nominative) ist schwer zu fangen — The fox is hard to capture.

Die Theologie Schleiermachers (nominative) ist interessant zu lesen — The theology of Schliermacher is interesting to read.

But if the noun in the infinitival clause happens to be accusative or dative, the *zu* and the infinitive should be placed in front of that noun in your English translation. Here are examples:

Er ist nicht imstande, den Dieb (accusative) zu beschreiben—He is unable to describe the thief.

Es ist nicht der Mühe wert, dem Dilettanten (dative) zuzuhören—It is not worth the effort to listen to the amateur.

The zu construction can be especially tricky if the sentence contains multiple uses of it, or if there are additional verbs with the construction:

Die Katze versucht *die Maus (accusative)* zu fangen und *sie (accusative)* zu töten—The cat tries to capture *the mouse* and to kill *it*.

Tatsächlich ist es ohne das Sehen für ein Kind enorm schwierig, die Hände (accusative) als feine Sinnesorgane zu benutzen—Actually, without sight, it is enormously difficult for a child to to use his hands as delicate organs of perception.

20.3. Sometimes the phrase before the fragment will contain a *da*- compound, which you should ignore in your translation:

Das Publikum wartet ungeduldig *darauf*, die berühmte Schauspielerin zu sehen—The public is impatiently waiting to see the famous actress.

20. 4. This construction can also appear in present perfect, or with a modal:

Miss Vintner war zwei Jahre älter als Mrs. Harfield und betrachtete es als einen persönlichen Triumph, ihre Freundin überlebt zu haben—Miss Vintner was two years older than Mrs. Harfield and considered it a personal triumph to have survived her friend. (Agatha Christie)

Es ist elend genug, einmal glücklich gewesen zu sein—It is miserable enough to have been happy once.

Die Frau hatte die Gabe, mit alten Damen, Hunden und kleinen Jungen wunderbar *umgehen* (consort) *zu können*—The woman had the gift of being able to consort wonderfully with old women, dogs, and young boys.

20.5. Sometimes verbs such as scheinen and versuchen call for a zu construction:

Das Mädchen schien sehr glücklich zu sein—The girl seemed to be very happy. Fräulein Meier versucht dem Briefträger zu gefallen—Fräulein Meier tries to please the mailman.

20.6. Three common phrases using zu: um . . . zu, ohne . . . zu, and anstatt . . . zu

The most common of these constructions is $um \dots zu$, which will always mean in order to. Here are examples:

Er will hier sein, um den Professor kennenzulernen—He wants to be here in order to meet the professor.

Fräulein Meier belegt einen Briefwechselkursus, um etwas zu lernen—Fräulein Meier takes a correspondence course in order to learn something.

Er gibt einen Taler aus, um einen Pfennig zu sparen—He spends a dollar in order to save a penny.

The other two phrases are *anstatt* . . . zu which means *instead of*, and *ohne* . . . zu which means *without*. Here are examples:

Anstatt das Schauspiel Sappho von Grillparzer zu lesen, ging der Student ins Kino—Instead of reading Grillparzer's play, Sappho, the student went to the movies. Sie tat das, ohne ihren Freund zu fragen—She did that without asking her friend about it.

20.7. The negation of müssen (to have to) is nicht brauchen zu (not to have to). Here are examples:

Wenn du Königin bist, so *brauchst* du *nicht* mehr zu Fuß zu gehen — When you are queen, you will no longer need to walk.

Wer die Sonne hat, *braucht nicht* nach den Sternen *zu* fragen—Whoever has the sun (i.e. good things) need not ask about the stars.

20.8. Note also that it is even possible to have the zu construction function as a subject:

Gute Bücher lesen zu können ist eine Freude des Lebens—To be able to read good books is a joy of life.

Öl ins Feuer zu gießen, ist nicht der Weg, es zu löschen— To pour oil onto the fire is not the way to extinguish it.

Weise zu sein fällt leicht nach dem Geschehnis-It is easy to be wise after the event.

20.9. Zu in combination with sein. Note that this construction is confusing and non-intuitive, and you will often have trouble translating it because the infinitive is obviously not a participle, even though it is translated as if it were. Note that zu used with an infinitive following all forms of the verb sein will be translated into English with a passive meaning. Here are examples:

Von einem Rind ist nicht mehr als Rindfleisch zu erwarten—From a cow, nothing other than beef is to be expected.

Im Zoo war nur ein Flußpferd zu sehen—In the zoo, only one hippo was to be seen.

When used with a negation, this construction can be used to indicate something that cannot be done, and therefore should be translated passively with *cannot*. Here are examples:

Die Antwort ist nicht zu verstehen—The answer cannot be understood. Der Tanzbär war nicht zu finden—The dancing bear could not be found.

However, whenever an adjective (rather than an adverb or a noun) follows any form of the verb *sein*, the clause will not be translated passively, but rather like a normal zu construction: Es ist klug, schlafende Hunde liegen zu lassen—It is wise to let sleeping dogs lie.

20.10. Translate these sentences:

- I. Im Haus eines Diebes ist es schwer zu stehlen.
- 2. Es kann kein Wahrsager (prophet) den anderen ansehen, ohne zu lachen.
- 3. Der Briefträger geht manchmal zehn Schritte, um einen zu sparen.
- 4. Der Wolf drückte auf die Klinke, die Tür ging auf, und er *ging*, ohne ein Wort zu *sprechen*, gerade zum Bett der Großmutter und verschluckte sie. (In the clause, *die Tür ging auf*, is *die Tür* nominative or accusative? How do you know?)
- 5. Gott schließt keine Tür, ohne eine andere aufzumachen.
- 6. Geschehene Dinge (things that have happened) sind nicht zu ändern.
- 7. Man muß zeitig (on time) aufbrechen (leave); dann braucht man nicht zu rennen (run).
- 8. Drei Dinge sind nicht aufzuhalten: Wasser, Feuer, die Menschenmenge.
- 9. Die Entstehung der *Musik* ist nicht von der Entstehung der Menschheit zu trennen. (Schönberg)
- 10. Auch im Paradies ist es nicht gut, allein zu sein.
- II. Der Journalist liebte es, die Schwächen anderer boshaft und treffend zu karikieren.
- 12. Fräulein Meier war in einem Zustand (condition) hochgradiger Erregung, und erregte Frauen pflegen (tend) immer etwas *mehr* zu *sagen* als notwendig.
- 13. Gute Freunde zu haben ist eine Freude.
- 14. Curt zertrat seine Zigarette, und Nikolaus nützte den Augenblick, um vor ihm einzusteigen (to get on [a bus]) und Recha die Hand zu reichen und ohne aufdringliche (urgent) *Hast* den Platz neben ihr zu nehmen. (Brigitte Reimann)
- 15. Nicht wenn es gefährlich ist, die Wahrheit zu sagen, findet sie am seltensten Vertreter, sondern wenn es langweilig ist. (Nietzsche) (This sentence is especially difficult, as it requires some smoothing out. What part of speech is am seltesten? How do you know?)
- 16. Alles hat seine Stunde, und es gibt eine Zeit für jegliche (every) Sache unter der Sonne. Eine Zeit für die Geburt und eine Zeit für das Sterben, eine Zeit zu pflanzen und eine Zeit, das Gepflanzte auszureißen, eine Zeit zu töten und eine Zeit zu heilen, eine Zeit einzureißen (rend) und eine Zeit aufzubauen, eine Zeit zu weinen und eine Zeit zu lachen, eine Zeit zu klagen (mourn) und eine Zeit zu tanzen, eine Zeit, Steine wegzuwerfen, und eine Zeit, Steine zu sammeln, eine Zeit zu umarmen und eine Zeit, sich der Umarmung zu enthalten (to refrain from), eine Zeit zu suchen und eine Zeit zu verlieren, eine Zeit aufzubewahren (protect) und eine Zeit fortzuwerfen, eine Zeit zu zerreißen und eine Zeit zu nähen (sew), eine Zeit zu schweigen und eine Zeit zu reden, eine Zeit zu lieben und eine Zeit zu hassen, eine Zeit des Krieges und eine Zeit des Friedens. (Ecclesiastes 3)

Vocabulary

- * **ändern**—to change
- * an-sehen—to look at
- * anstatt...zu—instead of auf-bauen—to build up auf-bewahren—to protect auf-brechen (i)—to leave auf-gehen—to open auf-halten—to stop
- * auf-machen—to open aus-reißen—to rip up boshaft—malicious
- * brauchen nicht—need not der Dieb (-es, -e)—thief drücken—to press ein-reißen—to take down, rend enthalten (r)—to refrain from die Entstehung (-en)—origin die Erregung—excitement fort-werfen—to cast away
- * der **Friede** (-ns)—peace die **Gabe**—gift, talent **gar kein**—not at all
- * die Geburt (-en)—birth gefährlich—dangerous gerade—straight
- * **geschehen** (i)—to happen
- * hassen—to hate
 die Hast—haste
 heilen—to heal
 hochgradig—great
 karikieren—to caricature
 klagen—to mourn
 die Klinke (-n)—latch
- * der Krieg (-es, -e)—war langweilig—boring
- * manchmal—sometimes die Menschenmenge (-n)—crowd notwendig—necessary

- nützen—to use ohne...zu—without der Platz (-es, -e)—place, seat
- * reden—to speak reichen—to reach die Sache (-n)—matter sammeln—to collect
- * schließen—to close der Schritt (-es,-e)—step die Schwäche (-n)—weakness schweigen (i)—to be silent
- ** schwer—difficult
- * **selten**—seldom
- * sondern—but rather, on the contrary sparen—to save stehlen (stiehlt)—to steal
- * die **Stunde** (-n)—hour
- * suchen—to seek
 töten—to kill
 treffend—accurate
 trennen—to separate
- * um...zu—in order to umarmen—to embrace die Umarmung (-en)—embrace
- * verlieren—to lose
 verschlucken—to swallow
 der Vertreter (-s, -)—representative, adherent
 der Wahrsager (-s, -)—prophet
 weg-werfen (wirft weg)—to throw
 away
 weinen (i)—to cry
 zeitig—on time, early

zerreißen—to rip up zertreten (zertritt)—to step on, crush, put out

Vocabulary Aid

- 1. Der alte Mann steht auf, um etwas zu sagen.
- 2. Heute abend scheint der Briefträger viele E-Mails schreiben zu wollen.
- 3. Anstatt zu arbeiten, will Fräulein Meier ein Liebesgedicht schreiben.
- 4. Fräulein Meier braucht nicht zu viel zu studieren.
- 5. Fräulein Meier macht die Tür auf, um den Briefträger zu grüßen (greet).
- 6. Der Friede ist nicht zu verlieren.

Co-ordinating Conjunctions

21.1. Co-ordinating conjunctions connect words, phrases, or clauses of the same value. They do not have any effect on word order. The co-ordinating conjunctions are:

```
aber—however
denn—for, because
oder—or
sondern—but rather
und—and
```

Here are two word combinations that also function as conjunctions:

```
entweder...oter either...or
weder...noch neither...nor
```

21.2. The conjunctions *must be memorized*, as they are all very important. As you have already learned, German sentences can seem interminable, as several clauses can be connected with one another. Co-ordinating conjunctions often provide useful clues as to how to break a sentence up into manageable clauses:

Der Briefträger kauft eine rote Rose *und* gibt sie Fräulein Meier, *denn* solche Rosen gefallen ihr—The mailman buys a red rose *and* gives it to Fräulein Meier, *because* such roses please her.

21.3. Often, if there is no comma before a co-ordinating conjunction, part of the first clause will continue into the second clause:

Man kann nicht die Kuh verkaufen und doch die Milch schlürfen—One cannot sell the cow *and* nevertheless drink the milk.

Er will Deutsch studieren und ein Examen bestehen—He wants to study German and pass an exam.

Der böse Wolf machte die Tür zum Hause der Großmutter auf und sprang in ihr Bett—The evil wolf opened the door to the grandmother's house and leapt into her bed.

Mache den Mund zu und die Augen auf—Close (zumachen) your mouth and open (aufmachen) your eyes.

Im Augenblick der großen Erderschütterung versank der größte Teil der Stadt mit einem Gekrache und begrub alles unter seinen Trümmern—At the moment of the great earthquake, the greatest part of the city sank with a crash and buried everything under its ruins.

21.4. If there is a comma before a co-ordinating conjunction, it usually means that the sentence consists of two separate yet equal clauses:

Der böse Wolf war im Haus ihrer Großmutter, *aber* Rotkäppchen sah ihn nicht sofort—The evil wolf was in her grandmother's house, *but* Little Red Riding Hood didn't see him immediately.

Der Briefträger hat einen Preis erhalten, *und* Fräulein Meier war erfreut darüber—The mailman received a prize, *and* Fräulein Meier was pleased by this.

Ein Narr wirft einen Stein in den Brunnen, *und* zehn Vernünftige können ihn nicht herausholen—A fool throws a stone into the well, *and* ten wise people cannot get it out.

21.5. If other co-ordinating conjunctions are used, however, a comma may appear between clauses, even if the subject of the first clause is carried over into the second clause:

Man lernt nicht für die Schule, *sondern* für das Leben—One does not learn (only) for school, but for life.

21.6. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Osten oder Westen, zu Hause ist es am besten.
- 2. Entweder bekennen (confess) oder brennen!

- 3. Hör und sei nicht taub (deaf), aber langsam glaub. (Do you remember the imperative? If not, review 6.6.)
- 4. Nach seiner Entlassung (release from prison) hatte der Student 45 *Pfund* und einige *politische Illusionen* eingebüßt.
- 5. Armut ist weder Schande noch Unehre (dishonor).
- 6. Such eine Frau nicht auf dem Ball, sondern im Stall (stable). (Unfortunately, most proverbs regarding women seem to have been created by male chauvinists!)
- 7. Ein alter Gott muß nützen und schaden können. (Nietzsche)
- 8. Sie hat das gesagt und getan.
- 9. Die Lebensgeschichte Immanuel Kants ist schwer zu beschreiben. Denn er hatte weder Leben noch Geschichte. (Heinrich Heine)
- 10. Die Psychologie hatte unbekannte Tiefen und Abgründe der Seele entdeckt, aber auch das feste zielsichere (unerring) Selbstbewußtsein aufgelöst. (Fritz Martini)
- II. ... ohne nach rechts oder links zu blicken, überschritt er die Straße und stieg die Stufen der *Kathedrale* hinan.
- 12. Das Kind ist bis zum fünften Jahr der Mutter Herr, bis zum zehnten Jahr ihr Knecht (servant), bis zum fünfzehnten Jahr ihr Geheimrat (confidant), und dann ist es entweder ihr Freund oder ihr Feind. (Be careful with numbers!)
- 13. Das goldene Haar der Großmutter war vielleicht nicht immer so golden gewesen, aber die blauen Augen waren sicher echt.
- 14. Der König von Frankreich ist ein König der Esel; denn seine Untertanen (subjects) müssen tun, was er ihnen auferlegt (imposes); der König in England ist ein König der Leute; denn sie genehmigen (consent to) das, was er ihnen auferlegt; aber der Kaiser ist ein König der Fürsten; denn sie tun, was ihnen gefällt. (Luther)

Vocabulary

- * aber—but, however der Abgrund (-s, -e)—abyss auf-erlegen—to impose auf-lösen—to dissolve bekennen—to confess
- * beschreiben- to describe
- * bis zu—until
- blicken (i)—to look, glance
 brennen—to burn
- * dann—then
- ** denn—for, because
 echt—genuine
 einbüssen—to lose, forfeit

- entdecken—to discover
- * **entweder...oder**—either...or der **Esel** (-s, -)—donkey
- * der **Feind** (-es, -e)—enemy **fest**—firm
- * das Frankreich (-s)—France fünfzehn—fifteen der Fürst (-en, -en)—prince
- * gefallen (i)—to please der Geheimrat (-s, -e)—confidant hinan-steigen (i)—to climb
- * langsam—slow
- ** die Leute (pl.)—people

links—left der Magen (-s, -)—stomach nützen—to help

oder—or rechts—right schaden—to harm

die Schande—scandal das Selbstbewußtsein (-s)—self-

confidence, self-awareness * sicher—certain, certainly

* sondern—but, on the contrary

die **Stufe** (-n)—step * suchen—to seek

die **Tiefe** (-n)—depth überschreiten—to cross over

der **Stall** (-es, -e)—stable

die Straße (-n)—street

unbekannt—unknown, unfamiliar * weder—noch—neither . . . nor

Basic Verb Placement (Part II)

22.1. In an earlier chapter on "Basic Verb Placement," you were told that in indicative sentences, the conjugated verb appears in "second" place (cf. Chapter 6):

Oft geht der Student ins Theater—The student often goes to the theater.

Since then, you have encountered more complex verbs, and you have discovered that part of the verb can also appear at the end of the clause in the following cases:

I. Whenever there is a separable verb prefix (cf. 13.1–13.7):

Er *steht* morgens früh *auf*—He gets up early in the morning. Sie *macht* die Tür *zu*—She closes the door.

2. Whenever there is a future tense (cf. 10.1–10.3):

Sie wird nicht hier bleiben—She will not stay here. Vielleicht werden wir das tun—Perhaps we will do that.

3. Whenever the verb is in the present or past perfect tense (cf. Chapters 14-15):

Er hat das nicht gewußt—He did not know that.

Sie ist nach Berlin geflogen—She has flown to Berlin.

Er hatte das oft getan—He had often done that.

Sie war früher angekommen—She had arrived earlier.

4. Usually whenever a modal appears in a clause (cf. Chapter 19):

Das Kind darf das nicht sagen—The child is not permitted to say that.

Sie kann gut schreiben—She can write well.

Er mag nicht hier sein—He may not be here.

Er muß viel studieren—He has to study a lot.

Du sollst nicht töten-Thou shalt not kill.

Der Student will den neuen Film sehen—The student wants to see the new film.

22.2. Translation of complex verbs

Therefore, whenever you see most verbs, check the end of the clause for any prefixes, then, if there are any, attach them to the verb root, and look up the complete verb.

Whenever you see *werden*, check the end of the clause for a verb infinitive. If there is one, then *werden* must be translated as *will*.

Er wird nicht dorthin gehen—He will not go there.

Whenever you see any form of *sein* or *haben*, check the end of the clause for participles. Be particularly suspicious of forms of *sein*, as they sometimes must be translated as a form of *to have*.

Sie ist oft geflogen—She has often flown.

Leider waren wir niemals dort gewesen-Unfortunately we had never been there.

Whenever you see any form of dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen or wollen, check the end of the clause for infinitives and translate accordingly:

Er will Kafkas Romane lesen—He wants to read Kafka's novels.

22.3. Whenever three verbs occur in a clause, the conjugated verb is always translated first, the final verb is translated second, and the penultimate verb is translated last (cf. 19.7). Here are examples:

Er wird das getan haben—He will have done that.

1 3

Er wird das wissen wollen—He will want to know that.

I 3 2

Sie werden das abschreiben müssen-They will have to copy that.

Sie hat den Aufsatz schreiben müssen-She had to write the essay.

I

3

Man hatte das Unglück nicht sehen wollen, weil es so schrecklich war—One had

1 3 2

not wanted to see the accident because it was so horrible.

22.4. Whenever the zu construction is accompanied by auxiliaries, the auxiliary will always appear after the zu, and it will be translated first, while the verb appearing before the zu will be translated second. Here are examples:

Es ist unangenehm, nicht schlafen zu können—It is unpleasant not to be able to sleep. Das Kind weckt die Katze, anstatt sie liegen zu lassen—The child awakens the cat, instead of letting it lie (sleep).

Lange Zeit hatte Siddhartha das Leben der Welt gelebt, ohne ihm *anzugehören*—For a long time, Siddhartha had lived the life of the world without belonging to it.

22.5. Translate these sentences:

- Aber es gehört mehr Mut (courage) dazu, ein Ende zu machen, als einen neuen Vers: das wissen alle Ärzte und Dichter. (Nietzsche)
- 2. Lerne Schweigen! Leben und Tod hängen davon ab.
- 3. Lob (praise) ist leichter zu erlangen (attain) als zu erhalten.
- 4. Vorschläge gehen mit der Sonne auf und nieder.
- 5. Wir kamen sofort und *brachen* die Tür *auf*. Der *Mann lag* tot auf dem Fußboden. Er hatte eine Schuß*wunde* im Kopf und eine *Pistole* in der Hand. Es schien ein *klarer* Fall von *Selbstmord*.
- 6. Vor vielen Jahren hatte Fräulein Meier Schauspielerin werden wollen, aber ihre Mutter war dagegen.
- 7. Wie kein anderer Künstler seiner *Epoche* hat Paul Klee mit einer herben (harsh) *Intimität* das Wesentliche unserer Innen- und Außenwelt erfaßt. (Note that there is a dash after *Innen* because it also goes with *Welt: Innenwelt*)

- 8. Nur Gott sieht die geheimsten Gedanken. Aber warum sollen diese so wichtig sein? Manche sind wichtig, nicht alle. Und müssen alle Menschen sie für wichtig halten? (Wittgenstein)
- 9. (An optional, challenger sentence)
 In diesem Sinn hat der dionysische (Dionysian) Mensch Ähnlichkeit mit Hamlet: beide haben einmal einen wahren Blick in das Wesen (essence) der Dinge getan (taken), sie haben erkannt, und es ekelt (disgusts) sie zu handeln; denn ihre Handlung kann nichts am ewigen Wesen der Dinge ändern, sie empfinden (perceive) es lächerlich oder schmachvoll (humiliating), daß ihnen zugemutet wird (is expected), die Welt, die aus den Fugen ist (that is out of joint), wieder einzurichten (to fix, to set right). Die Erkenntnis tötet das Handeln, zum Han-

deln gehört das Umschleiertsein (veil-literally: being veiled) durch die Illu-

sion—das ist die Hamletlehre. (Nietzsche—Die Geburt der Tragödie)

Vocabulary

ab-hängen von—to depend on die Ähnlichkeit (-en)—
resemblance

- * ändern—to change
 auf-brechen—to break open
 auf-gehen (i)—to rise
 die Außenwelt—external world
 der Blick (-es, -e)—look, glance
 dazu-gehören—to take
 depremiert—depressed
- * der **Dichter** (-s, -)—writer, poet
- * einmal—once
 ein-richten—to adjust, to fix
 ekeln—to disgust
 empfinden—to perceive
 erfassen—to seize, grasp
 erhalten—to keep, to preserve
- * erkennen—to recognize die Erkenntnis (-sse)—recognition erlangen—to attain ewig—eternal
- * der Fall—case, instance der Fußboden—floor

- * der Gedanke (-ns, -n)—thought geheim—secret
- * halten für—to consider
- * handeln (i)—to act die Handlung—action lächerlich—laughable
- * **die Lehre** (-n)—doctrine, teaching das **Lob** (-es)—praise
- * manche—some nieder-gehen (i)—to set der Schauspieler (-s, -)—actor schmachvoll—disgraceful, humiliating
- * scheinen—to seem die Schußwunde—shot wound schweigen (i)—to be quiet der Sinn (-es, -e)—meaning, sense der Vers (-es, -e)—verse
- * warum—why
 das Wesen (-s, -)—essence
 wesentlich—essential
- * wieder—again

22.6. Verb Placement Practice (all of these sentences begin with a prepositional phrase so you must put the verb elsewhere in your sentences; the vocabulary is deliberately repetitive and easy):

- In einem Park hörte ein Freund der Frau mit vielen Katzen die schönen Lieder der Vögel.
- 2. In einem Park hörte ein Mann die schönen Lieder der Frau mit vielen Katzen.
- 3. In einem Park gab ein Freund der Frau einem Kind einen Apfel.
- 4. In einem Park gab ein Freund einer Frau einen Bonbon.
- 5. In einem Park gab ein Vater seinen Kindern einige Bonbons.
- 6. In einen Park wollte ein Vater mit vielen Kindern gehen.
- 7. In einen Park ist ein Mann mit seinen Kindern gegangen.
- 8. In einem Park gab eine Frau einem Kind einen ihrer Bonbons.
- 9. In einem Park gab eine Frau einem ihrer Freunde einen Bonbon.
- 10. In einem Park konnte eine Frau mit vielen Kindern die Lieder der Vögel hören.
- 11. In einem Park hat eine Frau jeden Tag mit ihren Kindern gespielt.
- 12. In einem Park wird eine Frau ihren Freunden eine Geschichte erzählen.
- 13. In einem Park sind nur zwei Frauen zu sehen.
- 14. In einem Park singt die Frau mit vielen Kindern ein Lied.
- 15. Vor einem Jahr ging der Freund der Frau oft in den Park.
- 16. Drei Jahre lang wohnte ein Student mit vielen Büchern in einer großen Stadt.

Reading Selection: *Die zehn Jungfrauen* (Matthäus 25.1–13) If you don't wish to use a dictionary, vocabulary for this section is given in Appendix K.

Das Himmelreich wird gleich zehn Jungfrauen sein, die (who) ihre Lampen nahmen und ausgingen, dem Bräutigam zu begegnen (to meet the bridegroom).

Aber fünf unter ihnen waren töricht (foolish), und fünf waren klug.

Die Törichten nahmen ihre Lampen, aber sie nahmen kein Öl mit (with them).

Die Klugen aber nahmen Öl in ihren Gefäßen (vessels) samt (together with) ihren Lampen.

Weil <u>sich</u> der Bräutigam <u>verspätete</u> (was delayed), wurden alle schläfrig, und sie schliefen ein.

Zur Mitternacht aber hörte man ein Geschrei: Seht, der Bräutigam kommt; geht, ihm entgegen!

Dann standen die Jungfrauen alle auf und schmückten (trimmed) ihre Lampen.

Die Törichten aber sprachen zu den Klugen: Gebt uns von eurem Öl, denn unsre Lampen verlöschen (are going out).

Da antworteten die Klugen und sprachen: Nein, das Öl reicht nicht für uns

und für euch; geht aber hin zu den Krämern (merchants) und kauft für euch selbst. Und als sie hingingen, zu kaufen, kam der Bräutigam; und sie, die (who) bereit waren, gingen mit ihm hinein zur Hochzeit (wedding); und die Tür wurde (was) verschlossen.

Zuletzt kamen auch die anderen Jungfrauen und sprachen: Herr, Herr, tue uns auf!

Er antwortete aber und sprach: Wahrlich, ich sage euch, ich kenne euch nicht. Darum wachet; denn ihr wißt weder Tag noch Stunde, in welcher des Menschen Sohn kommen wird.

Dependent Clauses (Part I)

A dependent clause is one that cannot function alone as a complete sentence. It can begin with a common **subordinating conjunction** (*because, although, that, if, when, after, while, since*), with an **interrogative** functioning as a subordinating conjunction (*whoever, what, how, where, why*), or with a **relative pronoun** functioning as a subordinating conjunction (*who, whom, that, which*). You should memorize these conjunctions, as they provide useful clues concerning where to break your sentences up.

23.1. Verb placement in dependent clauses

In German sentences that contain only an independent clause, the verb always appears in "second" place. Examples are:

Große Fluten sind Gottes Ruten—Large floods are God's rods.

Ein hungriger Magen ist ein schlechter Ratgeber—A hungry stomach is a poor advisor.

In all dependent clauses, in contrast, the verb appears at the *end* of the German clause:

Es mag wahr sein, daß große Fluten Gottes Ruten sind—It may be true that large floods are God's rods.

23.2. Whenever you have a dependent clause in German, the verb and any auxiliaries will appear at the end of the clause; the dependent clause will always be separated from

the main clause by a comma, even when this does not occur in English. You might also wish to look at Chapter 35, in which the use of commas is explained.

23. 3. Here are some examples of subordinating conjunctions:

Wenn du vor dem Frühstück singst, wirst du vor der Nacht weinen—If you sing before breakfast, you will cry before nightfall.

Als Zarathustra dreißig Jahre alt war, verließ er seine Heimat und ging in das Gebirge—When Zarathustra was thirty years old, he left his home and went to the mountains.

Note that if there are auxiliaries in the dependent clause, they will appear at the end of the clause, *after* the infinitive or participle:

Überquere die Brücke nicht, bevor du sie erreicht hast—Don't cross the bridge before you have reached it.

Ich weiß nicht, wie ich den Kindern entkommen kann—I don't know how I can escape from the children.

However, if the perfect tense of a modal is used, the auxiliary appears before the other verbs at the end of the clause:

Was ich von der Geschichte des armen Werthers nur *habe* auffinden können, habe ich mit Fleiß gesammelt . . . — What I have only been able to discover of the story of poor Werther, I have gathered with diligence (Goethe)

23.4. The key to translating a dependent clause

- 1. First identify the dependent clause:
 - (a) commas will always separate it from the main clause,
 - (b) it will always begin with a subordinating conjunction,
 - (c) and the verb will always be at the end of the clause.
- 2. Place the verb at the end of the clause along with any adverbs which modify it after the complete subject (which may have prepositional phrases) and before any existing object. This is crucial for correct translation. Once you develop the habit of doing this, dependent clauses will seem quite manageable. But make sure you know exactly what the subject is before you move the verb. And remember to shift only the verb and any adverbs modifying it. Then the rest of the clause will remain intact.

Here are some examples:

Wenn der April /wie ein Löwe kommt, so geht er wie ein Lamm—If April comes

S

V

like a lion, it leaves like a lamb.

Ich habe oft über das Pech nachdenken müssen, daß *der interessanteste deutsche*

Bühnenfigur /der Teufel ist (Friedrich Dürrenmatt)—I have often had to think V

about our bad luck that the most interesting German stage figure is the devil [Mephistophiles in Faust].

Wenn *der Teufel* / Heilige *fangen will,* so steckt er Heilige an die Angel — If *the devil* S V

wants to capture saints, then he uses saints as bait. (Literally: . . . then he puts saints on the fishhook)

3. If the the first word of the clause is a subordinating conjunction (wenn—when, als—when, daß—that, da—since, weil—because), the verb will be at the end of the clause. In these cases, you often will need to retrieve the verb and place it earlier in the clause. As usual, correct identification of case endings is crucial for deciding where the subject ends and the object begins. (Note: N is for nominative, A is for accusative, G is for genitive)

Wir wollten erfahren, wie wir (N) religiöse (A) Zusammenkünfte in den Hinterzimmern billiger (G) Restaurants *halten könnten*—We wanted to find out how we *could hold* religious meetings in the back rooms of cheap restaurants.

Es gibt Parallelfälle, wo **Odysseus** (N) in anderen Situationen innerer (G) Erregung /seine (A) Listen für einen Augenblick *vergißt*—There are parallel cases in which Odysseus in other situations of inner excitement *forgets* his intrigues for a moment.

If the entire sentence begins with a dependent clause, the verb will be the first word of the following clause; this verb must be tossed up, and placed **after** the subject in its respective clause:

Als der Dichter /in der Stadt Bern war, sah er / den Bärengraben—When the poet was in the city of Bern, he saw the bear pits.

Als große Teuerung /ins Land kam, konnte er [der Vater von Hänsel und Gretel] / auch das tägliche Brot nicht mehr schaffen—When great famine came to the land, he could no longer procure even the daily bread.

23.5. Here are common subordinating conjunctions:

The first group is a list that can function **only** as conjunctions. They are:

bevor	before		
daß	that		
ob	if, whether		
weil	because		
wenn	when, if		

Wenn will mean when or whenever whenever it refers to a temporal action:

Wenn der Briefträger ihr ein Gedicht schreibt, wird Fräulein Meier sehr glücklich—*Whenever* the mailman writes her a poem, Fräulein Meier becomes quite happy.

Wenn will mean **if** if the verb is subjunctive (which will be examined in Chapter 31) or if the first phrase of the next clause is **so** or **dann**:

Wenn die Armut zur Tür eingeht, **so** fliegt die Liebe zum Fenster hinaus—*If* poverty comes in the door, *then* love flies out the window.

Wenn einer, was er tut, nicht muß, **dann** tut er es mit Hochgenuß—If one does not have to do what he is doing, *then* he does it with pleasure.

Otherwise, there are no other ways to determine whether wenn means if or when, as long as wenn refers to the future. For example, "Wenn sie bei ihrem Freund ist, ist die Studentin glücklich" can be translated as "When she is with her friend, the student is happy," or "If she is with her friend, the student is happy."

23.6. The following subordinating conjunctions also have other definitions when used as a different part of speech. Therefore, be particularly careful when you encounter them. The following can be recognized as subordinating conjunctions when:

- 1. they begin the clause, and
- 2. the verb appears at the end of the clause.

These conjunctions are:

```
als—when* (after a comparative, it means than)
bis—until (as a preposition, it also means until)
da—since* (as an adverb, it means there, then)
damit—so that (as a da-compound, it means with it)
nachdem—after* (as an adverb, it means afterwards)
während—while (as a preposition, it means during)
```

Here are examples of each of these conjunctions:

Note that **als** as a subordinating conjunction when the verb is in the past should be translated as when and **not** as as.

Als der Briefträger Fräulein Meier besuchte, photographierte er ihre Katzen—When the mailman visited Fräulein Meier, he photographed her cats.

Manchmal schreibt der Professor Gedichte, bis er einschläft—Sometimes the professor writes poetry until he falls asleep.

Da Fräulein Meier nicht zu Hause war, suchte der Briefträger sie in der Bibliothek— Since Fräulein Meier was not at home, the mailman looked for her at the library.

Der Student studiert Finnisch jeden Abend, damit er finnische Philosophie lesen kann—The student studies Finnish every evening so that he will be able to read Finnish philosophy.

Nachdem er seinen Schicksalsschlägen glücklich entronnen war, starb er — *After* he had luckily escaped his blows of fate, he died.

Während die zwei um ein Ei zanken, steckt es der dritte ein — While the two quarrel over an egg, the third one is pocketing it.

23.7. Other subordinating conjunctions are:

```
auch wenn—even if
ehe—before
obschon and obwohl—although
sobald—as soon as
solange—as long as
```

^{*} See also Troublesome Words, Chapter 36.

23.8. Translate these sentences, being particularly aware of verb placement:

- 1. Was nützt es, wenn die *Kuh* viel *Milch* gibt, wenn sie nachher den Milchkrug (milk jug) umwirft (knocks over)?
- 2. Der *Affe* bleibt ein Affe, obwohl er eine goldene Kette *(chain) anhat.* (In other words, "once an ape, always an ape.")
- 3. Man muß Heu machen, während die Sonne scheint.
- 4. Wenn Gewalt (force) kommt, so geht das Recht auf Krücken (crutches).
- 5. Wirf die alten Schuhe nicht weg, ehe du neue hast.
- 6. Nachdem der Vater des Briefträgers Fräulein Meier ein ganzes Jahr gekannt hatte, mußte er gestehen, sie sei (was) wenigstens amüsant und gutherzig.
- 7. Solange ein Narr schweigt, hält man ihn für klug.
- 8. Manche Leute rennen dem Glücke nach und wissen nicht, daß sie es zu Hause haben.
- 9. Wenn zwei auf einem Pferd reiten, muß einer hinten sitzen.
- 10. Denn das war Rilkes schmerzliche Erfahrung, daß in dieser gegenwärtigen Wirklichkeit die Kräfte des Herzens nicht mehr die *Dinge* beleben, daß *Welt* und Leben immer geringer werden. (Fritz Martini)
- II. Wittgenstein gebrauchte den Ausdruck, "Das ist scheußlich", wenn er in höchster Auffregung war, seine Fingernägel in die Stirnhaut (forhead) grub oder auf sein Taschentuch (handkerchief) biß. (A former pupil of Wittgenstein describes what it was like to have him as a school teacher.) (What case is Fingernägel in? How do you know?)
- 12. Wenn ein Schaf über den Graben setzt (leaps), werden die übrigen folgen.

(Note that the following three sentences are a mini-drama.)

- 13. Sobald wir an die *Moral* glauben, verurteilen *(condemn)* wir das Dasein. (Nietzsche)
- 14. Als er das hörte, wurde der Briefträger wütend (furious).
- Da der Briefträger wütend war, wollte Fräulein Meier nicht mit ihm in den Zoo gehen.

Vocabulary

- ** als—when
 an-haben—to have on
- * auch wenn—even if die Aufregung—excitement der Ausdruck—expression beleben—to animate
- ** da—since, because
- damit—so that

- * das **Dasein** (-s)—existence
- * daß—that
 * ehe—before
- die Erfahrung (-en)—experience gebrauchen—to use gegenwärtig—present gering—negligible gestehen—to confess

die Gewalt (-en)—power der Graben—ditch graben, grub, gegraben—to dig gutherzig—good-natured

- ** halten für—to consider heilen—to heal das Heu (-s, -)—hay hinten—behind * kennen—to know
- * kennen—to know* die Kraft (-e)—power, force,
- strength
 die **Krücke** (-n)—crutch
- ** manche—some die Moral (-) morality
- * nachdem—after
- * nachher—afterwards nach-rennen (i)—to pursue der Narr (-en, -en)—fool
- * nicht mehr—no longer nützen—to be of use

- * **ob**—if, whether
- * obwohl—although das Pferd (-es, -e)—horse
- * das **Recht**—justice reiten—to ride
- * scheinen (i)—to seem, to shine scheußlich—dreadful
- schmerzlich—painful sobald—as soon as * solange—as long as
- übrig—remaining
 um-werfen—to knock over
 verurteilen—to condemn
- * während—while weg-werfen—to throw away
- * weil—because wenigstens—at least
- ** wenn—if, when
- * die Wirklichkeit (-en)—reality wütend—furious

Dependent Clauses (Part II)— Subordinating Conjunctions: *Wer, Was, Wie, Wo, Warum*

The interrogatives *wer, was, wie, wo,* and *warum* also can be used as subordinating conjunctions. Dependent clauses beginning with any of these interrogatives are translated like any other subordinating conjunction, with the dependent verb being placed at the end of the clause.

24.1. Wer

Wer can be translated either as he who or as whoever. Examples are:

Wer nichts im Glaubenssäcklein hat, bekommt eine dreckige Himmelfahrt—He who has nothing in his little sack of faith will have a filthy ascension.

Wer nicht arbeiten will, soll auch nichts essen—Whoever does not want to work should also eat nothing.

Because wer is always nominative, the verb will immediately follow it in your English translation.

In the few cases when *wem* or *wen* is used, the verb will be placed after any noun functioning as the subject. Here is an example:

Wem das Schaf gehört, dem gehört auch die Wolle—To whom the sheep belongs, to him the wool belongs, too. (Or: The wool belongs to whomever the sheep belongs.)

24.2. Was

Was will usually (but not always) be the subject of the clause when it functions as a subordinating conjunction.

Was will be translated as what or whatever when it does not have any specific antecedent. Here are examples:

Was nicht ist, kann noch werden - Whatever does not exist can still come into being.

Was den Käfern entflieht, fressen die Raupen—The caterpillars eat whatever escapes the beetles.

Was should be translated as which or that which when it refers to the thought of a previous clause. Here are examples:

Heute war das Kind pünktlich, was seiner Mutter gefiel—Today the child was punctual, which pleased his mother.

Was man gern tut, kommt einem nicht schwer an — That which one likes to do is not difficult for one to do.

Moreover, there are three pronouns that take the pronoun was, and in this context, was should be translated as that. The pronouns are: alles (everything), etwas (something), and nichts (nothing). Here are examples of each:

Fast alles, was wir lernen, ist doch nützlich—Almost everything that we learn is nevertheless useful.

Die Studentin erklärte dem Professor etwas, was er nicht wußte—The (female) student explained something to the professor that he did not know.

Das Kind nimmt *nichts*, was ihm nicht gehört—The child takes *nothing that* does not belong to him. (Or: does not take anything that . . .)

24.3. Wie

Wie as a subordinating conjunction generally will be translated as as, but it also sometimes will be translated as how. Generally, the context will indicate how it should be translated. Examples are:

174 German Quickly

Wie du mir, so ich dir!—As you are to me, so I am to you!

Jeder Bär tanzt, wie er es versteht—Every bear dances as he understands it (the music).

Wer Unglück gekostet hat, weiß, wie es anderen schmeckt—Whoever has sampled misfortune, knows how it tastes to others.

24.4. Wo

Wo can be translated either as where (when referring to a place) or as when (when referring to a time). Here are examples:

Wo der Zaun am niedrigsten ist, dort springt der Teufel hinüber— Where the fence is the lowest, the devil springs over it.

Wo es an Liebe mangelt, erkennt man alle Fehler — When love is missing, one notices all mistakes.

24.5. Warum

Warum can be translated as why: Fräulein Meier weiß nicht, warum ihre Katzen keinen Thunfisch fressen wollen—Fräulein Meier doesn't know why her cats don't want to eat tuna.

24.6. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Wer viel redet, muß viel wissen, oder lügen.
- 2. Wer in Hoffnung lebt, tanzt ohne Musik.
- 3. Wenn der Teufel krank ist, will er *Mönch* werden; wenn er gesund ist, bleibt er, wie er ist.
- 4. Der Gesunde weiß nicht, wie reich er ist.
- 5. Was aus Armut geschieht, soll man leicht vergeben.
- 6. Was der Himmel schickt, ist der Erde ein Segen (blessing)—auch Blitz und Donner.
- 7. Man muß die Leute nehmen, wie sie sind.
- 8. Alles, was gegen das Gewissen ist, hat harte Stacheln.
- 9. Am längsten behält man das, was man in der Jugend gelernt hat.
- 10. Wer Fräulein Meier liebt, liebt auch ihre Katzen.
- 11. Wer nichts an die Angel (fishhook) steckt, fängt nichts.
- 12. Was dir lieb ist, ist mir nicht zuwider (distasteful).
- 13. Wer mit dem Teufel essen will, muß einen langen Löffel (spoon) haben.
- 14. Als sie erfuhr, daß Sneewittchen noch lebte, ging die Stiefmutter in eine ganz verborgene (hidden) einsame Kammer (room) und machte da einen giftigen

- (poisonous), giftigen Apfel. Äußerlich sah er schön aus . . .; aber wer ein Stückchen (little piece) davon aß, mußte sterben.
- 15. Weisheit ist besser als *Perlen*, und alles, was man *wünschen* mag, kann ihr nicht gleichen. (Proverbs)
- 16. Wer anderen eine *Grube* gräbt, *fällt* selbst *hinein*. (What is the case of *anderen*? Is it singular or plural?)
- 17. Wer mit Ungeheuern kämpft, mag zusehen, daß er dabei nicht zum Ungeheuer wird. Und wenn du lange in einen Abgrund *blickst*, blickt der Abgrund auch in dich hinein. (Nietzsche)
- 18. Vielleicht weiß ich am *besten*, warum der Mensch *allein* lacht; er allein leidet so *tief*, daß er das Lachen erfinden mußte. (Nietzsche) (How do you know that *allein* modifies *Mensch* rather than *lacht*?)

Vocabulary

der Abgrund (-s, -e) -abyss

- ** allein—alone, only
- * alles—everything die Armut—poverty
- * aussehen—to look, appear äußerlich—outwardly behalten—to retain
- * blicken (i)—to look der Blitz—lightning der Donner (-s, -)—thunder einsam—lonely
- * erfahren—to discover erfinden—to invent
- * etwas—something
 fangen—to capture
 fassen—to receive
- ** geschehen (i)—to happen, to occur giftig—poisonous
- * gleichen (i)—to compare with graben—to dig hinein-blicken (i)—to look into hinein-fallen (i)—to fall into die Jugend—youth

- kämpfen (i)—to fight, struggle krank—sick lieb—dear
- * lügen (i)—to lie, fib
- * **nichts**—nothing die **Perle** (-n)—pearl
- * reden—to speak schicken—to send
- * selbst—himself der Stachel (-s, -n)—thorn stecken—to stick
- ** sterben—to die das Ungeheuer (-s, -)—monster vergeben—to forgive
- ** warum—why
- ** was-what, whatever, which, that
- * die **Weisheit**—wisdom
- ** wer-who, whoever, he who
- ** wie—as, how
- ** **wo**—where, when
- * wünschen—to wish
 zu-sehen—watch, see to it
 zuwider—distasteful

Dependent Clauses (Part III) —Relative Clauses

One of the most common forms of subordinate clauses is introduced by relative pronouns. A relative pronoun is one that refers to some noun which goes before it, and it also connects two clauses which together form a sentence. Here are all the possibilities.

25.1. Nominative relative pronouns

Der Wolf, *der (masculine)* den Jäger tötete, war hungrig—The wolf *who* killed the hunter was hungry.

Heute ist ein junges Mädchen gekommen, *das (neuter)* mit mir sprechen wollte—Today a young woman came, *who* wanted to speak with me.

Die Alte war eine Hexe, *die (feminine)* den Kindern auflauerte—The old woman was a witch *who* lay in wait for the children.

Die Jungfrauen, *die (plural)* bereit waren, gingen mit dem Bräutigam zur Hochzeit—The virgins *who* were prepared, went with the bridegroom to the wedding.

25.2. Accusative relative pronouns

Morgen fliegt der Professor, den (masculine) ich kenne, nach Genf—Tomorrow the professor whom I know will fly to Geneva.

Das Kind, das (neuter) der Wolf fraß, war Rotkäppchen—The girl whom the wolf ate was Little Red Riding Hood.

Die Frau, *die (feminine)* der Mann kennenlernen wollte, war eine bekannte Bürgermeisterin—The woman *whom* the man wanted to meet was a famous mayor.

Die Jungfrauen, die (plural) der Bräutigam nahm, waren klug—The virgins whom the bridegroom took, were clever.

25.3. Dative relative pronouns

Der Mann, dem (masculine) die Frau einen Apfelkuchen backte, war der Briefträger—The man for whom the woman baked an apple cake was the mailman. Das Kind, dem (neuter) die Stiefmutter einen giftigen, giftigen Apfel gab, war Sneewittchen—The child to whom the stepmother gave a poisonous, poisonous apple was Snow White.

Die Frau, *der (feminine)* das Schulkind einen Apfel gab, ist Lehrerin—The woman *to whom* the school child gave an apple is a teacher.

Es gibt doch viele Menschen, *denen (plural)* der Name Fritz Martini unbekannt ist—There are nevertheless many people for whom the name Fritz Martini is unfamiliar.

25.4. Genitive relative pronouns

Note that these pronouns attach themselves to nouns that are in nominative, accusative, or dative case, and you can determine the case of the noun to which they are attached *only* by process of elimination:

Hier ist der Student, dessen (masculine nominative) Ideen mir wichtig scheinen—Here is the student whose ideas seem important to me.

Wo ist das Kind, *dessen (neuter accusative)* Spielzeug ich gefunden habe?—Where is the child *whose* toy I have found?

Die Frau, deren (feminine dative) Freundin der Briefträger ein Gedicht schrieb, ist klug—The woman to whose friend the mailman wrote a poem is clever.

Die Professoren, deren (plural nominative) Vorlesungen interessant sind, lehren gern—The professors whose lectures are interesting like to teach.

25.5. Note that the gender of the relative pronoun is determined by the noun to which it relates, and the case of the relative pronoun is determined by its place in the subordinate clause. The relative pronoun does not have to be in the same case as the noun to which it relates:

Der Mann (nominative), den (accusative) die Frau liebte, war Dichter—The man whom the woman loved was a poet.

25.6. Relative pronouns can also sometimes appear after a preposition:

Keine andere soll meine Gemahlin werden als die, an *deren* Fuß dieser goldene Schuh paßt—No one else should be my wife than the one on whose foot this golden shoe fits. (Aschenputtel—Cinderella)

Geld ist eine Braut, um *die* man tanzt—Money is a bride around *which* one dances. Abraham ging an den Ort, von *dem* Gott ihm gesagt hat—Abraham went to the place of *which* God had told him.

25.7. Here is a chart

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	der	das	die	die
accusative	den	das	die	die
genitive	*dessen	*dessen	*deren	*deren
dative	dem	dem	der	*denen

^{*}The declensions of the nominative, accusative and dative (with the exception of the dative plural) relative pronouns are the same as the declensions of the definite article. Therefore the only new pronouns you need to learn are the genitive pronouns **dessen** (masculine and neuter) and **deren** (feminine and plural) and the plural dative pronoun **denen**.

25.8. Tips for translating relative clauses

In any sentence, a relative clause can be identified because:

- 1. it will be set apart from the main clause by commas,
- 2. the clause will begin with a relative pronoun,
- 3. the last word at the end of a clause will be a verb.

In order to translate the relative clause correctly, first translate the relative pronoun, making certain you know which noun in the main clause it relates to, and which case it is in.

25.9. If the relative pronoun is the subject of the clause (it must be *der*, *das*, or *die*):

- I. use it as the first word of your translation,
- 2. translate the verb at the end of the clause (as well as any adverbs modifying it), and place it next to the subject pronoun,
- 3. finally translate the rest of the clause word for word.

Here are examples:

Fräulein Meiers Lieblingstier ist ein Elefant, *der* immer sehr träge **ist**—Fräulein Meier's favorite animal is an elephant *that* **is** always very sluggish.

Der Mann, der die Freunde vorgestellt **hatte**, war gleich gegangen—The man who **had introduced** the friends had left immediately.

Before you pick up the verb in the dependent clause, also make sure you are aware of any prepositional phrases which might go with the subject, and place the verb after them and before the object. (I have placed a / to indicate where the subject ends and the object begins.)

Faust war ein Drama, das durch alle Schuld des Lebens / zur transzendierenden Befreiung **führte**—Faust was a drama that through all guilt of life **led** to a transcendent liberation. (Fritz Martini, abridged)

25.10. If the relative pronoun is not the subject of the clause (den, dem, denen):

- 1. still use it as the first word of your translation,
- 2. then translate the subject (which generally will follow the relative pronoun),
- 3. translate the verb at the end of the clause and place it next to the subject,
- 4. finally translate the rest of the clause word for word.

Here are examples:

Wer ist der Mann, den Fräulein Meier / vor vielen Jahren liebte?—Who is the man, whom Fräulein Meier loved many years ago?

Schliemann war ein ziemlich nüchterner Mensch, dem Dichtung als solche / unverständlich war—Schliemann was a rather sober person for whom poetry as such was incomprehensible. (C.R. Goedsche)

Die Kinder, denen die Hexe / ein Haus baute, waren Hänsel und Gretel—The children for whom the witch built a house were Hänsel and Gretel.

25.11. Note that the pronouns *das* and *die* can be either nominative or accusative, and you need to determine from other clues which case they are in:

Die Frau, *die I* **den** Mann liebte, war glücklich—The woman *who* loved the man was happy.

Die Frau, *die* **der** Mann / liebte, war glücklich — The woman *whom* the man loved was happy.

Das Mädchen, das / den Briefträger grüßte, war die Patentochter Fräulein Meiers—The girl who greeted the mailman was the goddaughter of Fräulein Meier.

Das Mädchen, das der Briefträger/ grüßte, war die Patentochter Fräulein Meiers—The girl whom the mailman greeted was the goddaughter of Fräulein Meier.

25.12. Although *der* will usually be masculine nominative, it can occasionally be feminine dative:

Der Zug, der / pünktlich ankam, fuhr nach Berlin- The train that arrived promptly went to Berlin.

Die Frau, *der* der Briefträger / einen Roman von Margaret Drabble schenkte, war Fräulein Meier—The woman to whom the mailman gave a novel by Margaret Drabble was Fräulein Meier.

25.13. Genitive relative pronouns will be attached to nouns which can be in nominative, accusative, or dative case. If they are attached to nominative nouns, they are to be translated like the sentences in 25.9:

Mit Neid denkt [der Dichter] an den Maler, dessen Sprache—die Farben (nominative)—/vom Nordpol bis nach Afrika gleich verständlich zu allen Menschen spricht (Hermann Hesse)—The poet thinks with envy of the painter whose language—colors—speaks to all people, from the North Pole to Africa in a way immediately comprehensible.

If the genitive relative pronouns are attached to dative or accusative nouns, they are to be translated like the sentences in 25.10.

Kafka, dessen Romane (accusative) der Student (nominative) / gern liest, hat einen eigentumlichen Sinn für Humor—Kafka, whose novels the student likes to read, has a unique sense of humor.

Die Studentin, deren Freund (dative) wir (nominative) / eine E-mail (accusative) schickten, studiert Erdkunde—The student, to whose friend we sent an e-mail, studies geography.

25.14. Each relative clause is a unit unto itself as if it were set off in parentheses and having its own subject and its own verb. Therefore, you may wish to isolate it from the rest of the sentence by placing brackets around it so that it will not distract you from locating the subject and the verb of the main clause. Note how commas function as breaks. Here is a sentence that contains two relative clauses: In Übereinstimmung mit den großen Werken der expressionistischen Malerei, deren Schöpfern ich/ in jener Zeit [the 1920's] in Dresden begegnete, war es der Tanz, der /mein Verständnis von Religion tief beeinflußte (Paul Tillich)—In agreement with the great works of expressionistic painting whose creators I met at that time in Dresden, it was dance, which deeply influenced my understanding of religion.

25.15. Translate, noting the gender and case of each relative pronoun:

- 1. Die Kühe, die am meisten brüllen, geben die wenigste Milch.
- 2. Sie waren Freunde, denen man die Wahrheit sprechen konnte.
- 3. Das Feuer, das mich nicht verbrennt, lösche ich nicht.
- 4. Zeit ist der Stoff, aus dem das Leben gemacht ist.
- 5. Ehre folgt dem Menschen, der sie flieht, und flieht den [Menschen], der sie jagt.
- 6. Es gibt keine ärgeren Tauben als die, die nicht hören wollen.
- 7. Das *elektrische* Licht beschien das Gesicht einer Frau, deren breite Züge von einer *dicken* Schicht *(layer)* billiger Schminke (make-up) *bedeckt* waren.
- 8. Die *erste Hälfte* des 19. Jahrhunderts steht stark *unter* dem Eindruck der Enttäuschung der *politischen* Freiheitsbewegung seit 1815, die die mißlungenen *Revolutionen* von 1830 und 1848 noch verschärften. (Fritz Martini)
- 9. Der größte Schritt ist der aus der Tür.
- 10. Weh dem Land, dessen König ein Kind ist.
- 11. Wir alle tragen Masken, und es kommt der Zeitpunkt, an *dem* wir sie nicht mehr abnehmen können, ohne dabei Stücke unserer Haut mit abzutrennen. (Andre Berthiaume)
- 12. E. T. A. Hoffmann war ein Artist des Unheimlichen, der bewußt seine Traumbilder auskostete und sie zugleich *ironisch* spiegelte *(portrayed, mirrored)*. (Fritz Martini)
- 13. Es gibt gewiß keine Sprache auf der *Welt*, die so *systemlos* ist, so schlüpfrig, um sie zu fassen. (Mark Twain about German)
- 14. Nicholas erlebte zum erstenmal die Reaktion eines jungen Künstlers, der seine Arbeit einer kritischen Öffentlichkeit übergibt, und vielleicht war es schwieriger für ihn, weil diese Öffentlichkeit aus drei jungen Arbeitern bestand, die noch nie durch eine Gemäldegallerie (art gallery) gegangen waren.
- 15. (A challenging sentence, to say the least!) Herzog Wilhelm von Breisach, der seit seiner heimlichen Verbindung (alliance) mit einer Gräfin (countess) namens

Katharina von Heersbruck aus dem *Hause* Alt-Hüningen, die *unter* seinem Rang (rank) zu sein schien, mit seinem *Halbbruder*, dem Grafen Jakob dem *Rotbart*, in Feindschaft lebte, kam gegen Ende des 14. Jahrhunderts, als die Nacht des heiligen Remigius zu dämmern begann, von einer Zusammenkunft zurück. (Kleist)

Vocabulary

abnehmen—to take off abtrennen—to separate arg-wicked aus-kosten—to enjoy to the fullest bedecken—to cover bestehen (aus)—to consist of bewußt—consciously billig—cheap breit-broad brüllen (i)—to bellow, moo dämmern (i)—to grow dark * dabei—in so doing, thereby * **ehe**—before die Ehre (-n)—honor der Eindruck (-es, -e) - impression die Enttäuschung (-en) disappointment erleben-to experience ewig-eternal fassen—to grasp die Feindschaft—animosity fliehen—to flee die Freiheitsbewegung (-en)—independence movement

fassen—to grasp
die Feindschaft—animosity
fliehen—to flee

** folgen (i)—to follow
die Freiheitsbewegung (-en)—i
dependence movement

* das Gesicht (-es, -er)—face

* gewiß—certainly
der Graf (-en, -en)—count
der Halbbruder (-s, -)—halfbrother
die Haut—skin
heilig—holy, saint
heimlich—secret

der Herzog (-s, -e)—duke jagen—to hunt löschen—to extinguish mißlungen—unsuccessful

- * namens—by name of
- * **noch nie**—never before die **Öffentlichkeit**—public
- * ohne . . . zu—without . . . -ing
- ** scheinen (i)—to seem
 die Schicht (-en)—layer
 schlüpfrig—slippery
 der Schritt (-s, -e)—step
 der Stoff (-es, -e)—material
- * seit—since spiegeln—to reflect
- * stark—strong

intensify

* stehen (i)—to stand, to be das Stück (-es, -e)—piece taub—deaf das Traumbild (-es, -er)—vision, illusion unheimlich—uncanny, unearthly verbrennen—to burn verschärfen—to heighten, to

weh—woe to
** wenig—little, few der Zug (-es, -e)—feature, characteristic
zugleich—at the same time

zurück-kommen (i)—to return die Zusammenkunft (=e)—meeting

25.16. More verb placement practice

- 1. Wenn die Katze, die jetzt schläft, hungrig wird, wird sie vielleicht in die Küche laufen.
- 2. In einem Park, der viele Bäume hatte, hörte ein Mann die schönen Lieder der Vögel.
- 3. In einem Park gab ein Briefträger, der eine Geliebte hatte, einem Vogel ein Stückchen Brot.
- 4. In einem Park gab ein Mann, der Schockolade hatte, seiner Geliebten einen seiner Bonbons.
- 5. In einem Park, in dem viele Kinder spielten, gab es schöne Blumen und Bäume.
- 6. Oft wollte ein Vater, der zwei Kinder hatte, in einen Park gehen.
- 7. Vielleicht ist die Mutter, die drei Kinder hatte, mit ihren Kindern in einen Park gegangen.
- 8. In einem Park sah eine Frau mit drei Kindern, die miteinander spielen wollten, schöne Blumen.
- 9. In einem Zimmer (room) ist eine Katze, die glücklich auf einem Sofa schläft, zu sehen.
- 10. In einem Park wird Fräulein Meier mit ihrem Freund, der sehr fleißig ist, ein Lied singen.
- 11. Vor einem Jahr ging ein Freund einer fleißigen Frau oft in einen Park, der schöne Bäume hatte.
- 12. Drei Jahre lang wohnte der Student, der viele Sprachen lernen wollte, in einer großen Stadt.

Reading Selection: Aus dem Erdbeben in Chili (Heinrich von Kleist)

(Vocabulary can be found in the humanities vocabulary in Appendix K)

(The following selections are particularly difficult. However, if you work through each sentence carefully, you may find to your surprise and delight that you can actually understand them. Good luck!)

- I. Es war am Fronleichnamsfest (Corpus Christi Festival), und die feierliche Prozession der Nonnen, welchen die Novizen folgten, nahm eben (just) ihren Anfang, als die unglückliche Josephe (a woman's name) bei dem Anklang (ringing) der Glocken in Mutterwehen (birth-pangs) auf den Stufen der Kathedrale niedersank (collapsed).
- II. In St. Jago, der Hauptstadt des Königreichs Chili, stand gerade (just) in dem Augenblick der großen Erderschütterung (earthquake) vom Jahre 1647, bei

welcher viele tausend Menschen ihren Untergang (demise) fanden, ein junger ... Spanier namens Jeronimo Rugera [the father of the child who had just been born in the previous reading passage] an einem Pfeiler (column) des Gefängnisses (prison), in welches man ihn eingesperrt hatte, und wollte sich (himself—accusative) erhenken (hang).

- III. [Jeronimo] stand an einem Wandpfeiler (pilaster) und befestigte (fastened) den Strick (rope), der ihn dieser jammervollen (sorrowful) Welt entreißen sollte (was to), an eine Eisenklammer (iron clamp), als plötzlich der größte Teil (part) der Stadt mit einem Gekrache (crash) versank und alles (this is accusative! Note that "der größte Teil der Stadt" is still the subject of this clause—cf. 21.3), was Leben atmete, unter seinen Trümmern (ruins) begrub.
- IV. Hier lag ein Haufen (heap) Erschlagener, hier ächzte (moaned) noch eine Stimme unter dem Schutt (rubbish), hier schrien Leute von brennenden Dächern herab, hier kämpften (battled) Menschen und Tiere mit den Wellen (undulations), hier war ein mutiger (courageous) Retter (rescuer) bemüht, zu helfen; hier stand ein anderer, bleich wie der Tod, und streckte sprachlos zitternde (trembling) Hände zum Himmel.

(However, in the midst of all this destruction, Jeronimo and Josephe, who had been condemned to death prior to the earthquake for producing an illegitimate child, manage to reunite.)

- V. Indessen (in the meantime) war die schönste Nacht herabgestiegen, voll wundermilden (wonderfully mild) Duftes, so silberglänzend und still, wie nur ein Dichter davon träumen mag.
- VI. Sie [Jeronimo und Josephe] fanden einen prachtvollen (magnificent) Granatapfelbaum (pomegranate tree), der seine Zweige voll duftender (fragrant) Früchte weit ausbreitete; und die Nachtigall flötete (whistled) im Wipfel (treetop) ihr wollüstiges (delightfully pleasant) Lied.

(While Jeronimo and Josephe don't quite live happily ever after, they at least enjoy a few good moments together.)

The Reflexive

A verb is considered reflexive when its subject and object are the same person(s) or thing(s): Sie kauft sich einen Laptop—She buys herself a laptop; Das Kind wäscht sich—The child washes himself.

26.1. Accusative and dative reflexive pronouns:

Singular	(I, you, he, she, it)	Plural	(we, you, they)
accusative	mich—myself	accusative	uns—ourselves
dative	mir—myself	dative	uns—ourselves
accusative	dich—yourself	accusative	euch—yourselves
dative	dir—yourself	dative	euch—yourselves
accusative	sich—himself,	accusative	sich—themselves,
	herself, itself		each other
dative	sich—himself,	dative	sich—themselves,
	herself, itself		each other

The formal accusative and dative form (yourself, yourselves) is *sich*. This is the only time the formal pronoun (*Sie*, *Ihnen*, *Sie*) is not capitalized.

The accusative and dative reflexive pronouns are identical for all persons (du) except the first person singular (ich) and the singular form of the informal you. The most common reflexive pronoun is sich.

26.2. Some meanings which the reflexive may express are:

1. An action done by the subject to itself:

Ich amüsiere *mich*—I amuse *myself*.
Ich sehe *mich* in dem Spiegel—I see *myself* in the mirror.

2. An action done by the subject to itself which also involves an object (in these cases, the dative reflexive pronoun will be used):

Ich kaufe *mir* ein Buch—I buy *myself a* book. Sie schreibt *sich* eine Liste—She writes *herself a* list.

3. A reciprocal action:

Sie küssen *sich*—They kiss *each other*. Sie lieben *sich*—They love *each other*.

26.3. Occasionally the reflexive pronoun is used when only the direct object is used in English:

Er nimmt seinen Pudel mit sich, wenn er in den Park geht—He takes his poodle with him when he goes to the park.

Der Briefträger hat eine Freundin bei sich—The mailman has a woman friend with him.

But in other cases when *sich* is the object of a preposition, it will be translated reflexively, as it would be in English:

Sie weiß viel über *sich*—She knows a lot about *herself*. Sie tun das für *sich*—They do that for *themselves*.

26.4. Reflexive pronouns also are used in German when English uses possessive pronouns instead:

Er wäscht sich die Hände (literally: he washes to himself the hands) — He washes his hands.

To understand how to translate this construction correctly, consider the following hypothetical sentences:

I wash to myself my hands. Ich wasche mir meine Hände.

The sentences are grammatically incorrect in both languages because they contain an unnecessary extra indication of possession. In English, to myself is eliminated because the adjective my already indicates that the hands are mine. In German, on the other hand, the adjective meine is omitted because the word mir already indicates that the hands belong to me. Therefore, whenever you see this construction in German, it is advisable to substitute the appropriate English possessive adjective (such as my) for the corresponding German reflexive pronoun (such as mir). Here are more examples:

Sie putzt sich die Zähne (literally: She brushes to herself the teeth) — She brushes her teeth.

Der beißende Hund ist dem Brieftrager ein Dorn im Auge (literally: The biting dog is to the mailman a thorn in the eye)—The biting dog is a thorn in the mailman's eye.

Küß *mir den* Ellbogen (literally: kiss *to me the* elbow)—Kiss *my* elbow! (Luther was reputed to say this when he was being "polite.")

26.5. Selbst and selber

Selbst and selber are sometimes used with reflexive pronouns to emphasize the reflexive meanings. Here are examples:

Sich selbst erkennen ist die größte Kunst—To know oneself is the greatest skill. Arzt, heil dich selber—Physician, heal thyself.

Following a noun or pronoun, selbst and selber should be translated as himself, herself, themselves, etc. depending on the noun modified. For example, "Fräulein Meier hat den Korb selbst geflochten" is translated "Fräulein Meier herself wove the basket" while "Der Briefträger hat den Apfelbaum selbst gepflanzt" is translated as "The mailman himself has planted the apple tree."

Selbst and selber used as pronouns are interchangeable. However, when selbst precedes a noun or pronoun, it means "even."

Selbst der ernste Professor hat über den Witz gelacht—Even the serious professor laughed at the joke.

26.6. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Was man zu sich selbst sagt, *hört* der Himmel wie Donner. (In other words, you can't have any secrets from God.)
- 2. Selbst ein Experte hat seinen Meister.

- 3. Gegen Dummheit kämpfen (struggle) Götter selbst vergebens (in vain).
- 4. Das Glück hilft denen nicht, die sich selbst nicht helfen.
- 5. Das Glück fiel ihm in den Schoß (lap).
- 6. Wer dem anderen Menschen den guten Namen raubt, macht ihn arm und sich nicht reich.
- 7. Wer sich bei einem Geizigen (miser) wärmen will, muß das Feuer mitbringen. (Note that you will want to translate bei as at the home of in this sentence.)
- 8. Fräulein Meier hat keine Lust, mit ihrem ehemaligen Geliebten in den Zoo zu gehen, denn sie *muß* sich die *Haare waschen*. (She also might need to sort her sock drawer.)
- 9. Der letzte Strohhalm bricht dem Kamel den Rücken.
- 10. Nächstenliebe fängt bei sich selbst an.

Vocabulary

* an-fangen—to begin

* bei—at the home of, with
der Donner (-s, -)—thunder
ehemalig—former
der Geizige (-n, -n)—miser
die Lust—desire

der Geizige (-n, -n)—miser
die Lust—desire
mit-bringen—to bring with one
die Nächstenliebe—charity

der **Rücken** (-s, -) — back der **Schoß** (-es, -e) — lap

- * selber—self
- * **selbst**—self, even
- * sich—self
 der Strohhalm—straw
 vergebens—in vain

26.7. Reflexive Verbs

There are several verbs that are reflexive in German but not in English. Here are some examples:

```
sich beeilen—to hurry
sich freuen—to rejoice, to be pleased
sich gewöhnen an—to become accustomed to
sich handeln um—to deal with, be a matter of
sich irren—to err
sich kümmern um—to worry about, to be concerned with
sich sehnen nach—to long for
sich verlassen auf—to rely upon
sich vorstellen—to introduce, to imagine
```

Note that *sich vorstellen* is translated differently depending on whether the reflexive pronoun is dative or accusative:

Ich stelle *mich* ihnen vor (*accusative*) — I *introduce* myself to them. Ich stelle *mir* die fantastische Szene vor (*dative*) — I *imagine* the fantastic scene.

26.8. Here are sentences illustrating the use of all the reflexive pronouns in conjunction with the reflexive verb, *sich beeilen*:

ich beeile mich oft—I often hurry.
du beeilst dich auch—you also hurry.
er beeilt sich manchmal—he sometimes hurries.
sie beeilt sich selten—she hurries seldom.
es beeilt sich abends—it hurries in the evenings.
wir beeilen uns doch—we are hurrying.
ihr beeilt euch täglich—you hurry daily.
sie beeilen sich mittags—they hurry at noon.
Sie beeilen sich nicht—you do not hurry.

26.9. There are also several verbs that have both reflexive and non-reflexive meanings. The non-reflexive meaning will be listed first in your dictionary (unless the reflexive meaning is more common). Therefore, if you encounter a sentence with a *sich* form in it in which there is no obvious reciprocal action of the subject, realize that the *sich* (or *mich*, *dich*, etc.) is *only* guiding you to the v.r. definition in your dictionary. Here are some common verbs that have both reflexive and non-reflexive meanings:

non-reflexive	reflexive
denken—to think	sich denken—to imagine
erinnern—to remind	sich erinnern—to remember
setzen—to set	sich setzen—to sit down
unterhalten—to sustain	sich unterhalten—to converse
verlassen—to leave	sich verlassen—to rely upon
verstehen—to understand	sich verstehen—to get along with someone

Compare the following sentences:

Sie *erinnert* den Briefträger an die Aufgabe—She *reminds* the mailman of the task. (*non-reflexive*)

Er erinnert sich jetzt an die Aufgabe—He now remembers the task. (reflexive)
Er zieht nächste Woche nach Düsseldorf um—He will move to Düsseldorf next week (non-reflexive)

Er zieht sich oft um—He often changes his clothes. (reflexive)

Note: He reminds himself about the task—Er erinnert sich selbst an die Aufgabe.

Note also that the sich does not need to appear right next to the verb:

Das Herz ist arm, das *sich* nicht freuen kann—The heart is poor that can not rejoice.

Es bewährt sich, an das Gute im Menschen zu glauben, aber sich auf das Schlechte zu verlassen (Alfred Polgar)—It is worthwhile to believe in the good in man, but to rely on the bad.

26.10. Translate these sentences (vocabulary is on pp. 191–192):

- I. Wenn sich ein Igel (hedgehog) und ein Regenwurm (earthworm) paaren, was gibt das? Antwort: zehn Meter Stacheldraht. (Note that when two words are linked together, they do not need a genitive marker: ein Pfund Butter- a pound of butter; zwei Meter Holz—two meters of wood.)
- 2. Wer sich auf dem *Schulwege* verirrt, findet sich durch das ganze Leben nicht zurecht.
- 3. Hüte dich vor denen, die Gott gezeichnet hat.
- 4. <u>Seit es Menschen gibt</u> (since mankind has existed), hat der Mensch sich zu wenig gefreut: das allein ist unsre Erbsünde (original sin). (Nietzsche)
- 5. Nietzsches Schriften stellten sich als eine gewaltige (powerful) Sammlung kühnster Aphorismen dar, die durch eine einzigartige (unique) Wortkunst (artistic use of words) faszinierte Prägnanz erhalten. (Fritz Martini)
- 6. Auch in den geordnesten Familien ereignen sich Mißgeschicke.
- 7. Fräulein Meier verläßt sich immer mehr auf den Briefträger.
- 8. Gott versalzt uns dieses Leben, damit wir uns nach dem heiligen Feierabend sehnen. (What is the case of *dieses Leben*? How do you know?) This is probably the oddest proverb in German.

26.11. When sich is translated, and when it is left untranslated:

Compare the following first two sentences with the second two:

- I. Sie macht sich selber unglücklich—She makes herself unhappy.
- 2. Sie macht sich das Essen—She fixes herself the meal.
- 3. Sie wundert sich über ihren Freund-She wonders about her friend.
- 4. Sie unterhält sich mit ihm-She converses with him.

In the first two sentences, *sich* is translated as *herself* because the subject *she* needs an object to complete the thought; *sich* explains in #1 whom she makes unhappy

and in #2 whom she fixes the meal for. If the *sich* were left untranslated, something serious would be missing from the sentences.

In the second two sentences, however, *sich* is not translated because *sich* only serves to indicate that the German verb, unlike the English verb, is reflexive. This will obviously be the case because

- 1. a v.r. (or sich) definition will be listed in your dictionary,
- 2. adding a reflexive pronoun (such as *herself*) would make the sentence sound awkward. For example, no English-speaking person would *ever* say: "She wonders *herself* about her friend."

26.12. Translate this joke (it is not a very good joke, but it is excellent stylistically):

Ein bejahrter (old) Münchner kommt auf dem Viktualienmarkt (marketplace) mit einer netten Taube (pigeon) ins Gespräch. Beide verstehen sich ausgezeichnet (excellently) und möchten die Bekanntschaft (acquaintance) fortsetzen (continue), und so lädt der alte Herr die Taube für den nächsten Nachmittag zu sich zum Kaffee ein. Die Stunde ist gekommen, er hat den Tisch nett gedeckt und extra ein paar Blumen besorgt (gotten), aber wer nicht erscheint, ist die Taube. Habe ich mich so in meiner Taubenkenntnis (pigeon-knowledge) geirrt, fragt sich der alte Herr, während er vor seinem Kaffee sitzt, der langsam kalt wird. Unruhig schaut er immer häufiger auf die Uhr (watch)—endlich, eine Stunde später, klingelt es. Die Taube steht vor der Tür und sagt mit einem reizend verlegenen Lächeln: "Ich bitte Sie, entschuldigen Sie, daß ich so spät komme. Aber es war ein so (such a) herrlicher Nachmittag, und so habe ich mich entschlossen, zu Fuß zu gehen!"

Vocabulary

ausgezeichnet—excellently

- * bitten um—to ask for
- ** da—since, because
- * damit—so that
 dar-stellen (r)—to appear
 decken—to set, cover
 ein so—such a
 ein-laden—to invite
- ** endlich—finally entschließen (r)—to decide entschuldigen—to excuse

- ereignen (r.)—to happen, occur erhalten—to keep, maintain, receive
- * erscheinen (i)—to appear extra (adv.)—specially der Feierabend—quitting time
- * freuen (r)—to rejoice, be happy ins Gespräch kommen—to converse with

gewaltig—powerful **häufig**—frequent **herrlich**—glorious hüten (r) (vor)—to be on guard (against)
irren (r)—to err
klingeln (i)—to ring;
es klingelt—the doorbell rings
kühn—bold
das Lächeln—smile

- ** langsam—slow das Mißgeschick (-es, -e)—accident
- * möchte—would like to der Münchner (-s, -)—inhabitant of Munich
- * nachher—afterwards der Nachmittag (-s, -e)—afternoon
- * nächst—next nett—nice ordnen—to arrange, order
- * paar—couple
 paaren (r)—to mate
 die Prägnanz—precision
 reizend—charming
 die Sammlung (-en)—collection

- * schauen (i)—to look at die Schrift (-en)—writing der Schulweg (-s, -e)—way to school sehnen (r) (nach)—to long (for)
- ** seit—since
 der Stacheldraht—barbed wire
- * die **Stunde** (-n)—hour die **Taube** (-n)—pigeon
- * die Uhr (-en)—clock
 unruhig—restless
 verirren (r)—to go astray
 verlassen auf (r)—to rely on
 verlegen—embarrassed
 versalzen—to spoil
- * verstehen (r)—to get along with
- * während—while, during
 zeichnen—to mark, to distinguish
 zu Fuß gehen—to walk
 zurecht-finden (r)—to find one's
 way

Reading Selection: Der Froschkönig

[There was once a beautiful young princess who was playing with her beloved ball. When she was playing, her ball fell into a deep well, causing her to cry. A frog appeared, and offered to retrieve her ball on the condition that he become a friend of hers, and she agreed. Once she had the ball, she went home and forgot all about the frog. At suppertime, as the princess was eating with her father, there was a knock at the door. The princess opened it, saw it was the frog, and slammed the door in his face. When she told her father what had happened, he demanded that she invite the frog in, as she had promised. It is at this point that the reading selection begins.]

.... Endlich sprach der Frosch: "Ich habe gegessen und bin müde (tired); nun trag mich in dein Kämmerlein (little room) und mach dein seiden (silk) Bettlein zurecht, dann können wir uns schlafen legen." Die Königstochter begann zu weinen und fürchtete sich vor dem kalten Frosch, den sie nicht anzurühren getraute (dared) und der nun in ihrem schönen, reinen Bettlein schlafen sollte. Der König aber wurde zornig (angry) und sprach: "Wer dir geholfen hat, als du in der Not

(need) warst, sollst du hernach nicht verachten. (despise)" Da packte (took) sie ihn mit zwei Fingern, trug ihn hinauf und setzte ihn in eine Ecke (corner). Als sie aber im Bett lag, kam er gekrochen und sprach: "Ich bin müde, ich will schlafen so gut wie du—heb mich herauf, oder ich sag's deinem Vater." Dann wurde sie bitterböse, holte ihn herauf und warf (threw) ihn aus allen Kräften wider die Wand: "Nun wirst du Ruhe (peace, rest) haben, du garstiger Frosch!"

Als er aber herabfiel, war er kein Frosch, sondern ein Königssohn mit schönen und freundlichen Augen.

Vocabulary

anrühren — to touch ** fürchten (r)—to be afraid of garstig—nasty herabfallen- to fall down heraufheben—to lift up heraufholen—to pick up hernach—afterwards der Königssohn—prince die Königstochter—princess

die Kraft (-e)—strength

kriechen—to crawl

** nun-now rein-pure die Ruhe—peace

* setzen—to set

* sondern—but rather

* tragen—to carry die Wand ("e)—wall

* wider—against zurechtmachen-make up

The Overloaded Adjective Construction

The **overloaded adjective construction** (also known as the "extended adjective" or the "participial" construction) is one of the most difficult constructions in the German language. Therefore, be sure to read this section carefully, especially if you need to read German to do scholarly research.

27.1. In this construction, one of two participles generally is used—the present participle, or the past participle.

The present participle is formed by adding a "d" to any German infinitive. Singen (to sing) can be changed to singend (singing); lachen (to laugh) can be changed to lachend (laughing); and tanzen (to dance) can be changed to tanzend (dancing). (Review 18.1)

The past participle is identical with other past participles—gesungen (sung), gelacht (laughed), getanzt (danced), geschrieben (written).

Both present and past participles can be used as adjectives:

die *singende* Frau—the *singing* woman das *geschriebene* Buch—the *written* book

In fact, the present participles are most often used as adjectives, and they are used as adverbs occasionally. They are **never** used as verbs.

27.2. German differs from English to the degree that modifiers can be placed between the introductory word and the present or past participles.

For example, one can say: (von) einer nach dem langen Schlaf wirklich überflüssigen Schläfrigkeit—an after the long sleep really superfluous sleepiness; or: . . . den wahrscheinlich ein für allemal für Gregor bestimmten Napf—the probably once and for all for Gregor designated bowl. (Kafka, Die Verwandlung)

27.3. Generally, an overloaded adjective can be identified as such when two words appear together in German, which cannot be consecutive in English.

The most common non-consecutive word combinations are:

I. an article (or a similar strong adjective) and a preposition such as

mein / nach Europa oft fliegender Freund—my to Europe often flying friend ein schöner, / im Winter selten vorkommender Tag—a beautiful, in winter seldom appearing day

diel in der Realität unbefriedigt gebliebenen Wünsche des menschlichen Unterbewußten—the in reality unsatisfied remaining wishes of the human subconscious (Fritz Martini)

2. two articles (or similar strong adjectives) such as

diel dem Lehrer zuhörenden Studenten—the to the teacher listening students ein/ dem Studenten sehr interessantes Buch—a to the student very interesting book die neue, / den meisten Menschen noch fremde Idee—the new to most people still foreign idea

27.4. When you encounter an overloaded adjective construction, use the following four steps in order to transform it into idiomatic English:

- I. Locate the modifier which begins the overloaded construction. (Generally, the modifier will be an article: ein, eine, der, das, die.)
- 2. Locate the noun, or the noun phrase, which the modifier describes. This noun will be the first "available" noun which agrees with the modifier. For

example, in the segment, die in der Realität unbefriedigt gebliebenen Wünsche des menschlichen Unterbewußten, Wünsche (des menschlichen Unterbewußten) agrees with die, and it is the first available noun. Realität is not considered available because it is already the object of the preposition in.

- 3. Locate a participle and any accompanying adverbs; the participle will have a "second" adjective ending (usually either -e or -en (cf. 4.3); it will appear before the noun. In the above segment, *unbefriedigt gebliebenen* is an example.
- 4. Read the final clause; do not change the order of the words in this clause (in der Realität). The final clause will often end with a noun. Therefore, the segment: die / in der Realität / unbefriedigt gebliebenen/ Wünsche des menschlichen

Unterbewußten should be translated as follows:

the wishes of the human subconscious that have remained unsatisfied in reality.

27.5. Note: It is sometimes desirable to add a "which" or "that" or a "who" and an auxiliary to the participle in order to make the translation sound smoother. By adding a "which," etc., you are merely changing an adjectival clause into a relative one in the same way as you could change the clause "the often discussed topic" into "the topic, which has often been discussed" and retain the same meaning.

27.6. While this construction usually contains a participle functioning as an adjective, other adjectives sometimes occur instead. Here are examples:

eine mir sehr *angenehme* Idee—an idea very *agreeable* to me ein den jungen Kindern *wichtiges* Versprechen—a promise *important* to the young children.

27.7. Here are more examples of each of the four steps:

Step 1 will consist of finding the adjective, or adjectives, that begin this construction:

Der /vom Schicksal verfolgte / Mann—The man persecuted by fate
Ein / vom Schicksal verfolgter / Mann—A man persecuted by fate
Ein alter, / vom Schicksal verfolgter / Mann—An old man persecuted by fate
Der alte, einsame, / vom Schicksal verfolgte / Mann—The old, lonely man persecuted by fate

Die Freunde alter, / vom Schicksal verfolgter / Männer—The friends of old men persecuted by fate

Step 2 will consist of finding the noun to which the adjective is attached:

Der vom Schicksal verfolgte Mann

Der vom Schicksal verfolgte Mann der kranken Frau mit vielen Schmerzen

—The husband of the sick woman with many pains who was persecuted by fate Der vom Schicksal verfolgte **alte Mann**—The old man persecuted by fate

Step 3 will consist of finding the *adjective*, which is a kind of pivot for step 4. It will appear in front of the noun in step 2, and it will *always* have an adjective ending. It may be an adjective formed from a verb, or it may be a regular adjective:

Der vom Schicksal **verfolgte** Mann—The man persecuted by fate
Der vom Schicksal **oft verfolgte** Mann—The man often persecuted by fate
Der seinem Schicksal **folgende** Mann—The man following his fate
Der mit seinem Schicksal **glückliche** Mann—The man who is happy with his fate

Step 4 will consist of the words located after step 1 and before step 3; they may be translated in the order in which they are found.

Der vom Schicksal verfolgte Mann—The man persecuted by fate
Der von einem schrecklichen, fast unglaublichen Schicksal verfolgte Mann—
The man persecuted by a horrible, almost unbelievable fate
Diese von den Ägyptern geschriebenen Erzählungen enthalten wichtige
Wahrheiten—These stories written by the Egyptians contain important truths.

27.8. When the overloaded adjective is found in the beginning of the sentence, the appropriate noun to which the article belongs will be found immediately before the conjugated verb. For in this type of clause, as in all independent German clauses, the conjugated verb appears in "second" place (cf. "Basic Verb Placement," Chapter 6); therefore, all the words preceding it will have to belong together.

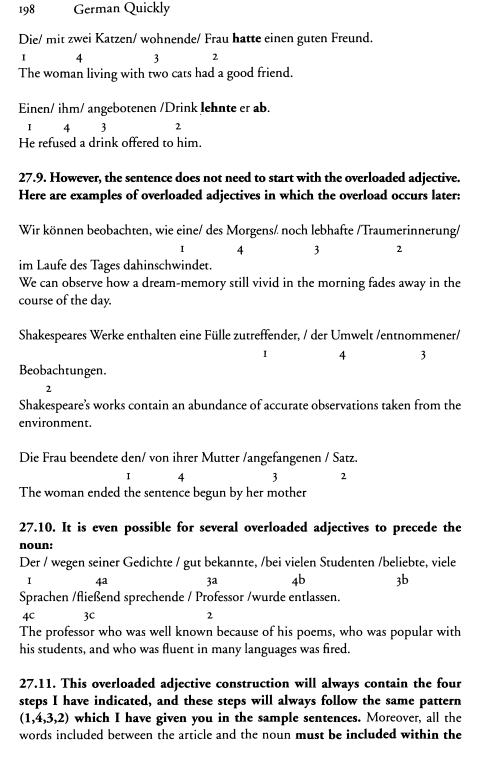
Here are more examples:

Ein junger,/ auf ein Verbrechen /angeklagter /Spanier namens Jeronimo war der

1 4 3 2

Geliebte Josephes.

A young Spaniard named Jeronimo (who was) accused of a crime was Josephe's lover.



overload; they can **never** be carried over to any other part of the sentence. In fact, you may find it useful to place brackets around this construction to remind yourself that all these words consist of a **single unit** within the sentence.

27.12. When the participle preceding the noun is a past participle, you will have to look up the infinitive in your dictionary, even though the word is used as an adjective. Here are examples:

das benutzte Beispiel—look up benutzen (the used example) die aufgeklärten Zeiten—look up aufklären (the enlightened times) die geschriebene Regel—look up schreiben (the written rule)

After the adjective ending (which generally will be either -e or -en) is removed, all such participles will end either in -t (when they are easy—cf. "benutzt" and "aufgeklärt") or in -en (when they are hard—cf. "geschrieben").

Overloaded adjective constructions can be differentiated from relative constructions because they don't have commas preceding the article, and because they end with a noun rather than a verb. Compare

Der Elefant, der in die Luft stieg, war aus Gummi—The elephant that rose in the air was made of rubber (relative)

Der/ in die Luft /steigende / Elefant war aus Gummi—The elephant rising in the air was made of rubber (overload)

27.11. Translate these sentences. Indicate the four steps for each overload:

- I. Josephe (a woman) fand ihren Geliebten in einem dunklen, von Pinien beschatteten Tal (valley). (Kleist)
- 2. Herzog Wilhelm von Breisach kam von einer in Worms mit dem deutschen Kaiser abgehaltenen (held) Zusammenkunft (meeting) zurück. (Kleist)
- 3. Am Fuße der Alpen, bei (near) Locarno, im oberen Italien befand sich ein altes, einem Marchese (marquis) gehöriges Schloß. (Kleist)
- 4. Ist der Briefträger ein vom Schicksal (fate) verfolgter Mensch?
- 5. Die Frau ergriff eine mit *Lilien gefüllte Glasvase* und schleuderte sie in den Kamin (fireplace), wo sie in *tausend* Stücke verschellte.
- 6. Verstohlen blickte sie die ihr gegenüber sitzende Dame an.
- 7. Poseidon wurde überdrüssig (bored with) seiner Meere (seas). Der Dreizack (trident) entfiel (fell from) ihm. Still saß er an felsiger (rocky) Küste, und eine von seiner Gegenwart (presence) betäubte (dazed) Möwe (seagull) zog schwankende (precarious) Kreise um sein Haupt. (Kafka)

- 8. Solche in seinem gegenwärtigen Zustand (situation) ganz nutzlose Gedanken gingen ihm durch den Kopf. (Kafka) (What does nutzlose modify? Be careful.)
- 9. Das junge Mädchen saß ganz still da, und versuchte mit aller Kraft, die ihr so ungewohnten Tränen zu unterdrücken.
- 10. Der Mann, der die mit zwei Katzen wohnende Frau liebte, mußte oft mit ihr zum Tierarzt gehen.
- 11. Trotz seines *Pessimismus* wurde der Roman [Thomas Manns *Buddenbrooks*] ein behagliches (cozy, agreeable), den Reiz (charm) der alten Bürgerlichkeit (middle-class way of life) mit Liebe und Humor, geduldiger (patient) Breite (prolixity) und köstlichem (exquisite) Detail ausbreitendes (depicting) Buch. (Fritz Martini)
- 12. Das dicke Kind ging in die Bibliothek an einem Freitag oder einem Samstag, jedenfalls nicht and dem zum Ausleihen (lending) bestimmten Tag.
- 13. E. T. A. Hoffmann war ein wegen seiner boshaften *Karikaturen* gefürchteter Zeichner *(sketcher)* und ein Dichter, der ohne . . . viele *Getränke* nicht zu arbeiten vermochte. (Martini) (Note that *Zeichner* is attached to the overload while *Dichter* is attached to the relative clause.)
- 14. Ein *hoch* in die Luft springender Kakerlak *(cockroach) erschreckte* Fräulein Meier, während sie bei dem Briefträger saß.
- 15. Der Briefträger sah in dem mutigen (plucky), vom Zoo neulich entflohenen (escaped) Flußpferd (hippo) ein Symbol des Drangs der Freiheit aller Menschen und Tiere. (The hippo's name was Bubbles.)
- 16. Gegenüber der Tür . . . zeigte sich im Kerzenschein (candle light) eine große, in heftigen (severe) Strichen (strokes, outlines) ausgeführte Kreidezeichnung (chalk drawing), die Napoleon darstellte (represented), wie er in plumper (awkward) und despotischer Haltung seine mit Kanonenstiefeln (gun-boots) bekleideten Füße an einem Kamin (fireplace) wärmte. (Thomas Mann) (This is a hard sentence!)
- 17. (A challenging sentence) Am schmalen Bogenfenster (bay window) einer Zelle, die nach dem grauen, jetzt vom Morgenlicht beschienenen Schloßturm von Riedberg hinüberschaute, saß die schöne Lukretia Planta. (C. F. Meyer)

Vocabulary

ab-halten—to hold
an-blicken—to look at
aus-breiten—to spread out, to
depict
aus-führen —to execute, to carry
out

befinden (r)— to be located

behaglich—cozy, comfortable bekleiden—to dress, adorn beschatten—to shade bescheinen—to light up bestimmen—to determine betäuben—to daze boshaft—malicious die Breite—expanse, prolixity
die Bürgerlichkeit—middle class
way of life
dar-stellen—to represent
der Drang (-es, "e)—craving
entfallen (i)—to fall away from
ergreifen—to grasp
erschrecken—to frighten
felsig—rocky
geduldig—patient

- * gegenüber—opposite
- * die Gegenwart—present gegenwärtig—present gehörig—belonging to geliebt—loved das Getränk (-es, -e)—drink grau—grey
- die **Haltung** stance, manner

 * das **Haupt** (-s, -er) head

 hinüber-schauen (i) to look over
- * das Italien (-s)—Italy
 jedenfalls—in any case
 der Kaiser (-s, -)—emperor
 der Kamin (-s, -e)—fireplace
- ** der Kopf (-es, -e)—head köstlich—precious, exquisite
- * die Kraft (-e)—strength der Kreis (-es, -e)—circle künstlerisch—artistic die Küste (-n)—coast
- * die Luft (-e)—air
- ** manche—some
 das Meer (-es, -e)—sea, ocean
 die Möwe (-n)—seagull
 mutig—courageous

- neulich—recently nutzlos—useless ober—upper die Pinie (-n)—pine plump—awkward
- * das **Recht** (-es, -e)—justice, right der **Reiz** (-es, -e)—charm, stimulus
- ** der Roman (-es, -e)—novel das Schicksal (-s, -e)—fate schleudern—to fling das Schloß (-sses, =sser)—castle schmal—narrow
- * solch—such
 die Tränen—tears
 treiben—to drive
 das Tal (-es, -er)—valley
 das Tier (-es, -e)—animal
 der Tierarzt—veterinarian
- * trotz—in spite of der Turm (-es, -e)—tower überdrüssig—bored with ungewohnt—unfamiliar unterdrücken—to suppress verfolgen—to persecute
- * vermögen—to be able to verstohlen—secretly
- * versuchen—to try der Zeichner (-s, -)—sketcher
- * zeigen (r)—to show; to be shown die Zelle (-n)—cell
- * ziehen (zog, hat gezogen)—to draw, to pull zurück-kommen (i)—to return die Zusammenkunft ("e)—meeting der Zustand (-es, "e)—condition

Reading Selection: Der Wolf und die sieben Geißlein (little goats) (This is a Grimm fairy tale familiar in Germany, which I have spiced up with overloaded adjectives to give you additional practice with them.) I have bold-faced words that I think you should know or guess and I have italicized words that will be repeated.

Words that are underlined mean that more than one word is included in the translation. (Vocabulary is in Appendix K.)

Es war **einmal** eine alte *Geiß* (goat), die **sieben** junge Geißlein hatte. Eines Tages wollte sie in den Wald gehen, **um etwas** zu essen **zu** holen (get). So rief (called) sie ihre Kinder ins Haus und sprach: "Liebe Kinder, ich will in den Wald. Wenn der Wolf kommt, dürft ihr (you) ihn nicht in unser Häuslein **lassen**. Wenn er hereinkäme (were to come in), so würde er euch (you) **alle** fressen. Das böse *Geschöpf* (creature) verstellt (disguises) sich oft, aber an seiner *Stimme* (voice) und an seinen **schwarzen** Füßen werdet ihr ihn **gleich** (immediately) **erkennen**." Die Kinder, die ihre Mutter sehr liebte, sagten: "Liebe Mutter, du **brauchst** keine Angst zu haben." So ging die über die Sicherheit ihrer Kinder sehr beruhigte (confident) Alte glücklich in den Wald.

Bald klopfte jemand an die Tür und rief: "Macht auf, liebe Kinder, eure Mutter ist da und hat jedem von euch etwas mitgebracht." Aber die Geißlein erkannten, daß es der Wolf war. "Wir machen nicht auf!" riefen sie, "du bist nicht unsere Mutter, sie hat eine feine Stimme, aber deine Stimme ist rauh; du bist der Wolf."

Dann ging der im Wald ganz allein wohnende Wolf weg und kaufte ein Stück (piece) Kreide (chalk); die aß er und machte damit seine Stimme fein. Er kam zurück, klopfte an die Tür und rief: "Macht auf, liebe Kinder, eure Mutter ist da!" Aber der Wolf hatte seinen schwarzen Fuß ins Fenster gelegt; den sahen die Kinder und riefen: "Wir machen nicht auf, unsere Mutter hat keinen schwarzen Fuß wie du; du bist der Wolf." So lief (ran, went) der Wolf zum in der Nähe des Waldes wohnenden Müller und fragte ihn, ob er etwas Mehl (flour) auf seinen Fuß streuen (sprinkle) könnte. Der Müller dachte: "Der Wolf will jemanden betrügen (deceive)," und wollte es nicht tun. Aber der Wolf sprach: "Wenn du es nicht tust, dann fresse ich dich." So fürchtete sich der Müller und machte dem Wolf den Fuß weiß. Ia, so sind die Menschen.

Nun ging der von allen Geschöpfen der Welt gefürchtete Wolf wieder zu der Tür, klopfte an und sprach: "Macht auf, Kinder, euer Mütterchen ist zurück." Die Geißlein riefen: "Du mußt uns erst deinen Fuß zeigen, sonst (otherwise) wissen wir nicht, ob du unser Mütterchen bist." Dann legte er den mit Mehl bedeckten Fuß ins Fenster, und als sie sahen, daß er weiß war, so glaubten sie, es wäre (was) alles wahr, was er sagte, und machten die Tür auf. Wer aber hereinkam, das war der Wolf!

Dann litten (suffered) sie alle Todesangst. **Obwohl** sie sich gut *versteckten* (hid), fand der Wolf sie **doch** und fraß eins **nach** dem **anderen** auf; nur die jüngste Geiß, die sich in dem Kasten (box) der Wanduhr (wall clock) versteckt hatte, fand er nicht. **Nachdem** (after) der Wolf die **Sechs** gefressen hatte, ging er weg, legte sich draußen (outside) unter einen der vielen Bäume **vor** dem von Tannen (pines) beschatteten (shaded) Haus und begann zu **schlafen**.

Bald kam die alte Geiß aus dem Wald wieder nach Hause. Ach! was hat sie da gesehen! Alles war umgeworfen (strewn about). Sie suchte (sought, looked for) ihre Kinder, aber sie fand sie nicht. Sie rief sie alle bei Namen, aber niemand antwortete. Endlich, als sie den Namen des jüngsten rief, antwortete eine feine, seiner Mutter sehr willkommene Stimme: "Liebe Mutter, ich bin im Uhrkasten (clock box)." Sie holte es heraus und es erzählte ihr, daß der Wolf gekommen wäre und die anderen gefressen hätte. So können Sie sich vorstellen (imagine), wie sie über ihre armen, von dem Wolf gefressenen Kinder geweint hat.

Endlich ging sie hinaus und das jüngste Geißlein lief mit. Als sie vor das Haus kamen, lag da der Wolf unter dem Baum und schnarchte laut. "Ach, Gott," dachte sie, "vielleicht leben meine Kinder noch!" Dann mußte das jüngste Geißlein ins Haus laufen und Schere (scissors), Nadel und Zwirn holen. Dann schnitt (cut open) die Mutter dem Wolf den Bauch auf, und kaum (hardly) hatte sie einen Schnitt getan, so steckte schon ein Geißlein den Kopf heraus, und endlich sprangen alle sechs heraus, und alle lebten noch. Das war ihr natürlich eine Freude! Die Alte sagte: "Jetzt suchen wir Steine; mit denen füllen wir dem Wolf den Bauch, solange er noch schläft." Die sieben Geißlein taten das und die Alte nähte ihn wieder zu (sewed up).

Als der Wolf erwachte, stand er auf, und weil ihn die von den Geißlein in seinen Bauch gefüllten Steine so durstig machten, wollte er zu einem Brunnen (well) gehen und trinken. Als er aber an den Brunnen kam und trinken wollte, zogen (pulled) ihn die Steine in den Brunnen hinein, und er mußte ertrinken. Als die Geißlein, die jetzt überglücklich waren, das sahen, liefen sie herbei und riefen laut: "Der Wolf ist tot!" und lachten und tanzten mit ihrer Mutter um den Brunnen.

The Passive

28.1. Passive voice is formed in English by using the verb *to be* as an auxiliary:

He helps his friend (active)—His friend is helped by him (passive)
He helped his friend (active)—His friend was helped by him (passive)
He has helped his friend (active)—His friend has been helped by him (passive)
He can help his friend (active)—His friend can be helped by him (passive)

28.2. In German, passive is formed by using the verb *werden* as an auxiliary with a participle with the past participial form (such as *gesagt*, *geschrieben*) of another verb:

Sein Freund wird von ihm gesehen—His friend is seen by him. Jeden Tag werden die im Wohnzimmer oft spielenden Katzen gestreichelt—Every day the cats who often play in the living room are patted.

Ehrlichkeit wurde nie bereut-Honesty was never regretted.

Reminder: On good days, German participles will have the prefix ge-, and even on bad days, they will always have the suffix -t or -en: gemacht, gefragt, gekannt, geschrieben, getan, versprochen, erwartet.

Whenever you see a verb ending in -t when wird is used as an auxiliary, the verb must be a participle: wird verlernt; wird beliebt, wird erlaubt.

Whenever you see a verb ending in -en and there is an o in the root (except for variations of kommen), the verb will be a participle: besprochen, empfohlen, entflohen.

However, a participle can also have a vowel other than o: geschrieben, gefallen, gegeben, gegriffen, gelungen.

28.3. In the passive construction, werden will be conjugated, and it will appear in "second" place, while the participle will appear at the end of the clause. The tense of werden will determine whether the tense of the passive is present, past, present perfect or past perfect.

28.4. Examples of the passive

1. Here are all the examples of the present passive:

ich werde gesehen—I am seen du wirst gesehen—you are seen er wird gesehen—he is seen es wird gesehen—it is seen sie wird gesehen—she is seen

wir werden gesehen-we are seen ihr werdet gesehen—you are seen sie werden gesehen-they are seen Sie werden gesehen—you are seen

2. Here are all the examples of the past passive:

ich wurde gesehen-I was seen du wurdest gesehen - you were seen er wurde gesehen - he was seen es wurde gesehen—it was seen sie wurde gesehen—she was seen

wir wurden gesehen - we were seen ihr wurdet gesehen-you were seen sie wurden gesehen-they were seen Sie wurden gesehen—you were seen

3. Here are all the examples of the present perfect passive:

ich bin gesehen worden du bist gesehen worden er, es, sie ist gesehen worden wir sind gesehen worden ihr seid gesehen worden sie sind gesehen worden Sie sind gesehen worden NOTE THAT WORDEN ALWAYS MEANS BEEN!!!

I have been seen you have been seen he, it, she has been seen we have been seen you have been seen they have been seen you have been seen

4. Here are the other passive forms, which appear less frequently:

Das Bild war gesehen worden—The picture had been seen. (past perfect passive) Das Bild wird gesehen werden—The picture will be seen. (future passive)

Das Bild wird gesehen worden sein—The picture will have been seen. (future perfect passive)

- **28.5.** The passive construction can be confusing because *werden* also is used in two other ways with which you are already familiar:
- a. without an infinitive, werden simply means "to become:"

Es wird dunkel—It becomes dark.

Er wird alt—He grows old.

b. with an infinitive, werden designates the future:

Sie wird mit uns gehen—She will go with us. Sie wird das Gedicht schreiben—She will write the poem.

c. Compare the sentences in (a) and (b) with the following passive:

Der Student wird von dem Professor gesehen—The student is seen by the professor. Das Gedicht wird von ihr geschrieben—The poem is written by her.

Werden used passively will always be translated as a form of the verb to be and never as the verb to become. If in doubt, translate wird as is and werden as are rather than becomes/become, as passive is used far more frequently than become.

28.6. *Worden* will **always** be translated as *been* because *worden* is used only as the participial form of the passive. Compare the following two sentences:

Der Hund ist alt geworden—The dog has become old. (regular)
Der Hund ist dressiert worden—The dog has been trained. (passive)

- 28.7. Whenever you see a form of werden, therefore, check for possible verbs at the end of the clause.
- 1. If there is a past participle the sentence will be passive:

Der Krimi wird oft gelesen—The thriller is often read.

Die Frage wurde oft gestellt—The question was often asked.

Also, sentences with the passive usually will have an inanimate noun (der Krimi, die Frage) for the nominative noun.

2. If there is a simple infinitive, the sentence will be a simple future:

Er wird mit uns gehen—He will go with us. Sie werden den Film sehen—They will see the film.

Reminder: The infinitive is the verb form found in your dictionaries. It will *always* end in *-n* or *-en*.

3. If there are no verbs, translate werden as become:

Das schönste Grün wird auch Heu—The most beautiful green also becomes hay. Die Studenten werden nie reich—The students never become rich.

Der Mann wird Professor—The man becomes a professor.

Ein Gast wird zu einer Last—A guest becomes a burden. (Often, if you see werden accompanied by the preposition zu, it will mean become, and you will not translate the zu.)

28.8. Occasionally, however, a passive sentence should be translated as future passive, as can be shown by the following two sentences:

Morgen wird der Film gesehen—Tomorrow the movie will be seen.

Wann wird der Tanzbär gesehen?—When will the dancing bear be seen?

In each sentence, wird makes the sentence passive only. The morgen in the first sentence and the wann in the second sentence rather than the verb point out that the sentences should be translated in the future tense.

Otherwise, the "official" future will be written as follows: Der Film wird gesehen werden—The movie will be seen.

28.9. Sometimes the infinitive of the verb and its perfect are identical.

However, you can generally differentiate the future from the passive by context. Here are examples:

Er wird den toten Vogel begraben—He will bury the dead bird. (future)
Der tote Vogel wird von ihm begraben—The dead bird is buried by him. (passive)
Er wird seine Kollegen empfangen—He will receive his colleagues. (future)
Er wird von seinen Kollegen empfangen—He is received by his colleagues. (passive)

Note that if you have *wurde* and a verb that could be either an infinitive or a participle, the verb will *always* be a participle, because the future *cannot be formed* with the past of *werden*:

Er wurde von seinene Kollegen empfangen—He was received by his colleagues (passive)

Wo wurde Ulysses S. Grant begraben?—Where was Ulysses S. Grant buried?

28.10. Modals can be combined with the passive in the following way:

Das Buch muß unbedingt gelesen werden—The book must definitely be read.

Das Bild musste gesehen werden-The picture had to be seen.

Das Bild hat gesehen werden müssen-The picture has had to be seen.

Das Bild hatte gesehen werden müssen-The picture had had to be seen.

Das Bild wird gesehen werden müssen-The picture will have to be seen.

Whenever you have to translate a sentence with three or more verbs, the conjugated verb will always be translated first, the final verb will be translated second, the penultimate verb will be translated third, and any fourth verb will be translated last. Here is an example:

Die Doktorarbeit wird von dem Professor gelesen werden müssen—The dissertation

4 3

will have to be read by the professor.

28.11. Other cautions: wird when used as a passive should be translated as is; werden should be translated as are. It is extremely tempting to translate them as past tenses as they look deceptively past:

Die Arbeit wird oft getan-The work is often done.

Die Tür wird zugemacht—The door is closed.

Die Katzen werden selten gehört—The cats are seldom heard.

When werden appears at the end of the clause, if the word to the left of it is an adjective, translate werden as become; if the word to the left of it is a participle, translate werden as a passive:

Sie kann reich werden-She can become rich

Wenn sie alt wird, wird sie viele Bücher lesen—When she becomes old, she will read many books.

Sie will *geliebt* werden—She wants to *be* loved

Sie muß verstanden werden—She must be understood.

Wenn er gesehen wird, arbeitet er viel-Whenever he is seen, he works a lot.

Der Wolf machte viele Versuche, um von den Geißlein hereingelassen zu werden— The wolf made many attempts to be let in by the little goats.

- **28.12.** Because the various uses of *werden* are confusing, you should make a chart of the possibilities to use as a handy reference:
- I. werden + participle (a verb ending in -en [with a vowel change] or -t, and usually with a ge- prefix) = passive (is, are, was, were, be):

Die E-mail wird von dem Dichter geschrieben—The e-mail is written by the poet.

Das Folgende wird oft gesagt—The following is often said.

Der Mann wurde erwartet—The man was expected.

Die Frau ist endlich geliebt worden—The woman has finally been loved.

Der Film muß besprochen werden—The film must be discussed.

This should be your first option!!!

2. werden + infinitive (a verb ending in -n or -en only with no vowel change) = will:

Der Mann wird mit der Frau singen—The man will sing with the woman.

Der Briefträger wird Fräulein Meier helfen müssen—The mailman will have to help Fräulein Meier.

3. werden + predicate adjective (or a predicate nominative) = become:

Der Mann wird unglücklich—The man becomes unhappy.

Der Mann wird zu einem Dichter-The man becomes a poet.

Der Briefträger kann glücklich werden—The mailman can become happy.

28.13. Translate these sentences, being particularly aware of how you are translating werden (not all of the sentences are passive):

- 1. An der Frucht wird der Baum erkannt.
- 2. Hohe Klimmer und tiefe Schwimmer werden nicht alt.
- 3. Esel werden zur Hochzeit geladen (invited), nur um Wasser zu tragen.
- 4. Beim (at the) Tanze wird die Unschuld (innocence) umgebracht (murdered); auf dem Heimwege wird sie begraben. (Obviously, this proverb is amazingly puritanical! I cannot imagine any German-speaking person ever saying it.)
- 5. Rom wurde nicht in einem Tag erbaut.
- 6. Kein Armer soll verachtet werden, denn Christus war auch arm auf Erden.
- 7. Unter Räubern wird kein Mord begangen. (There is honor among thieves.)
- 8. Wer im Frühling nicht sät (sows), wird im Herbst nichts ernten (reap). (Be careful when translating nicht and nichts)
- 9. Freundschaft muß vergolten werden.

- 10. Ein auf die Spitze (point, extreme) getriebenes Recht kann unter manchen Umständen (circumstances) zu einem großen Unrecht werden.
- 11. Wenn der Stein aus der Hand und das Wort aus dem Mund ist, können sie nicht mehr zurückgebracht werden.
- 12. Die Tür wurde geöffnet, und ein beleibter Mann, der einen langen Bart hatte, erschien in der Türöffnung.
- 13. Die liebevollen Katzen Fräulein Meiers sind oft gestreichelt worden.
- 14. Die Erinnerung ist das einzige Paradies, aus welchem wir nicht vertrieben werden können. (Jean Paul).
- 15. Rache ist ein Gericht (dish, food), das kalt gegessen werden sollte.
- 16. Aber die deutschen Revolutionäre (um 1830), die unter dem Sammelnamen "Junges Deutschland" mißverständlich und unfreiwillig zusammengefaßt wurden, waren der Vergangenheit stärker verhaftet, als sie selbst es ahnten und je zugeben wollten. (Martini)
- 17. Die Tanzenden werden von denen, die die Musik nicht hören, für toll (mad, crazy) gehalten.
- 18. Wittgenstein war einmal krank. Da in der Hausapotheke (medicine chest) ein bestimmtes Medikament nicht vorhanden war, wurde mein Vater, der Kaufmann war, ersucht, das Medikament aus Neunkirchen (the name of a town) mitzubringen. Ich selber wurde beauftragt, Wittgenstein das Päketchen zu überbringen Als ich hinkam, war Wittgenstein bettlägrig. Er bedankte sich vielmals und sagte: "Ich kann dir jetzt nichts geben, aber ich spiele dir etwas auf der Klarinette vor." Mir war das ziemlich peinlich. (A former pupil of Wittgenstein recalls his childhood experience with the philosopher.)

Vocabulary

ahnen—to suspect begehen, beging, hat begangento commit beauftragen—to commission bedanken (r.)—to thank (a person) beleibt-stout bettlägrig-bedridden * einmal—once * einzig—only

- erbauen—to build
- die Erinnerung (-en) memory
- ** erkennen, erkannte, hat erkannt—to recognize
- * escheinen—to appear

ersuchen—to request, ask der Frühling (-s)—spring das Gericht (-s, -e)—food (in this context)

die Hausapotheke-medicine chest der Heimweg-way home der Herbst (-es, -e) - fall die Hochzeit (-en)—wedding

* je—ever der Kaufmann (-s -er) -- merchant der Klimmer (-s, -)—climber

laden, lud, hat geladen—to invite liebevoll—loving, affectionate

das Medikament—medicine

- mißverständlich—erroneous. misleading der **Mord** (-s, -e) — murder
- * **nicht mehr**—no longer
- niemals—never das Päketchen (-s, -) - parcel peinlich—embarrassing der **Revolutionär** (-s, -e) revolutionary

der Sammelname (-ns, -n)—collective name

- selber—self, even streicheln—to stroke, pat toll—mad, crazy
 - die Türöffnung—doorway überbringen—to deliver um-bringen, brachte um, hat umgebracht—to murder unfreiweillig-involuntarily

- verachten—to despise
- * die Vergangenheit—past vergelten, vergalt, hat vergoltento reward
- * vgl.—vergleiche—compare (cf.) verhaftet—dependent, bound up vertreiben, vertrieb, hat

vertrieben—to drive away vorhanden—available

worden—(always) been

ziemlich—rather

zu-geben, gab zu, hat zugegeben-to admit zurück-bringen, brachte zurück, hat zurückgebracht—to bring back zusammen-fassen—to combine

28.14. Practice with the forms of werden:

- 1. Es wird getan.
- 2. Es wurde getan.
- 3. Es ist getan worden.
- 4. Es war getan worden.
- 5. Es muß getan werden.
- 6. Es mußte getan werden.
- 7. Es wird getan werden.
- 8. Die Leute werden gehört.
- 9. Es wird erkannt.
- 10. Es wird versprochen.
- 11. Sie wird das Problem verstehen.
- 12. Das Problem wird von ihr nicht verstanden.
- 13. Das Problem wurde verstanden.
- 14. Die Bilder werden angesehen.
- 15. Die Studenten werden erwartet.
- 16. Die Studenten können gesehen werden.
- 17. Die Tür wurde zugemacht.
- 18. Die Grammatik wird studiert.
- 19. Vor acht Jahren wurde der Kritiker oft gelesen.

212 German Quickly

- 20. Sie wird in die Bibliothek gehen.
- 21. Die Frucht wird gegessen.
- 22. Er wurde begraben.
- 23. Wird das Lied je gesungen?
- 24. Ein mit vielen Hunden wohnender Mann wird eine mit vielen Katzen wohnende Frau kennenlernen.

28.15. Participle or infinitive exercise:

wird erstochen
wird erwartet
wird gehen
wird angefangen
wird gebracht
wird gefunden
wird sehen
ist begraben worden
wurde verlesen
wird machen
wurde repariert

Constructions to Be Translated Passively into English; the "Fake" Passive

29.1. Some constructions that are active in German may be translated into English as passive. The most common of these constructions are:

- 1. sentences in which man is the subject
- 2. some verbs that are active in German, but passive in English
- 3. some reflexive verbs should be translated passively; *sich lassen* is one of the most common of these reflexive verbs.

29.2. Sentences with man (one)

Sentences with *man* as the subject can be translated either actively or passively, depending on personal preference. However, at times, a passive translation may sound smoother in English. Examples are:

Man tut das nicht—One does not do that, or: That is not done.

Man hat Jeronimo Rugera in das Gefängnis eingesperrt—One locked Jeronimo Rugera in prison, or: Jeronimo Rugera was locked in prison.

29.3. Some verbs that are active in German must be translated into English with the verb "to be." The most common of these verbs are *gelten* (to be valid), heißen (to be called), schweigen (to be silent) and the modal dürfen (to be permitted). Here are examples:

Eine Unze guten Beispiels *gilt* mehr als ein Pfund Worte—An ounce of a good example *is worth* more than a pound of words.

Der Hund heißt Grimmelshausen—The dog is named (or called) Grimmelshausen. Die Vögel schweigen im Walde—The birds are silent in the woods.

Das junge Kind darf den gewalttätigen Film nicht sehen—The young child is not permitted to see the violent film.

29.4. Some reflexive verbs also should be translated with the verb "to be." Here are some examples:

sich befinden to be located sich finden to be found sich freuen über to be happy about sich fürchten vor to be afraid of sich interessieren für to be interested in sich spiegeln to be reflected

Here are sample sentences:

Hier findet sich ein interessanter Gedanke—Here an interesting thought is found. Fräulein Meier interessiert sich für Erdkunde—Fräulein Meier is interested in geography.

29.5. Sich wiederholen is translated passively whenever the subject is inanimate. Here is an example:

Das wiederholt sich immer wieder—That is repeated again and again.

29.6. Sich lassen

Sich lassen should be translated as can be in the present tense, or as could be in the past tense. Here are examples:

Das läßt sich zeigen—That can be shown (present)

Das Problem läßt sich leicht verstehen—The problem can easily be understood (present)

Das ließ sich sagen—That could be said (past)
Be certain to write this definition into your dictionary if it is not already there!

However, if the subject is a person rather than an abstraction, *läßt sich* should be translated as *has* or even *lets himself*.

Der Mann *läßt sich* die Haare schneiden—The man *has* his hair cut. Man soll *sich* nicht zu viel träumen *lassen*—One should not *let himself dream* too much

29.7. Translate these sentences (vocabulary is on p. 216-217):

- 1. Wer sich fürchtet, sieht Gespenster.
- 2 Der Teufel ist nicht so schwarz, wie man ihn malt (paints).
- 3. Für jeden Topf (pot) findet sich ein Deckel (cover).
- 4. Fische fängt man mit der Angel (hook), Leute fängt man mit Worten.
- 5. Lieben und Beten (praying) lassen sich nicht nötigen.
- 6. Glück läßt sich finden, Behalten (keeping it) ist eine Kunst.
- 7. Der Expressionismus läßt sich nicht ohne Nietzsches Vorgang (precedence) begreifen. (Martini)
- 8. Was von Stroh ist, muß sich vor dem Feuer hüten.
- 9. Ein zänkisches (cranky) Weib und ein triefendes (dripping) Dach (roof), wenn es sehr regnet, lassen sich miteinander vergleichen. (Proverbs)
- 10. Alte Bäume lassen sich nicht biegen.
- 11. Leoparden brechen in den Tempel ein und saufen (guzzle) die Opferkrüge leer. Das wiederholt sich immer wieder. Schließlich kann man es vorausberechnen (calculate in advance), und es wird ein Teil der Zeremonie. (Kafka)

29.8. The "fake" passive

The "fake" (or apparent, or statal) passive is conjugated with a form of the verb *sein* plus a past participle. This passive is a fake because the past participle is an adjective rather than a real verb, and it describes the result of a previous action. Here are examples:

Das Auto ist verkauft (the car is sold) indicates that the car is sold and that it can no longer be bought by anyone; verkauft (sold) is an adjective describing the car. Das Auto wird verkauft (the car is being sold), on the other hand, indicates that the car is in the process of being sold and that anyone who wants to can still buy it. Die Tür wird zugemacht (the door is being closed) indicates that the door is in the process of being closed (and your cat can still get through it).

Die Tür ist zugemacht (the door is closed), on the other hand, indicates that the door is closed (and your cat can't get through it unless you have a special cat door).

The "fake" passive is easy to translate into English because the verb *sein* is translated literally as *to be*, while the participle is translated naturally as a participle. Examples are:

Die Katze ist verloren—The cat is lost.

Das Kind ist natürlich sehr erregt—The child is naturally very excited.

Note that even though the participle is functioning as a predicate adjective, it still appears at the end of the clause.

29.8. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Verlobt (engaged) ist noch nicht verheiratet.
- 2. Die Bärenhaut (bearskin) soll man nicht verkaufen, ehe der Bär erstochen ist.
- 3. Nachdem die Kuh gestohlen ist, sperrt (locks) man den Stall (stable).
- 4. Solange man nährt, ist man geehrt, und solange man gibt, geliebt.
- 5. Dem Tod ist *Macht* gegeben über alles *Endliche* Aber ihm ist keine Macht gegeben über die Liebe. (Paul Tillich)

Vocabulary

die Angel (-n)—fishhook

- * begreifen—to comprehend behalten—to keep biegen, bog, gebogen—to bend das Dach (-es, -er)—roof
- ** ehe—before
 ehren—to honor
 ein-brechen—to break in
 erstechen, erstach, erstochen—to
 stab
- fangen (fängt)—to catch

 * finden (r)—to be found
- * freuen (r)—to be pleased das Gespenst (-es, -er)—ghost

hüten (vor) (r)—to be on guard (against)

- * immer wieder—again & again
- * die **Kunst** (-e)—art
- * lassen (läßt) (r)—can be leer—empty
- * die Macht—power, strength, might malen—to paint miteinander—with one another
- ** nachdem—after nähren—to nourish
- * noch nicht—not yet nötigen—to force der Opferkrug (-s, -e)—sacrificial vessel saufen—to guzzle
- * schwarz—black

- ** solange—as long as der Stall (-s, -e)—stable
- * das **Teil** (-s, -e)—part der **Topf** (-es, -e)—pot
- * vergleichen—to compare verheiraten—to marry

verkaufen—to sell voraus-berechnen—calculate in advance

* wiederholen (r)—to be repeated zänkisch—cranky

Reading Selection: Zwei Chassidische (Hasidic) Geschichten (Martin Buber)

- I. Eine arme Apfelhändlerin (lady apple dealer), deren Stand nah am Hause Rabbi Chaims von Zans war, kam einst klagend zu ihm: "Unser Rabbi, ich habe noch kein Geld, um für den Sabbat einzukaufen." "Und dein Apfelstand?" fragte der Zaddik (wise man). "Die Leute sagen", antwortete sie, "meine Äpfel seien (are) schlecht, und sie wollen keine kaufen." Sogleich lief Rabbi Chaim auf die Gasse und rief: "Wer will gute Äpfel kaufen?" Im Nu (immediately) sammelte sich die Menge um ihn, die Münzen flogen unbesehen und ungezählt herbei, und bald waren alle Früchte zum doppelten und dreifachen Preis verkauft. "Sieh nur", sagte er zur Frau, als er sich zum Gehen wandte, "deine Äpfel waren gut, die Leute haben es nur nicht gewußt."
- II. Ehe Rabbi Mordechai von Neshiz seinen Beruf erkannte, betrieb er einen kleinen Handel. Nach jeder Reise, die er unternahm, um seine Waren zu verkaufen, pflegte er ein wenig Geld zurückzulegen, um sich für das Hüttenfest (Feast of Tabernacles) eine Etrogfrucht (a citron used in a religious service) zu erstehen (get). Als er mehrere Rubel beisammen hatte, fuhr er in die Kreisstadt (town) und dachte unterwegs unablässig daran, ob es ihm wohl vergönnt (granted) würde (would be), unter den dort feilgebotenen (offered) Paradiesäpfeln (literally: a paradise apple; here, an Etrog is meant) den schönsten zu erwerben. Da sah er mitten auf der Straße einen Wasserverkäufer stehen, der um sein gefallenes Pferd jammerte. Er stieg ab und gab dem Mann all sein Geld, daß er sich ein anderes kaufe (might buy). "Was macht es aus?" sagte er lachend zu sich, als er sich auf dem Heimweg machte, "alle werden den Segen (blessing) über dem Etrog sprechen, und ich spreche meinen Segen über diesem Pferd." Zu Hause fand er einen herrlichen Etrog vor, den ihm Freunde indessen gespendet hatten.

Subjunctive I

30.1. The German subjunctive is not too difficult to translate (although most explanations of the subjunctive, including this one, may seem long and confusing) because often the context forces the reader to use the subjunctive naturally, whether or not the form is recognized.

There are two types of the subjunctive, one based on the infinitive root of the verb, and one based on the past tense. At this point, it will be crucial for you to learn the infinitive and the past subjunctive forms of *sein* (*sei*—infinitive; *wäre*—past) and *haben* (*habe*—infinitive; *hätte*—past), as these are the verbs that appear most frequently in your reading.

30.2. The subjunctive is formed from the infinitive root/stem of the verb (which I will call "subjunctive I," although it is sometimes called the present subjunctive).

Here are some examples of the subjunctive based on the infinitive stem of the verb in comparison with the present indicative:

indicative	subjunctive I	subjunctive I	subjunctive I	subjunctive I
(gehen)	(gehen)	(sein)	(haben)	(werden)
ich gehe	gehe	sei	habe	werde
*du gehst	gehest	sei(e)st	habest	werdest
*er geht	gehe	sei	habe	werde
wir gehen	gehen	seien	haben	werden
*ihr geht	gehet	sei(e)t	habet	werdet
sie gehen	gehen	seien	haben	werden
Sie gehen	gehen	seien	haben	werden
	-			

^{*}For verbs except *sein* and the modals (dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, and wollen), present indicative and the Subjunctive I will be identical except for second and third person singular and the informal you plural.

30.3. The most common use of this subjunctive form is indirect discourse, which is, whenever a sentence includes what someone has said or thought without using his direct words. Examples are:

Er sagt, er *habe* die Eintrittskarte—He says, he *has* the admission ticket. Sie glaubt, sie *spreche* die Wahrheit—She believes she *is speaking* the truth.

The subjunctive I generally appears after verbs such as sprechen (speak), sagen (say), fragen (ask), antworten (answer), glauben (believe), denken (think), versprechen (promise), meinen (be of the opinion, suppose), erzählen (explain), hoffen (hope), or even schreiben (write).

A rough equivalent of this in English is shown by adding the word "that" after similar verbs: Er glaubt, er habe viel zu tun—He believes that he has a lot to do.

While it is not necessary to add "that" to your translation, chances are that if you feel like adding it, you are dealing with a sentence that is in indirect discourse, and therefore you do not need to add any auxiliaries to the verb in your translation to prove that you realize it is subjunctive I.

30.4. Although this form is subjunctive in German, it is not subjunctive in English. Therefore, it is to be translated as an indicative verb. Moreover, it should be translated either present or past tense, depending on whether the supposition verb (sagen, hoffen, etc.) is present or past. Here are examples:

Sie *glaubt*, sie *verstehe* den komplizierten Begriff—She *believes* she *understands* the complicated concept. (present)

Sie *glaubte*, sie *verstehe* den komplizierten Begriff—She *believed* she *understood* the complicated concept. (past)

Er sagt, er sei glücklich — He says he is happy (present)

Er sagte, er sei glücklich—He said he was happy (past)

30.5. The present perfect is formed by using the subjunctive I form of either haben or sein with a participle. Here are examples:

Er sagte, er *habe* den Begriff *verstanden*—He said he *had understood* the concept. Fräulein Meier glaubte, ihr Kindheitstraum *sei* Wirklichkeit *geworden*—Fräulein Meier believed, her childhood dream *had become* a reality.

30.6. Note that the subjunctive I can be continued beyond the initial clause:

K. erklärte Hans, daß eine solche Hilfe nicht nötig sei, Zanken (scolding) gehöre wohl zu des Lehrers Natur. . ., übrigens (moreover) wirke auf K. dieses Zanken nicht so wie auf einen Schüler, er schüttele es ab, es sei ihm fast gleichgültig—K. explained to Hans that such a help was not necessary, chiding indeed belonged to the teacher's nature, moreover, this chiding did not affect K. as it would a pupil, he could shake it off, it was almost indifferent to him. (Kafka)

30.7. Occasionally, this subjunctive will also be used as a command. A good example is the Lord's Prayer: "Unser Vater im Himmel. Dein Name *werde* geheiligt. Dein Reich *komme*. Dein Wille *geschehe* auf Erden wie im Himmel."—Our Father in Heaven. *Let* thy name be hallowed. *Let* thy kingdom come. *Let* thy will be done . . .

The expletive Gottseidank—let God be thanked, or Thank God—also has the command subjunctive within it.

This form can be recognized because the third person singular ends in -e rather than -t for present tense; moreover, the forms will always be either imperative or subjunctive I. Also, a straight indicative translation will seem somewhat inappropriate. Here are other examples:

Gott *gnade* dem, der mit faulen Leuten haushält—*Let* God bless him who associates with lazy people.

Besser, es *fresse* mich ein Wolf als ein Lamm—It is better that a wolf *eat* me, than a lamb (eat me).

30.8. When the verb is followed by wir and the sentence has an exclamation point, it is best translated by let us. Examples are:

Vergessen wir nicht, das zu tun!—Let us not forget to do that! Gehen wir jetzt!—Let us go now!
Seien wir glücklich!—Let us be happy!

30.9. At other times, subjunctive I (which is not indirect discourse) should be translated into English with may, should, or even without an -s ending on the verb. Examples are:

Obwohl es gut sei, gefällt es ihr nicht—Although it may be good, it does not please

Man vergesse nicht... One should not forget...

Gott helfe ihm!—God help him!

Note the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive I:

Man glaubt das nicht—One does not believe that (indicative)
Man glaube das nicht—One should not believe that (subjunctive I)

30.10. Summary:

I. If the sentence starts with a clause with a verb in it such as sagen (to say), fragen (to ask), meinen (to believe), behaupten (to assert), erklären (to explain) and the next clause has a verb in subjunctive I, do not embellish the subjunctive I with any auxiliaries. It is only indirect discourse:

Er sagt, er sei glücklich—He says he is happy. Er sagte, er sei glücklich—He said he was happy. This happens more often than not with subjunctive I!

2. If the sentence consists of only one clause, and contains a subjunctive I, it usually must be embellished to point out that it is subjunctive I

Die Torheit anderer Leute sei deine Weisheit—The foolishness of other people should be your wisdom (Or: Let the foolishness of other people be your wisdom.)

3. Note the difference between:

Man glaubt das nicht—One does not believe that. (-t is still present, indicative) Man glaube das nicht—One should not believe that. (-e shows the subjunctive I)

30.11. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Ein böses (guilty) Gewissen denkt stets (constantly), der Wolf sei hinterm Ofen.
- 2. Der *Fuchs* meint, daß jeder *Hühner* stehle, wie er. (How do you know that *jeder* does not modify *Hühner*?)
- 3. Hoch lebe der König! (You may translate hoch as long)
- 4. Wenn alle dir sagen, du seiest *betrunken*, geh schlafen! (Do you remember the imperative? See 6.4)
- 5. Kinder meinen, wenn es im Dorf *regnet*, es regne in der ganzen *Welt*. (How do you know that *meinen* is *not* an adjective?)
- 6. Die Wahrsager erinnern uns: Vergessen wir nicht die Zukunft!
- 7. Ein *Durstiger* träumt, daß er trinke, wenn er aber aufwacht, ist seine *Zunge* noch trocken (dry).
- 8. Der Bibelverkäufer schlägt vor: Lesen wir die Bibel!
- 9. Gott bewahre mich vor meinen Freunden!
- 10. Wer fürchtet, er tue zu viel, tut immer zu wenig.
- 11. Der Briefträger glaubte, er habe viel von Fräulein Meier erfahren.
- 12. Die Gelehrten sind gute Uhrwerke: nur sorge man, sie richtig aufzuziehen (wind)! Dann zeigen sie ohne Falsch die Stunde an und machen einen bescheidenen (modest) Lärm (noise) dabei. (Nietzsche) (Nietzsche's view of scholars tends to be as dim as his view of Christians!)

Vocabulary

an-zeigen—to show auf-ziehen—to wind bescheiden—modest bewahren vor—to protect from der Bibelverkäufer (-s, -)—Bible salesman

- * dabei—in so doing das Dorf (-es, -er)—village
- * erinnern—to remind
 (ohne) Falsch—without error
 der Gelehrte (-n, -n)—scholar
 der Lärm (-es)—noise
- * **meinen**—to be of the opinion, think

der Ofen (-s, =)—oven
regnen (i)—to rain
richtig—correctly
schlafen (i)—to sleep
* sei (from sein)—to be
* selbst—self, even

- sorgen (i)—to take care stets—constantly träumen—to dream das Uhrwerk (-s, -e)—clock, der Wahrsager (-s, -)—prophet
- ** wieder—again
 vor-schlagen—to suggest
- * die **Zukunft**—future

Subjunctive II

31.1. The subjunctive based on the past of the verb (subjunctive II)

The subjunctive II (which is also sometimes called the past subjunctive) usually is formed by adding an umlaut to the past of strong/hard verbs (if these verbs contain vowels *a*, *o*, or *u*). When weak/easy verbs are encountered, the past indicative and the Subjunctive II are identical. Here are examples:

Past indicative	Subjunctive II	Past indicative	Subjunctive II
singen (strong)		sagen (weak)	
ich sang	sänge	sagte	sagte
du sangst	sängest	sagtest	sagtest
er sang	sänge	sagte	sagte
wir sangen	sängen	sagten	sagten
ihr sangt	sänget	sagtet	sagtet
sie sangen	sängen	sagten	sagten
Sie sangen	sängen	sagten	sagten

And here are the Subjunctive II forms of sein, haben, and werden:

sein	haben	werden	
ich wäre	hätte	würde	
du wär(e)st	hättest	würdest	
er wäre	hätte	würde	
wir wären	hätten	würden	
ihr wär(e)t	hättet	würdet	
sie wären	hätten	würden	
Sie wären	hätten	würden	

31.2. Here are the most frequent uses of the subjunctive II

1. Expressions of events that did not occur:

Es wäre nett **gewesen**, wenn er **gekommen wäre**—It would have been nice, if he had come.

Wenn er das *gewußt hätte*, *hätte* er die richtige Antwort *gegeben*—If he *had known* that, he *would have given* the right answer.

Wenn Fräulein Meier hier wäre, gäbe sie uns eine Erklärung—If Fräulein Meier were here, she would give us an explanation.

2. Different degrees of assumption or possibility:

Vielleicht wäre das möglich-Perhaps that would be possible.

Es wäre nett, das zu tun-It would be nice to do that.

Wenn ich nur reich wäre-If only I were rich!

3. Clauses of conjecture that cannot be confirmed immediately, such as after als ob (as if), als wenn, and als:

Er sieht aus, *als ob* er glücklich *wäre*—He looks *as if* he *were* happy.

Arbeite, *als könntest* du ewig leben—Work *as if you could* live eternally; Bete, *als endete* morgen dein Streben—Pray *as if* tomorrow your striving *would end*.

- **4. Desires:** Ich *wünschte*, ich *könnte gehen*—I *wish* I *could go.* (Note that *wünschte* also is subjunctive in German, although it is indicative in English.)
- **5. Reported speech** such as the words of a third person (the first person being the narrator and the second person being the listener). The subjunctive II is also used if there is the slightest doubt about the accuracy of the statements:

Man sagte, Fräulein Meier *ginge gern* in den Zoo—It was said that Fräulein Meier *liked to go* to the zoo.

Sie behauptet, daß sie hilflos wäre—She asserts that she is helpless.

Sie behauptete, daß sie hilflos wäre—She asserted that she was helpless.

This is also used in newspapers to avoid libel:

Nach Angaben der Polizei, *hätte* der Räuber den Mord begangen—According to police reports, the robber had committed the murder.

31.3. There are both present and past forms of the subjunctive II

Das wäre möglich—That would be possible (present).

Das wäre möglich gewesen-That would have been possible (past).

Wenn er das wüßte, täte er das nicht—If he were to know (or knew) that, he would not do that (present).

Wenn er das gewußt hätte, hätte er das nicht getan—If he had known that, he would not have done that (past).

Note that in the past form the subjunctive of either sein (wäre) or haben (hätte) is used as the auxiliary verb.

31.4. How to translate the subjunctive II

I. When there is only one subjunctive verb in a sentence, it usually will be translated as **would**, particularly if it appears in the main clause of the sentence:

Es wäre schön, einen neuen Wintermantel zu besitzen—It would be nice to own a new winter coat.

Ohne ihre Katzen wäre Fräulein Meier sehr betrübt—Without her cats, Fräulein Meier would be quite sad.

Vielleicht *ginge* er doch mit uns ins Kino—Perhaps he *would go* to the movies with us, after all.

2. The subjunctive II also will be translated as *would* if the verb refers to some event which can happen only in the future:

Er glaubte, er *flöge* nächstes Jahr nach Berlin—He believed he *would fly* to Berlin next year.

Sie sagte, wir sähen sie morgen—She said we would see her tomorrow.

Arbeite, als endete morgen dein Streben-Work as if tomorrow your striving would end.

3. The subjunctive II will be translated as *were* (or a similar past) whenever itis part of an "if" clause:

Er tat, als ob er das wüßte-He acted as if he knew that.

Zuviel schmeckt bitter, auch wenn es lauter Honig wäre—Too much tastes bitter, even if it were pure honey.

Wenn er nur hier wäre! — If only he were here!

31.5. If . . . then clauses (the conditional)

In most "if . . . then" sentences, both verbs will be subjunctive; in the "if" clause, the subjunctive verb should be translated as were (or a similar past), while in the main clause, the subjunctive verb should be translated as **would**. Examples are:

Wenn der Student hier wäre, sänge er ein Trinklied—If the student were here, he would sing a drinking song.

Wenn der Student ein Trinklied sänge, wäre er glücklich—If the student were to sing a drinking song, he would be happy.

Wenn alle Meere ein Meer wären, was für ein großes Meer wär' das—If all oceans were one ocean, what a great ocean that would be.

Moreover, some subjunctive sentences begin with a verb, and they all follow an "if then" pattern. Again, the verb in the "if" clause (which is the verb starting the sentence) should be translated as *were* while the other subjunctive II verb should be translated as *would*. Here are examples:

Gäbe es keine Armut, so gäbe es keine Kunst—If there were no poverty, there would be no art.

Hätte ich das gewußt, wäre ich nicht dahingegangen—If l had known that, I would not have gone there.

31.6. The subjunctive II in conjunction with the passive:

Whenever the subjunctive II is used in conjunction with the passive, the auxiliary will always be *wäre*.

When a subjunctive passive verb is part of the main clause, it should be translated as would have been . . . Examples are:

Es wäre von dem Gelehrten erwartet worden, daß er die Antwort wissen würde—It would have been expected of the scholar that he would know the answer.

Wenn das Geißlein sich nicht so gut versteckt hätte, wäre es eher gefunden worden—If the little goat had not hidden so well, he would have been found sooner.

When a subjunctive passive verb is part of an "if" clause, it should be translated as had been . . . Examples are:

Wenn es nur eher erklärt worden wäre—If it had only been explained sooner! Sie sieht aus, als wäre sie geküßt worden—She looks as if she had been kissed.

31.7. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Ohne Musik wäre das Leben ein Irrtum. (Nietzsche)
- 2. Ein Esel bleibt ein Esel, auch wenn er nach Rom käme.
- 3. Wenn er hier wäre, wäre sie glücklich.
- 4. Wäre die Wahrheit ein Bach (brook), hätten die Menschen Wasserscheu (hydrophobia).
- 5. Wenn er an den ehemaligen (former) Geliebten Fräulein Meiers denkt, sieht der Briefträger aus, als hätte er einen Holzapfel gegessen. (He is looking quite annoyed!)
- 6. Wenn es ein Maul (mouth) hätte, so biß es dich. (It looks mean and hostile. Or, it is quite obviously right in front of you.)
- 7. Wenn Arbeit so lustig und leicht wäre, so täte es der Bürgermeister selbst.
- 8. Ich wüßte nicht zu *leben*, wenn ich nicht noch ein *Seher* wäre dessen, was kommen muß. (Nietzsche)
- 9. Wenn es möglich gewesen wäre, den Turm (tower) von Babel zu erbauen, ohne ihn zu erklettern, es wäre erlaubt worden. (Kafka) (Note: do not add a would to the if clause!)
- 10. Sneewittchen erzählte den sieben Zwergen, daß seine Stiefmutter es hätte wollen umbringen lassen, der Jäger (hunter) hätte ihm aber das Leben geschenkt, und da wäre es den ganzen Tag gelaufen, bis es endlich ihr Häuslein gefunden hätte. (Note that es should be translated as she because the noun Sneewittchen is neuter.)
- 11. Niemand außer dem Briefträger hätte erwartet, daß der *einsichtsvolle*, die Zukunft der Erde behandelnde Aufsatz (essay) von Fräulein Meier geschrieben worden war.
- 12. Warum kann der *Hund* Furcht, aber nicht Reue (repentance) empfinden? Wäre es richtig zu sagen, "weil er nicht sprechen kann"? (Wittgenstein) (How do you know that kann and empfinden have to go together?)
- 13. Jeronimo war starr (rigid) vor Entsetzen; und gleich, als ob sein ganzes Bewußtsein (consciousness, mind) zerschmettert worden wäre, hielt er sich jetzt an dem

Pfeiler (column), an welchem er hatte sterben wollen, um nicht umzufallen. (Kleist)

14. Zarathustra über Jesus:

Wäre er doch in der Wüste geblieben und ferne von den *Guten* und Gerechten! Vielleicht hätte er leben gelernt und die Erde lieben gelernt—und das Lachen dazu . . . Er starb zu früh: er selber hätte seine Lehre widerrufen, wäre er bis zu meinem Alter gekommen. (Nietzsche) (So if Jesus had only lived to be forty, he would have thought just like Nietzsche!)

Vocabulary

- * als ob—as if das Alter (-s, -)—age
- * auch wenn—even if der Aufsatz (-es, -e)—essay
- * aus-sehen (i)—to seem, appear
- * außer—except for der Bach (-es, =e)—brook behandeln—to treat
- ** bis zu—to the point of bisse—subj. of beißen—to bite das Bewußtsein (-s)—consciousness, mind der Bürgermeister (-s, -)—mayor
- dazu—in additiondessen—of that (review 25.13)
 - ehemalig—former
 einsichtsvoll—insightful
 empfinden—to feel, perceive

das Entsetzen (-s)—horror

erbauen—to build

erklettern—to climb erlauben—to allow

- ** erwarten—to expect
- ** erzählen—to explain, tell
- * fern—far
- früh—earlygäbe—subj. of gebengeliebt—loved

- * gleich—immediately halten—to hold
- * hätte—subj. of haben der Holzapfel (-s, =)—crabapple der Irrtum (-s, =er)—error der Gerechte (-n, -n)—righteous one

käme—subj. of kommen laufen—to run, go

- * die Lehre (-n)—teaching, doctrine
- ** möglich—possible
- ** niemand—no one die Reue—repentance
- * selber—himself
 das Sneewittchen—Snow White
 spräche—subj. of sprechen
 starr (vor)—rigid (with)
 um-bringen—to kill
 um-fallen (i)—to fall down
- * wäre—subj. of sein
- * weil—because
- * welch—which, what widerrufen—to renounce
- * wüßte—subj. of wissen die Wüste (-n)—desert zerschmettern—to smash
- * die Zukunft-future

31.8 Subjunctive practice (not all of these are subjunctive, so be especially careful):

- 1. Wenn er hier wäre, ginge er mit uns.
- 2. Wenn er hier gewesen wäre, wäre er mit uns gegangen.
- 3. Wenn er ihr eine E-Mail schriebe, so wäre sie glücklich.
- 4. Sie sieht aus, als hätte sie viel zu tun.
- 5. Sie sah aus, als hätte sie viel getan.
- 6. Sie glaubt, sie sei freundlich.
- 7. Sie glaubte, sie sei freundlich.
- 8. Sie sei freundlich.
- 9. Wäre sie hier, so wäre er auch hier.
- 10. Er sagt, er habe viele Freunde.
- 11. Er sagt, er hätte viele Freunde.
- 12. Sie wünschte, sie hätte viele Freunde.
- 13. Er tat, als wäre alles in Ordnung.
- 14. Gott helfe ihm.
- 15. Gott hilft him.
- 16. Das läßt sich sagen.
- 17. Das ließe sich sagen, wenn es wahr wäre.
- 18. Wenn er seine Stimme nicht verloren hätte, so sänge er mit uns.
- 19. Es wäre schön, deutsch lesen zu können.
- 20. Nach Berichten (reports) der Polizei hätten die Räuber den Mord begangen (committed).
- 21. Wenn das jüngste Geißlein sich nicht so gut versteckt hätte, wäre es von dem Wolf gefunden und gefressen worden.

Other Subjunctive Forms

32.1. The subjunctive forms of the modals

Here are two charts giving the subjunctive forms of the modals:

The subjunctive I (formed from the infinitive stem of the modal)

	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ich	dürfe	könne	möge	müsse	solle	wolle
du	dürfest	könnest	mögest	müssest	sollest	wollest
sie	dürfe	könne	möge	müsse	solle	wolle
wir	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr	dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
Sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ich	dürfte	könnte	möchte	müßte	sollte	wollte
du	dürftest	könntest	möchtest	müßtest	solltest	wolltest
sie	dürfte	könnte	möchte	müßte	sollte	wollte
wir	dürften	könnten	möchten	müßten	sollten	wollten
ihr	dürftet	könntet	möchtet	müßtet	solltet	wolltet
sie	dürften	könnten	möchten	müßten	sollten	wollten
Sie	dürften	könnten	möchten	müßten	sollten	wollten

The subjunctive formed from the infinitive stem of the modal probably will not appear too often in your reading. Consequently I am giving you the chart primarily as a reference, in case you do come across it.

32.2. The subjunctive II of the modals appears more often; therefore, you should become familiar with it. Here are sample sentences:

Wenn er einundzwanzig wäre, dürfte er Schnaps trinken—If he were twenty-one, he would be permitted to drink brandy.

Er müßte dahin gehen, wenn er nicht krank wäre—He would have to go, if he were not sick.

Möchte generally will be translated as would like to: Fräulein Meier möchte ein Glas Schnaps trinken—Fräulein Meier would like to drink a glass of brandy.

Könnte generally will be translated as *could*: Es wäre gut, Bücher zu kaufen, wenn man die Zeit, sie zu lesen, mitkaufen könnte—It would be good to buy books if one *could* buy the time to read them along with them. (Schopenhauer)

32.3. Note the following possible meanings of subjunctive modals:

dürfte-might be; wollte-wished; sollte-should

Das dürfte möglich sein-That might be possible.

Ich wollte, ich könnte gehen-I wished I could go.

Ich sollte studieren, anstatt einen Krimi zu lesen—I should study instead of reading a murder mystery.

32.4. Here is a comparison of the present indicative, past indicative, and subjunctive II of the modals *dürfen, können, mögen*, and *müssen*. Note that the infinitive

and the third person plural (they) present indicative have umlauts, as does the subjunctive. Therefore, whenever you see any of these modals with umlauts, be careful to note whether the verb is indicative or subjunctive, and try not to confuse them. Here is a chart:

	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen
present indicative				
er, es, sie	darf	kann	mag	muss
sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen
past indicative				
er	durfte	könnte	mochte	mußte
sie	durften	konnten	mochten	mußte
subjunctive II				
er	dürfte	könnte	möchte	müßte
sie	dürften	könnten	möchten	müßten

Fortunately the definition for both *konnte* (indicative) and *könnte* (subjunctive) is could.

32.5. Hätte in conjunction with a modal will always indicate something that could (would, should) have taken place, but which did not. Here are examples:

Er hätte gehen können - He could have gone.

Fräulein Meier hätte das dem Bürokraten nicht sagen sollen—Fräulein Meier should not have said that to the bureaucrat.

32.6. Translate these sentences (vocabulary is on p. 234):

- 1. Wenn alle Lügner Hafer (oats) fräßen, müßten die Pferde verhungern.
- 2. Der *Geschichtsschreiber* berichtet, was geschehen ist, der Dichter, was geschehen könnte. (Aristoteles)
- 3. Vielleicht hätte der Mann seiner Frau sein Geheimnis (seine Freude an Musikdosen) erzählen sollen.
- 4. Wer möchte mit Fräulein Meier in die Schweiz fahren?
- 5. Der Faule sagt: Es ist ein Löwe draußen; ich könnte getötet werden auf der Gaße. (Proverbs)
- 6. Die deutsche Sprache hat einen großen Reichtum an Sprichwörtern. Gleichwohl dürfte es nicht übel sein, auch die Sprichwörter aus anderen Sprachen zu borgen, die sich kurz und nachdrücklich übersetzen lassen. (Lessing)

32.7. The conditional, formed by the subjunctive form of werden (würde)

Occasionally, the subjunctive form of werden will be used in conjunction with other verbs. (The conjugation of the subjunctive form of werden is given to you in 31.1.) Note that the subjunctive II of werden (generally either würde or würden) will almost always mean would! Here are examples:

Ich würde gehen, wenn ich die Zeit dafür hätte-I would go if I had the time for it.

Er würde das tun müssen, wenn er hier wäre—He would have to do that if he were here.

Es gibt eine Menge Dinge in der Welt, die ich gerne anders hätte als sie in Wirklichkeit sind; aber in einer Welt ohne Böses würde das Leben nicht lebenswert sein—There are a number of things in the world that I would like to have different from what they are in reality, but in a world without evil, life would not be worth living. (T.S. Eliot)

32. 8. Note: do *not* confuse *würde* with its non-subjunctive form *wurde*, which means *became* when used as the only verb: Es *wurde* dunkel—it *became* dark or *was* when used passively: Es *wurde* oft *getan*—it *was* often *done*.

The conditional will *always* have an umlaut: Er *würde* das getan haben—he *would* have done that. . .

32.9. Translate these sentences:

- I. Zarathustra sagte: "Ich würde nur an einen Gott glauben, der zu tanzen verstünde." (Nietzsche)
- 2. Wäre Narrheit (foolishness) das Zipperlein (gout), würde man wenige Leute beim Tanze sehen.
- 3. Wenn Gott ein Land strafen (punish) wollte, würde er den Herren die Weisheit nehmen.
- 4. Wenn die Keuschheit (chastity) zum Tanze käme, so würde sie auf gläsernen Schuhen tanzen.
- 5. Wäre es nicht um der Hoffnung willen, das Herz würde brechen.
- 6. Wenn Wünsche Pferde wären, so würden Bettler reiten.
- 7. Eine chassidische (*Hasidic*) Geschichte:
 Rabbi Chajim von Krosno (a place), ein Schüler (*disciple*) des Baalschem (a name), sah einst mit seinen Schülern einem Seiltänzer (*tightrope-walker*) zu. Er war so *tief* in den Anblick *versunken*, daß sie ihn fragten, was es sei, das seine Augen an die törichte Schaustellung (*exhibition*) banne (*attracted*). "Dieser Mann", antwortete er, "setzt sein Leben aufs Spiel (*gambles with his life*), ich könnte nicht sagen

weswegen. Gewiß aber kann er, während er auf dem Seil (rope) geht, nicht daran denken, daß er mit seiner Handlung (action) hundert Gulden (guilders) verdient; denn sowie (as soon as) er dies dächte, würde er abstürzen" (fall off). (Buber)

Vocabulary

- abfallen (i)—to fall off der Anblick (-es, -e)—spectacle bannen—to attract
- ** bauen—to build borgen—to borrow
- * dächte—subj. of denken
- * dürfte (sometimes) might be fräße—subj. of fressen to eat like an animal das Geheimnis (-es, -sse) secret
- ** geschehen—to happen
- ** gewiß—certain gläsern—glass gleichwohl—nevertheless die Handlung (-en)—action
- * lassen (r.)—can be der Lügner (-s, -)—liar

- * möchte—would like to; might nachdrücklich—emphatic, firm der Schüler (-s, -)—disciple spielen—to play töricht—foolish übel—evil, bad, wicked übersetzen—to translate verdienen—to earn verhungern (i)—to starve versunken—absorbed
- verstünde—subj. of verstehen—to know how to
 weswegen—on what account
- * wollte (sometimes)—wished
- * würde—would zu-sehen (i)—to watch

Reading Selection: Der Schwan (Slawomir Mrozek)

(If you don't wish to use a dictionary, vocabulary for this section is given in Appendix K.)

Im Park befand sich ein Teich (pond). Seine Zierde (adornment) war ein Schwan. Eines Tages war der Schwan verschwunden. Halbstarke hatten ihn gestohlen.

Der <u>Vorstand der Städtischen Grünanlagen</u> (municipal park district) besorgte einen neuen Schwan. Um ihm das Los seines Vorgängers zu ersparen, wurde ihm ein eigener Wächter zugeteilt.

Dieser war ein alter, seit Jahren vereinsamter Mann. Als er seinen Posten antrat, begann es abends bereits kalt zu werden. Niemand kam mehr in den Park. Der Alte ging um den Teich herum, paßte auf den Schwan auf und sah manchmal in die Sterne. Ihn fror. Er hatte Lust, <u>auf einen Sprung</u> (on a whim) in die kleine Wirtschaft (inn) in der Nähe des Parks zu gehen. Schon wollte er sich auf den Weg machen, als ihm der Schwan einfiel. Er befürchtete, dieser könne während seiner Abwesenheit gestohlen werden. Dann verlöre er seinen Posten. Er verzichtete (gave up) also auf sein Vorhaben.

Aber die Kälte quälte (tormented) ihn immer mehr und vertiefte seine Einsamkeit. Schließlich beschloß er, zusammen mit dem Schwan in die Wirtschaft zu gehen. Selbst wenn jemand in den Park käme, um sich der schönen Natur zu erfreuen, würde er das Fehlen des Schwans nicht sofort bemerken. "Die Nacht ist sternklar, aber ohne Mondschein, und wir kommen gleich zurück", dachte er und nahm den Schwan mit.

Die Wirtschaft war voll Wärme und Bratenduft (smell of baking). Der Alte setzte den Schwan sich gegenüber auf einen Stuhl, um ihn im Auge zu behalten. Dann bestellte er ein bescheidenes (modest) Mahl und ein Gläschen Wodka, um sich aufzuwärmen.

Als er sein Hammelfleisch (mutton) mit Lust und Zufriedenheit verzehrte (consumed), fiel ihm auf, daß ihn der Schwan ganz eigenartig ansah. Der Vogel tat ihm leid. Solange dieser vorwurfsvolle (reproachful) Blick auf ihm ruhte, konnte er nicht essen. Er rief den Kellner (waiter) und bestellte für den Schwan eine in warmem, gezuckertem Starkbier aufgeweichte Semmel. Der Schwan wurde fröhlich, und nachdem sie ihr Mahl beendet hatten, kehrten beide munter und zufrieden auf ihren Posten zurück.

Am nächsten Abend war es wieder kalt. Die Sterne glänzten besonders stark, und jeder Stern war wie ein kalter Nagel im warmen, einsamen Herzen des Alten. Aber er kämpfte gegen die Versuchung.

In der Mitte des Teichs schwamm als sanft leuchtender weißer Fleck (spot) der Schwan.

Bei dem Gedanken, welch ein Schauer (shudder) jeden durchdringen müsse, der in einer solchen Nacht mit Wasser in Berührung (contact) käme, wurde der Alte ganz gerührt. Sollte der arme Schwan gar nichts vom Leben haben? Bestimmt würde er lieber in einer warmen Ecke sitzen und etwas essen.

Er nahm also den Vogel unter den Arm und <u>begab sich</u> (proceeded) in die Wirtschaft.

Und wieder kam ein Abend, und wieder überfiel Melancholie den Alten. Aber diesmal war er fest entschlossen, nicht in die Wirtschaft zu gehen. Gestern auf dem Nachhauseweg hatte der Schwan getanzt und unglaubliche Sachen gesungen.

Als er am Ufer (shore) saß und in den Himmel oder in den leeren, beißend kalten Park blickte, fühlte er plötzlich ein zaghaftes (timid) Zupfen (tug) an seinem Hosenbein (trouser leg). Der Schwan war ans Ufer geschwommen, um ihn an etwas zu erinnern. Da gingen sie.

Einen Monat später wurde der Alte zusammen mit dem Schwan entlassen. Der Schwan torkelte (swayed) am hellichten Tage auf dem Wasser. Die Mütter, die mit ihren kleinen Kindern in den Park kamen, um sich zu erholen (relax) und den Vogel anzusehen, hatten sich beschwert (complained). Der Kinder wegen. Daraus ersieht man, daß moralische Haltung auch für den bescheidensten Posten erforderlich (necessary) ist.

If a Sentence Starts with a Verb

33.1. So far, you have been told that a sentence can begin with a verb

1. if the sentence is a question (cf. 6.6)

Ist Arbeit der beste Schlaftrunk—*Is* work the best sleeping-potion?

2. or if it is a command (cf. 6.6)

Lerne Geschichte, sonst bleibst du ewig ein Kind—*Learn* history, or else you will remain eternally a child.

3. or if the verb appears in the subjunctive I form and is followed by *wir*, the verb will be translated *let us* (cf. 30.8)

Studieren wir jetzt—Let us study now!

33.2. However, a sentence beginning with a verb can also signal an if . . . then construction.

This type of sentence will always contain two clauses separated by commas; the first clause will begin with a verb and the second clause generally will begin with the word so or dann. Here are examples:

Sagt Gott ja, so spricht die Schlange nein—If God says yes, the snake says no. Findet der Teufel jemanden müßig, so wird er ihm Arbeit schaffen—If the devil finds someone idle, he will create work for him.

33.3. These sentences are to be translated in the following way:

- 1. Begin the sentence with if;
- 2. find the subject of the sentence;
- 3. place the verb (found at the beginning of the German sentence) after the subject;
- 4. either translate so (or dann) as then, or omit so from your translation.
- 5. It is acceptable to add a "will" in the "then" clause if future is implied.

Here are more examples:

Hat der Fuchs den Schwanz verloren, so sagt er, er sei unnütz—If the fox has lost his tail, then he will say it is useless.

Redet das Geld, so schweigt die Welt-If money talks (then) the world will be silent.

33.4. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Tanzt ein Alter, so macht er viel Staub (dust). (This is mean!)
- 2. Will die Katze nicht mausen ("to mouse"), so laß sie draußen (outside).
- 3. Klopft die Not (need) an, so tut die Liebe die Tür auf. (At least the person in need hopes this will happen.)
- 4. Fällt das Brot, so fällt es auf die *Butterseite*. (Is this subjunctive or not? How do you know?)
- 5. Führt ein blinder Mann den anderen, werden beide nicht weit wandern.
- 6. Bellt (bark) ein alter Hund, so soll man aufschauen. (Denn ein alter Hund bellt nicht leichtfertig [irresponsibly].)
- 7. Spricht man vom Wolf, dann lauert er schon *hinterm Busch*. (The English equivalent for this might be: "Speak of the devil.")
- 8. Fehlt es dir an Wein, so trinke Bier.
- 9. Kommt der Berg nicht zu mir, so gehe ich zu ihm.
- 10. Hab' ich keine Küh', so hab' ich keine Müh'. (Is Küh' singular or plural?)
- II. Gäbe es keine Narren, so gäbe es keine Weisen. (If you wish to review es gibt, please turn to 9.1.)

- 12. Die Welt ist ein trunkener Bauer; hilft man ihm rechts in den Sattel, so fällt er links hinab.
- 13. Bekommt der Arme ein Stück Brot, so *reißt* es ihm der Hund aus der Hand. (Das Glück eines Armen ist allzu kurz!)
- 14. Fällt der Krug (jug) auf den Stein, so zerbricht er; und fällt der Stein auf den Krug, so zerbricht er auch.
- 15. Ist dein *Feind* auch nur wie eine Ameise *(ant)*, so *rechne* ihn doch unter den Elefanten. (No *Feind* is harmless!)
- 16. Tonio Kröger ging den Weg, den er gehen mußte, ein wenig nachlässig und ungleichmäßig . . . , und wenn er irrging, so geschah es, weil es für etliche (many) einen richtigen Weg überhaupt nicht gibt. Fragte man ihn, was in aller Welt er zu werden gedachte, so erteilte (imparted) er wechselnde Auskunft (information), denn er pflegte zu sagen (was in the habit of saying) . . . , daß er die Möglichkeiten zu tausend Daseinsformen in sich trage, zusammen mit dem heimlichen (secret) Bewußtsein, daß es im Grunde (fundamentally) lauter Unmöglichkeiten seien. (Thomas Mann, "Tonio Kröger")

Vocabulary

an-klopfen (i)—to knock auf-schauen (i)—to look up auf-tun—to open die Auskunft—information der Bauer (-s, -n)—farmer das Bewußtsein—awareness die Daseinsform (-en)—form of existence draußen—outside erteilen—to impart

- * fehlen (i)—to lack
- * führen—to lead gedenken (i)—to intend (im) Grunde—fundamentally heimlich—secret hinab-fallen (i)—to fall down
 - hinter—behind
 irr(e)gehen (i)—to go astray
 der Krug (-es, =e)—jug
 lauern (i)—to lie in wait; lurk

- * lauter—nothing but
- * links—left
 die Mühe (-n)—effort
 nachlässig—careless
 der Narr (-en, -en)—fool
 rechnen—to calculate, to consider
- * rechts—right
 reißen—to rip, tear
 der Sattel (-s, =)—saddle
- das Stück (-s, -e)—piece
 überhaupt—at all, generally;
 überhaupt nicht—not at all ungleichmäßig—irregular wechselnd—changing
- ** weil—because
- weit—far
 zerbrechen (zerbricht)—to break
 into pieces
- * zusammen—together

Other Pronouns

In addition to the pronouns *ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, sie,* and *Sie,* there are other pronouns which you have encountered already. Here is a summary of them.

34.1. Alles, etwas, and nichts

Three pronouns are undeclined, regardless of whether they are nominative, accusative, genitive, or dative. They are:

alles—everything; etwas—something; and nichts—nothing.

Here are examples:

Es hat alles seinen Zweck—Everything has its purpose.

Etwas fehlt—**Something** is missing.

Was nichts kostet, taugt nichts—Whatever costs nothing amounts to nothing.

Occasionally, these three pronouns will be followed by an adjective that is capitalized. Such constructions should be translated as follows:

Alles Schöne gefällt dem Briefträger—Everything (that is) beautiful pleases the mailman.

Wer will etwas Neues hören?—Who wants to hear something new?

Zu seiner Überraschung geschah *nichts Außergewöhnliches* auf seiner Reise—To his surprise, *nothing* (that was) *unusual* happened during his trip.

34.2. Man, alle, jemand, niemand and wer

These pronouns are all declined in a manner similar to *der* words. Here are their declensions:

	one	everyone	someone	no one	who
nominative	man	alle*	jemand	niemand	wer
accusative	ein en	alle	jemand en	niemand en	we n
genitive	ein es	all er	jemand es	niemand es	wessen
dative	ein em	all en	jemand em	niemand em	we m

^{*}Note that *alle* is plural in German: Alle *sind* hier—Everyone *is* here.

34.3. Jeder, ander and viel

These pronouns are technically adjectives, and they are declined as if they were adjectives used as nouns. However, they are never capitalized. Their definitions are: *jeder*—each; *ander*—other; and *viel*—many. Here are examples:

Jeder singt auf seine Weise, der eine laut, der andere leise—Each (person) sings in his (own) way—the one sings loudly, the other sings softly.

Jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied—Each one is the smith (creator) of his happiness. Auch der Unordentlichste verlangt von anderen Ordnung—Even the most disorganized one demands order from others.

Viele werden Heilige um ihres Magens willen—*Many* become saints for the sake of their stomach(s).

ander is especially difficult to determine whether or not it is singular or plural:

Tadle *andere* nicht deiner Mängel wegen—Do not fault *others* on account of your own failings. (plural)

Anderer Fehler sind gute Lehrer—The errors of others are good teachers. (plural) Wer anderen alles recht machen will, muß früh aufstehen—Whoever wants to make everything right for others must get up early.

ander preceded by ein will always be singular: Er hilft einem anderen—He helps another.

Moreover, ander (like viel and jeder can also be used as an adjective modifying a noun):

Es kann kein Prophet *den anderen* [Propheten] ansehen, ohne zu lachen—No prophet can look at the other without laughing. (singular)

Es kann kein Prophet *die anderen* ansehen, ohne zu lachen—No prophet can look at the others without laughing. (plural)

Andere Fehler sind schwer zu entdecken-Other errors are difficult to discover.

Eine Hand wäscht die andere [Hand]—One hand washes the other.

34.4. Der, die, das, and die

The definite articles can also occasionally be used as pronouns. This is particularly true when one of the clauses begins with wer or der. Here are examples:

Wer alte Säcke mit Seide näht, der ist verrückt—Whoever sews old sacks with silk is crazy. (For an idiomatic translation, eliminate the der.)

Der ist weise, der die Zeit nimmt, wie sie ist—He (or that one) is wise, who takes time as it is.

Die Guten müssen *den* kreuzigen, *der* sich seine eigene Tugend erfindet—The good (i.e. the self-righteous people) must crucify *him* (or *that one*)—who invents his own virtue for himself. (Nietzsche)

Die Guten nämlich, *die* können nicht schaffen! *Die* sind immer der Anfang vom Ende—The good namely, *they* cannot create! *They* are always the beginning of the end. (Nietzsche)

34.5. Articles also can be used as placeholders for a previously used noun.

Here are examples:

Es gibt keinen Stolz wie *den* eines reich gewordenen Armen—There is no pride like *that* [pride] of a poor person who has become rich.

Ein Geiziger hat zwei Töchter; die eine heißt "Bringher", die andere heißt "Tragher".—A miser has two daughters; the one is called "Bring-here" and the other is called "Carry-here."

34.6. Einer and eines (and eine)

Although the indefinite article *ein* does not usually have an ending in the masculine nominative or neuter nominative and accusative cases, it will have an ending if it refers to a noun used in a different part of the sentence.

Note that the noun following einer, eines, eine, etc. will be in genitive case: Here are examples:

Einer meiner Handschuhe fehlt—One of my gloves is missing.

Eines seiner Kinder ist krank—One of his children is sick.

Eine der Idealforderungen des Christentums lautet: Du sollst den Nächsten lieben wie dich selbst: One of the ideal commandments of Christianity is: Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself. . .

Occasionally, einer can be used to refer to one specific person:

Wenn zwei auf einem Pferd reiten, muß einer hinten sitzen—When two ride on one horse, one must sit behind.

Inzwischen rede ich als *einer*, der Zeit hat, zu mir selber. Niemand erzählt mir Neues: so erzähle ich mir mich selber—Inbetween I speak to myself as *one* who has time. No one tells me anything new: so I will explain myself to myself. (Nietzsche)

34.7. Translate these sentences:

- I. Wer im *dreißigsten* Jahr nichts weiß, im *vierzigsten* nichts ist, im *fünfzigsten* nichts hat, der lernt nichts, wird nichts und kommt zu nichts.
- 2. Wer nichts für andere tut, tut nichts für sich.
- 3. Wer weiter will, als sein Pferd kann, der steige ab und gehe zu Fuß.
- 4. Einer teilt reichlich (abundantly) aus und hat immer mehr; ein anderer kargt (is stingy), wo er nicht soll, und wird doch ärmer. (Proverbs)
- 5. Eines der Sprichwörter, das Fräulein Meier besonders lieb ist, lautet: Pfau (peacock), schau auf deine Beine.
- 6. Seinem Schicksal (fate) mag niemand entrinnen.
- 7. Wer will, dem ist alles möglich.
- 8. Viele wären Feiglinge, hätten sie genug Mut.
- 9. Es hackt keine Krähe der anderen die Augen aus.
- 10. Es geschieht nichts Neues unter der Sonne.
- II. Wenn Hegel alles Wirkliche als vernünftig erklärte, stützte er einen Realismus, der die Dichtung, Philosophie und Religion nicht mehr als erste Lebensaufgaben empfand, sondern politische, wirtschaftliche und wissenschaftliche Interessen in den Vordergrund schob. (Martini)
- 12. Es ließe sich alles trefflich schlichten (performed), könnte man die Sachen zweimal verrichten (execute, do). (Goethe)

Vocabulary

- ab-steigen (i)—to dismount
- * **alle**—everyone
- ** alles—everything
 aus-hacken—to peck out
 aus-teilen—to share
 das Bein (-s, -e)—leg
- * besonders—especially
- * die Dichtung (-en)—literature dreißig—thirty empfinden—to perceive entrinnen (i)—to escape
- * entweder . . . oder either . . . or erklären to explain
- ** etwas—something der Feigling (-s, -e)—coward
- * fünfzig—fifty
- * **gleich**—immediately die **Krähe** (-n)—crow

- ** lassen (r)—can be (note 29.6)
 lauten—to go, to read, to sound
 die Lebensaufgabe (-n)—life's work
 - lieb—dear

die Mut-courage

die Sache (-n)-matter

schieben—to push

schauen (auf)—to look at

stützen—to support

trefflich—excellent vernünftig—reasonable

- * vierzig—forty der Vordergrund (-es, -e)—foreground
- ** weiter—further
- * wirklich—real
- * wirtschaftlich—economic
- * wissenschaftlich—scientific

I. Aus der Fröhlichen Wissenschaft

Wie, wenn (what if) dir eines Tages oder Nachts ein Dämon in deine einsamste Einsamkeit nachschliche (crept) und dir sagte: "Dieses Leben, wie du es jetzt lebst und gelebt hast, wirst du noch einmal und noch unzählige Male leben müssen; und es wird nichts Neues daran sein, sondern jeder Schmerz und jede Lust und jeder Gedanke und Seufzer (moan) und alles unsäglich Kleine und Große deines Lebens muß dir wiederkommen, und alles in derselben Reihe und Folge (order)—und ebenso diese Spinne (spider) und dieses Mondlicht zwischen den Bäumen, und ebenso dieser Augenblick und ich selber. Die ewige Sanduhr des Daseins wird immer wieder umgedreht—und du mit ihr, Stäubchen (little speck of dust) vom Staube!" Würdest du dich nicht niederwerfen und mit den Zähnen knirschen (gnash) und den Dämon verfluchen, der so redete? Oder hast du einmal einen ungeheuren (wonderous) Augenblick erlebt, wo du ihm antworten würdest: "Du bist ein Gott und nie hörte ich Göttlicheres!"

II. Vgl. Aus dem Willen zur Macht

Gesetzt (assumed), wir sagen ja (yes) zu einem einzigen Augenblick, so haben wir damit nicht nur zu uns selbst, sondern zu allem Dasein ja gesagt. Denn es steht nichts für sich [allein], weder in uns selbst, noch in den Dingen: und wenn nur ein einziges Mal unsere Seele wie eine Saite (lyre) vor Glück gezittert und getönt hat, so waren alle Ewigkeiten nötig, um dies Eine Geschehen zu bedingen-und alle Ewigkeit war in diesem einzigen Augenblick unseres Jasagens . . . erlöst, gerechtfertigt und bejaht.

Placement of Commas

Commas are crucial for determining how to break sentences up in order to translate them correctly. They are especially troublesome because sometimes they indicate that clauses should continue (when used in sequences and in appositional phrases) while other times they signal when the sentence should be broken up into a separate unit. Note the following ways in which commas are used:

35.1. Sequences:

When commas are used in sequences, they are not breaking up the sentence, and you must continue with it in order to translate the sentence correctly.

I. Commas are used in lists to divide off items (but not before the **und** at the end):

Der Briefträger ist **fleißig, klug, verantwortlich** und nett—The mailman is hardworking, clever, responsible, and nice.

2. This can also happen when adjectives include overloaded adjectives:

Ein **junger**, **auf** ein Verbrechen angeklagter Spanier—a young Spaniard accused of a crime

35.2. Commas are placed around appositional phrases:

Die Foto-Voltaik, die Umwandlung des Lichts in Strom, hatte Schlagzeilen gemacht—Photo-voltaics, the transformation of light into current, had made headlines.

Er lebte in Feindschaft mit seinem Halbbruder, dem Grafen Jakob dem Rotbart—He lived in animosity with his half-brother, the Count Jacob the Redbeard

35.3. Clauses:

1. A comma is used before and/or after each subordinate clause to separate it from the main clause:

Drei leben **freilich, wenn** zwei nicht heim sind—Three live peacefully, when two aren't home

Wo sich eine Tür **schließt**, öffnet sich eine andere—Where one door closes, another one opens

Wer weiß, was der Abend bringt—Who knows what the evening will bring Der Mann, den Fräulein Meier liebt, ist glücklich—The man whom Fräulein Meier loves is fortunate.

Sometimes these sentences can seem interminable (and I have put a / where the breaks should be): Hartmann von Aues Versepos "Der arme Heinrich",/ dessen Stoff in Gerhart Hauptmanns gleichnamigen Drama weiterlebt,/ ist die Geschichte eines Ritters,/ der vom Aussatz befallen wird, /den nur der freiwillige Opfertod eines unschuldigen Mädchens heilen kann/Die Einsicht des Ritters,/ daß es töricht sei, /sich dem entziehen zu wollen, /was über ihn verhängt ist, /rettet dem Mädchen das Leben /und verschafft dem Ritter Heilung durch göttliche Gnade—Hartmann von Aue's verse epic "Poor Heinrich," /whose material continues to live in Gerhart Hauptmann's drama of the same name, /is the story of a knight who is afflicted with leprosy,/ whom only the voluntary sacrifice of an innocent girl can heal/The insight of the knight/ that it is foolish to want to withdraw from what is given to him [as an affliction]/ saves the girl's life/ and creates salvation for the knight through divine grace.

Moreover, while everything within a relative clause is linked together, a relative clause can "split up" a main clause:

Der Mann hört den Kindern, die Weihnachtslieder singen, zu—The man listens to the children who are singing Christmas songs.

Da in der Hausapotheke ein bestimmtes Medikament nicht vorhanden war, wurde mein Vater, der Kaufmann war, ersucht, das Medikament aus Neunkirchen mitzubringen—Because a specific medicine was not available in the medicine chest, my father, who was a merchant, was requested to bring the medicine from Neunkirchen.

Der moderne Mensch wird getadelt, daß er von der Technik, auf die er so stolz sei, nicht den richtigen Gebrauch mache—Modern man is scolded that he does not make the correct use of technology of which he is so proud. (C.R. Goedsche)

2. Commas separate main clauses joined by und or oder:

Er **kam, und** wir aßen—He came and we ate.
But not if an element in the first has to be understood in the second:
Er kam und aß—He came and ate

3. Commas are always placed before the other co-ordinating conjunctions (*aber, sondern, denn*), whether they introduce a clause or a phrase:

Liebe deine **Nachbarn**, **aber** lege den Zaun nicht nieder—Love your neighbors, but don't take down the fence

Warum kann der Hund **Furcht, aber** nicht Reue empfinden—Why can a dog perceive fear, but not repentance?

4. Commas are sometimes used to join two main clauses when the equivalent English would normally have a semicolon:

Der Arzt hilft, die Natur heilt—The doctor helps; nature heals

Die Wärter **entfernten sich, der Tiger** war eben reichlich gefüttert worden—The guards withdrew; the tiger had just been fed abundantly. (Kafka)

Das Mädchen lächelte **die ganze Zeit, sie** schien sehr glücklich zu sein—The girl smiled the whole time; she seemed to be very happy.

35.4. Prior to 1996, commas were put at the end of a clause to introduce a *zu* construction:

Um Spengler richtig zu verstehen, muß man begreifen, daß in seinem Werk der Versuch gemacht wird, **eine Theorie geschichtlicher Entwicklungen zu finden**—In order to understand Spengler correctly, one must realize that in his work the attempt is made to find a theory of historical developments. (C.R. Goedsche)

35.5. Translate these sentences (Because these are all hard, they are included in the answer key in Appendix J).

- I. Die Schule reißt die Kinder während der kostbarsten Entwicklungszeit aus dem Kreis der Familie, beraubt sie des Glückes der Freiheit und macht aus dem Kinde ein abgehetztes, gedrücktes Geschöpf, dem ein Ausdruck der Müdigkeit, Furcht und Langweile anhaftet, während es mit den Lippen fremde Worte in einer fremden Sprache wiederholt. (Thomas Mann)
- 2. In den höheren Pariser Kreisen galt es als ein exklusives Vergnügen, die Vorstellungen von dem Marquis de Sade in dem "Schlupfwinkel für den moralischen Auswurf der bürgerlichen Gesellschaft" zu besuchen.
- 3. Wenn man einmal glaubt, eine *Regel* [über die deutsche Sprache] gefunden zu haben, welche *festen Grund* bietet, um einen Augenblick in dem allgemeinen Wirrwarr und *Tumult* der zehn Redeteile auszuruhen, so vernimmt man in der *Grammatik*: "Der Schüler gebe acht auf folgende *Ausnahmen*." (Mark Twain)
- 4. Der Gelehrte war ein kleiner, schäbig gekleideter Mann, dessen Augen stets in der Klasse umherblickten, aber niemals den Studenten ansahen, mit dem er sprach.
- 5. Die Öffnung des Weltraums (by means of space travel) könnte unseren, die Erde zum Maßstab machenden *Provinzialismus* überwinden und uns eine neue Vision von der Größe der Schöpfung vermitteln, nämlich die Einsicht, daß Erde und Menschheit, ihr *Raum* und ihre Zeit nur ein Teil des Ganzen sind. (Paul Tillich)
- 6. Das moralische Urteil gehört, wie das religiöse, einer Stufe der Unwissenheit zu, auf der selbst der Begriff des *Realen*, die Unterscheidung des Realen und *Imaginären* noch fehlt: so daß "Wahrheit" auf solcher Stufe lauter *Dinge* bezeichnet, die wir heute "Einbildungen" nennen. (Nietzsche)

Vocabulary

abgehetzt—worn out
acht geben—to pay attention to
allgemein—general
anhaften—to cling
der Ausdruck (-s ==)—expression
ausruhen—to rest
der Auswurf—scum
besuchen—to attend, to visit
bezeichnen—to designate
bieten—to offer
die Einbildung (-en)—illusion,

deception
die Entwicklungszeit—time of
development
gedrückt—oppressed

- gelten—to be valid das Geschöpf—creature der Kreis (-es, -e)—circle die Langweile—boredom
- * lauter—nothing but der Maßstab (-s, -e)—measure, standard

die Müdigkeit-exhaustion das Redeteil (-s, -e) - part of speech der Schlupfwinkel (-s, -)—hiding corner die Schöpfung—creation stets—contstantly die Stufe (-n)—stage überwinden—overcome umherblicken—to look around die Unterscheidung (-en) differentiation

das Urteil (-s, -e)—judgment das Vergnügen (-s, -)—pleasure vernehmen—perceive vermitteln—to convey die Vorstellung (-en)—perform-

der Weltraum—world space

der Wirrwarr—confusion

ance

Troublesome Words

About the only thing that these words have in common is that they are all troublesome. I have included them here so that you can take special note of them. First, here is a list of the words discussed in this chapter (which are arranged alphabetically):

36.1. The Troublesome Words

```
all—all, every
                                      gelingen—to succeed (36.12)
alle-everyone
                                      gerade-straight, just
als—when, than, as
                                      gleich—equal, immediately
also - thus, so
                                      kennen-to know
auch—also, even
                                      können—to be able to, can
auch wenn-even if
                                      lauter (adj.)—pure (adv.)—nothing
da—there, since, it
                                         hut
denn-because, for
                                      mehr — more
doch-still, nevertheless, after all
                                      nachdem—after
einige—several
                                      nicht-not
erst-only, not until, first
                                      nicht mehr—no longer
fehlen—to lack
                                      nichts-nothing
gefallen—to please (36.12)
                                      noch—yet, still
gehen—es geht mir gut—I am fine
                                      noch nicht-not yet
  (36.12)
                                      weder . . . noch — neither . . . nor
```

Troublesome Words continued

selbst—self, even um...willen—for the sake of

so—thus, so, just, then
so ein, ein so—such a

um...zu—in order to
voll—full, full of

stehen—to stand, be, to be written on zu—to, too, closed

um—at, around

36.2. All is used with or without endings. When there is an ending, it is always strong. The strong singular ending is used rarely; it occurs mainly in stereotyped phrases and in proverbial expressions. Here is an example:

Aller Anfang ist schwer—Every beginning is difficult.

All with an ending is the plural of jeder (each, everyone), and it means every single one of them; it precedes nouns and follows pronouns. Here are examples:

Morgen, morgen, nur nicht heute, sagen *alle* faulen Leute—Tomorrow, tomorrow, only not today, say *all* lazy people.

Wir alle haben das gewußt—All of us have known that.

36.3. Alle often will mean everyone (cf. 34.2). Examples are:

Es werden nicht *alle* in das Himmelreich kommen—Not *everyone* will come into the Kingdom of Heaven.

Arm und reich, vor Gott sind alle gleich—Poor and rich, before God, all are equal.

While everyone in English is singular, alle is plural.

36.4. Auch generally means also. However, auch preceding the noun it modifies means even.

Auch Fräulein Meier ist manchmal fleißig—Even Fräulein Meier is hardworking sometimes.

Auch wenn and wenn auch mean even if (cf. 23.6).

Auch wenn es Bratwürste (sausages/cats and dogs) regnet, hat Fräulein Meier sich entschieden, den Briefträger zu begleiten—Even if it rains cats and dogs, Fräulein Meier has decided to accompany the mailman.

36.5. Als is tricky because it can mean when, than, and as.

As a conjunction, *als* means *when* and it introduces dependent clauses referring to a single event or an action in the past. In these clauses, the verb will always be at the end, and will never be in the present tense. Here is an example:

Als der Student jünger war, fuhr er oft mit seinem Fahrrad — When the student was younger, he often rode his bicycle (cf. 23.3)

Als means than when used with a comparative (cf. 11.4): Er ist größer als ich—He is taller than I.

Als means as when it is followed by a noun:

Fräulein Meier kennt den Briefträger als einen sehr sensiblen Mann—Fräulein Meier knows the mailman as a very sensitive man.

Bei seinen Freunden gilt er als großer Dichter—Among his friends, he is considered (as) a great writer.

Als when used with the subjunctive can also mean as if (cf. 31.4):

Fräulein Meier sieht aus, *als hätte* sie viel zu tun — Fräulein Meier looks *as if* she *had* a lot to do.

Der Student tat, als wäre er glücklich—The student acted as if he were happy.

36.6. Also will always mean thus, so. Remember Nietzsche's Also sprach Zarathustra (Thus Spoke Zarathustra).

36.7. Da is one of the most troublesome German words because it is so versatile. As an adverb, da can mean here or there.

Da bin ich—Here I am.

Da blieb er, bis der Bus kam—He stayed there until the bus came.

Da can also mean then, at that time. Here are examples:

Da lachte der Briefträger — Then the mailman laughed.

Von da an—from that time on

hier und da-now and then.

Moreover, da used in conjunction with a preposition will mean it (cf. 12.1–12.3). An example:

Er hat einen schönen, mit Edelsteinen besetzten Füller, und er schreibt immer damit—He has a beautiful jewelled pen, and he always writes with it.

As a subordinating conjunction, da will mean since, because, in as much as, while, although (cf. 23.6):

Da Fräulein Meier nicht zu Hause war, konnte ihre Mutter sie nicht besuchen— Since Fräulein Meier was not at home, her mother could not visit her. When the verb appears at the end of a clause beginning with da, da will have to be a subordinating conjunction!

36.8. Denn generally means because, for (cf. 21.1). It rarely means then.

Fräulein Meier ist oft mit dem Briefträger, denn seine Gesellschaft gefällt ihr—Fräulein Meier is often with the mailman, for she likes his company.

Sometimes *denn* will appear in the middle of a sentence, in which case it will be used as a flavoring particle:

Wo ist er denn—Where (on earth) is he? Was ist denn los—What's going on?

36.9. Doch means however, yet, still, nevertheless, and after all. It can be used in a sentence in the following ways:

Das ist *doch* wahr—That *(really) is* true (even though you don't believe me).

Das kann *doch* nicht dein Ernst sein—You don't *really* mean that, do you?

Er ist dumm, aber sie liebt ihn *doch*—He is dumb, but she loves him *nevertheless*.

Doch (like the French si) also can be used as a one word contradiction to negative questions. Here is an example:

Haben Sie Tante Lotte immer noch nicht geschrieben?—Haven't you written Aunt Lotte yet? *Doch*!—I have *too* written her!

36.10. Einige means some. Einige Menschen lesen gern—Some people like to read. Do not confuse this word with einig, which means at one, united, in agreement, unanimous

36.11. Erst when used with age or time references will always mean only or not until. Here are some examples:

Es wurde erst heute fertig—It was not ready until today.

Erst nach seinem Tode wurde der Dichter weltberühmt—Only after his death did the poet become world-famous.

Otherwise, erst will mean first: Erst die Arbeit, dann das Vergnügen-First the work, then the pleasure.

36.12. Fehlen, gefallen, gehen and gelingen: Some verbs in German require an es as the subject of the clause, while in English the German noun in the dative case would seem to make a more appropriate subject. Here are examples:

Es fehlt dem Zoo an einem Elefanten (Literally: it lacks to the zoo on an elephant) — The zoo lacks an elephant.

Die Katzenminze *gefällt der Katze* (Literally: the catnip is pleasing to the cat)—The cat likes the catnip.

Es geht mir gut (Literally: it goes to me well)—I am fine.

Es gelingt der Katze, den Spielzeug zu fangen (Literally: it succeeds to the cat to catch the toy)—The cat succeeds in catching the toy.

36.13. Gerade as an adjective means straight, direct, honest. However, when used adverbially, gerade means quite, exactly, just, directly. Here is an example:

Das geschah *gerade* in dem Augenblick des großen Erdbebens—That happened *just* at the moment of the great earthquake.

36.14. Gleich as an adjective means equal, same. Die Studenten sind gleichen Alters—The students are the same age.

However, when used adverbially, *gleich* means *immediately*. Ich komme *gleich* wieder—I will return *immediately*.

36.15. Kennen (to be acquainted with) and können (to be able to) are often confused. Remember that kennen generally will be the only verb in the sentence, while können usually will function as a modal. Here are two sentences each containing the two verbs in both present and past tense:

Der Student kennt das Kind—The student knows the child.

Der Student kann viel essen—The student is able to eat a lot.

Der Student kannte das Kind-The student knew the child.

Der Student konnte viel essen-The student was able to eat a lot.

36.16. Lauter as an adjective means pure, genuine, true.

Von lauteren Brunnen fließen lautere Wasser-Pure water flows from pure wells.

However, as an adverb, lauter means nothing but.

Er trinkt lauter Wein-He drinks nothing but wine.

Er sieht den Wald vor *lauter* Bäumen nicht—He does not see the forest for the trees. (Literally: He does not see the forest on account of *nothing but* trees.)

36.17. *Mehr* usually means *more*. Das Flußpferd wiegt *mehr* als der Elefant—The hippo weighs *more* than the elephant.

Immer mehr means more and more. An example:

Fräulein Meier und der Briefträger bleiben immer mehr zusammen—Fräulein Meier and the mailman are together more and more.

However, nicht mehr can mean both no more and no longer.

Sie ist *nicht mehr* zu Hause—She is *no longer* at home.

Mehr will occasionally appear at the end of a clause:

Er hat kein Geld mehr—He has no more money.

Die Tochter des alten Mannes ist kein Kind *mehr*—The old man's daughter is *no longer* a child.

36.18. Nachdem generally is used as a subordinating conjunction meaning after.

Nachdem er seinen neuen roten Sportwagen gewaschen hatte, fuhr der Briefträger mit Fräulein Meier in die Stadt—After he had washed his new red sportscar, the mailman drove to the city with Fräulein Meier.

36.19. *Nicht* and *nichts.* Remember that *nicht* is always an adverb, while *nichts* is always a pronoun. Do not confuse them! Compare:

Wer *nichts* an die Angel steckt, fängt *nichts*—Whoever puts *nothing* on the fishhook captures *nothing*.

Der Briefträger ist nicht pessimistisch—The mailman is not pessimistic.

36.20. *Noch* generally will mean *yet*, *still*, *in addition to*. But it has the following meanings as well:

```
noch einmal—once more
noch nicht—not yet
noch nie—never (before)
weder . . . noch—neither . . . nor (cf. 21.1)
```

Weder Fräulein Meier noch der Briefträger ist zu Hause—Neither Fräulein Meier nor the mailman is at home.

36.21. *Selbst* (cf. 26.5) generally is used with the reflexive pronouns to emphasize their meanings. Examples are:

Arzt, heil dich selbst—Physician, heal thyself.

Jeder ist sich selbst der beste Freund—Everyone is for himself his best friend (Or: Everyone is his own best friend).

However, when selbst is placed in front of the noun, it will mean even.

Selbst der alte Vater des Briefträgers glaubt nicht an die Wahrhaftigkeit aller pessimistischen Sprichwörter—Even the old father of the mailman does not believe in the truth of all the pessimistic proverbs.

Selbst unser Herrgott kann es nicht allen recht machen—Even our Lord God cannot make it right for everyone.

36.22. So has a variety of meanings in addition to thus, so.

I. So can be used as a filler word, which sometimes can be translated *just*, or it can be omitted:

Das haben wir so zum Spaß gemacht-We have just done that for fun.

2. So ein or ein so will mean such a:

Das Kind hat ein so schönes Lächeln—The child has such a beautiful smile.

3. So can be used as a comparative (cf. 11.4):

Der Student liest so viel wie der Professor—The student reads as much as the professor.

- 4. So can also mean according to: So Nietzsche sind die Gelehrten gute Uhrwerke—According to Nietzsche, scholars are (like) good clocks.
- 5. So is often used in "if . . . then" clauses to mean then (cf. 23.3 and 33.2).

Bezahlen wir die Musik, so wollen wir dazu tanzen—If we pay for the music, then we also want to dance to it.

Wenn die Armut zur Tür eingeht, so fliegt die Liebe zum Fenster hinaus—If poverty comes to the door, then love flies out the window.

36.23. Stehen usually means to stand. But it can also mean be upright, be situated, be, stand still, and stop. Here are examples:

Tränen stehen ihm in den Augen—Tears are in his eyes.

Es steht in ihren Kräften—It lies in her powers.

Ich stehe nicht allein mit meiner Meinung-lam not alone in my opinion.

Orangensaft stand im Eisschrank—Orange juice was in the refrigerator.

Perhaps the most common meaning of *stehen* which may seem strange to you is *to be written*. Here is an example:

Auf dem Zettel steht "Entschuldigung" - On the note is written "excuse me."

36.24. *Um* (a review)

I. As a preposition, um can mean either around, or at (cf. 5.7). Er geht um die Ecke—He goes around the corner.

In reference to time, *um* means *at*: Fast jeden Abend *um* zehn Uhr studiert Fräulein Meier Erdkunde—Almost every evening *at* ten o'clock Fräulein Meier studies geography.

2. However, um . . . willen means for the sake of (cf. 5.13).

Er ist hier um seines Freundes willen—He is here for the sake of his friend.

3. And um... zu means in order to (cf. 20.6).

Wir sind hier, um zu werden—nicht, um zu sein—We are here in order to become—not in order to be.

258 German Quickly

36.25. *Voll* means *full, filled, complete, entire.* It can be used as an adjective in front of a noun to mean *full:*

Er hat eine volle Tasche—He has a full pocket.

In these cases, voll will have a normal adjective ending.

However voll also can appear directly in front of a noun, with either no ending or with an -er ending; and then it should be translated as full of. Here are examples:

Die Liebe ist voll Eifersucht-Love is full of jealousy.

Das Zimmer des Studenten ist voller Katzen—The room of the student is full of cats.

36.26. Zu is encountered most frequently as a preposition (cf. 5.4). However, it has the other following meanings:

I. When used as a participle with infinitives, it means to (Chapter 20):

Die Studenten haben viel zu lernen—The students have much to learn.

2. As an adverb, zu means to, closed, towards, shut.

Die Tür des Autos ist noch nicht zu—The car door is not yet shut.

3. When preceding an adjective or an adverb, zu can mean too.

Man kann nicht zu viel lachen—One cannot laugh too much. Es ist zu schön, um wahr zu sein—It is too good to be true.

4. When zu appears with a form of the verb to be, the verb following the zu must be translated passively (cf. 20.9):

Viel ist noch zu tun-Much is still to be done.

36.27. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Wie man ißt, so arbeitet man auch
- 2. Kommt einmal das Glück, so kommen fünf Sturmwinde (ill -winds) danach.
- 3. Unter Gleichen ist der beste Friede,
- 4. Wer Pech hat, den beißt ein Hund, auch wenn er ein Kamel reitet.
- 5. Jedem Lapp' (native of Lappland) gefällt seine Kapp'.

- 6. Auf einem von dem Briefträger an Fräulein Meier geschriebenen Zettel steht: "Ich liebe Dich."
- 7. Lieber zweimal fragen als einmal irregehen.
- 8. Gesundheit schätzt man erst, nachdem man sie verloren hat.
- 9. Unter der Brücke war der *wetterbraune*, *weißbärtige* Kopf eines *Ruderers* zum Vorschein gekommen, der, aus seinen ungelenken Bewegungen zu schließen, mit der *Lagune* nicht vertraut war. (C. F. Meyer)
- 10. Und in der Tat schien mitten in diesen gräßlichen (horrible) Augenblicken, in welchen alle irdischen Güter der Menschen zugrunde gingen und die ganze Natur verschüttet zu werden drohte, der menschliche Geist selbst wie eine schöne Blume aufzugehen. (Kleist)
- 11. Fräulein Meier und der Briefträger sind in die Stadt gefahren, um sich zu verheiraten!

Vocabulary

- * als ob—as if
- * an-sehen—to look at auf-gehen (i)—to rise
- * der Augenblick (-es, -e) moment
- * die **Bewegung** (-en)—movement
- * das Bild (-es, -er)—picture die Brücke (-n)—bridge drohen (i)—to threaten eng—narrow
- * entweder . . . oder either . . . or
- * fahren (i)—to drive, to go
- * der Friede (-ns, -)—peace
- * genug—enough
 das Gut (-s, -er)—property
 irdische Güter—worldly goods
 irre-gehen (i)—to go astray
- * lieber—preferably das Pech—bad luck

malen—to paint der Ruderer (-s, -)—rower, oarsman

ruhig—quiet

schätzen—to value

schließen-to conclude, infer

- * die **Stunde** (-n)—hour, period
- * die **Tat** (-en)—deed; in der **Tat**—in fact

ungelenk—awkward

verheiraten (r)—to marry

* verlieren—to lose
verschütten—to bury
vertraut—familiar
zum Vorschein kommen—to
appear

wetterbraun—weather-browned zugrunde gehen—to perish

Final Sentences

- 1. Ist jedes Ende so schwer wie aller Anfang?
- 2. Fast (almost) alles, was Fräulein Meier tut, ist ihrem Bräutigam angenehm (agreeable).
- 3. Bei der Hochzeitsfeier (wedding celebration) wird viel Sekt (champagne) getrunken.

ing) des Englischen 30 Stunden, des Französischen 30 Tage, des Deutschen 30 Jahre. Entweder reformiere man also diese Sprache, oder man lege sie zu den toten Sprachen, denn nur die Toten haben heutzutage noch Zeit genug, sie zu erlernen. (Mark Twain)

Strategies for Reading German; Suggested Schedule for Covering German Quickly

1. Reading for structure and reading for meaning

Effective reading is a combination of two processes, which involves looking at the specifics (trees) and the general meaning (forest) of the passage. The exercise sentences in *German Quickly* are essentially "tree" sentences because they are meant to help you focus on the specifics of grammatical constructions. The reading passages are "forest" sentences because they require you to take all of the information within the passage into consideration.

In individual ("tree") sentences, you focus on the forms and structures at a very basic level, such as identifying parts of speech, including determining the subject and the verb of each clause, and then you build up the message of the text from these units. To do this, you need to be able to recognize both individual words and larger structures, such as phrases and clauses; you also need to know how to break up interminable sentences into reasonable units. Your familiarity with case endings

and verb placement is often crucial for correct translation. By learning principles of German grammar, we have been mostly concentrating on "tree" processing.

General ("forest") processing involves "reading for meaning." While reading longer passages, you focus on the meaning, remembering the meanings which have been expressed so far, and making predictions about what meanings might be expressed next. You need to use "forest" processing to check the accuracy of your assumptions about the "tree" sentences within the text.

2. First impressions

Even before you start reading the text, you will probably have a rough idea of what it is about. Ideally, the passage will have a title, and it will concern a subject within your field of study. Instead of beginning to read it as if it contained English syntax, it is generally advisable to make some predictions about the content and the key words.

3. Skimming

Look over the text without making any special effort to read particular words or sentences. In the process, you will notice some words that you can recognize or guess. You may also notice that a certain unfamiliar word occurs repeatedly and decide to look it up before you start reading the text closely. The information gained in this way can help you make better predictions about the text. You should also mark these words in your dictionary in case you need to return to them to refine your original definition.

When skimming, it can be useful to pick out certain features:

- a. Cognates and proper names—Organisation, organisch, Fundamentalismus, Drama. Nietzsche
- b. Nouns and pronouns—it helps that the nouns are capitalized, but don't forget that pronouns can also be subjects.
- c. Verbs—especially auxiliaries such as *haben*, *sein*, *werden*, and the modals, as well as verbs at the end of a clause preceded by a *zu*: *zu gehen*, *verstanden zu haben*, etc.
- d. Words that you already know and are sure of
- e. Negatives nicht, kein, which can drastically affect the meaning of your reading
- f. Logical connectors—aber, doch, denn, und, and subordinating or relative pronouns such as wenn, als, was, wer, die, das, der, which give important information about the connections between different parts of the text. Because they can also tell you how to break up clauses these words are all extremely important to know.

- g. Punctuation, especially commas, which also give you information about how to break the sentence up.
- h. You will probably find it helpful to keep a list of grammar rules near your dictionary to use as a reference when you are reading.
- 4. Although a sentence may seem interminable, it is often composed of several smaller units; it is crucial to tackle a sentence bit by bit to determine its meaning. Breaks usually consist of commas, semi-colons, colons, or conjunctions such as und, denn, aber, sondern, daß, als, wenn, wie. A relative clause will be indicated by a relative pronoun (der, das, die, den, dem, denen, dessen, deren) mid-sentence preceded by a comma and with a verb at the end, which will have either a comma or a period after it. Each complete clause will have a subject and a verb within it; it is crucial to find the subject and the verb and place the verb after the subject and before the object in your English translation. (See chapters 6, 22, and 23.)

5. Taking care in deciding where to break clauses up

It is important to realize that conjunctions such as und and that commas can be treacherous with regard to deciding where to break up clauses, as they sometimes function as connectors and sometimes as dividers. If a clause does not have a comma before an und, it will continue beyond the und: Sie hat gesungen und getanzt—she has sung and danced. If a clause does have a comma before an und, the comma and the und combined indicate a break: Sie hat schön gesungen, und er hat sie stolz angesehen-She sang beautifully, and he looked at her proudly. (See Chapter 21.) Commas sometimes indicate sequential adjectives: Die glückliche, junge, mit vielen Feunden umgebene Frau war Studentin—The happy young woman surrounded with many friends was a student. However, they can also indicate breaks between clauses: Als sie siebzehn war, war sie beinah ein Star-When she was seventeen, she was almost a star. Als Zarathustra dreißig Jahre alt war, ging er in das Gebirge—When Zarathustra was thirty years old, he went to the mountains. Der Mann, der die Frau liebte, war der Briefträger-The man who loved the woman was the mailman. In German, whenever you see a comma followed by a form of der and a verb at the end of the clause, you will be dealing with a relative clause, and everything between the commas will belong together. (See chapters 23-25 and 35.)

6. Predicting the meaning

In addition to pre-reading skills, make a mental note of the content of the larger stretches of the text—paragraphs, for example (provided that they are a reasonable length). This makes it easier to follow the overall message of longer texts and the way the meanings are developed section by section.

7. Guessing

- a. Look at the word closely to see whether you recognize parts of the word which you know or which you can find in the dictionary. A knowledge of word-formation patterns in German might be necessary here. (Nachbar—neighbor; Nachbarschaft—neighborhood; einsichtsvoll—insightful; see also 17.7.)
- b. Look at the context for clues and make basic guesses about the kind of meaning the word could have. Do not stop reading when you come across an unfamiliar word, since valuable clues as to its meaning are often found in the rest of the sentence, or in the next sentence. Focus on meaning rather than structure, and to look for clues in the following words and the following sentence. It is often not necessary to understand the exact meaning of a word in order to comprehend the text.
- **8.** Although the text is linear, your reading of it does not have to be. You can move through the text as you begin to understand its content. Do not become fixated on any one word or any one sentence! German does not adhere to English word order, as you realize quite well by this point; therefore, you need not stick to English word order to translate correctly.
- 9. Do not panic! Sometimes, when you come across an especially difficult sentence, it is easy to lose sight of the fact that you nevertheless do know German. It is the linguistic equivalent of runners "hitting the wall," and it happens to most students, regardless of how well they might know German. If this happens to you, take a break from German, then return to it. Acquiring a reading knowledge of German is not a linear process; it involves progress and plateaus and then more progress. Often, a grammar explanation will not seem clear until after you have more of a conceptual framework to understand it. Learning to read German is like constructing a jigsaw puzzle: the more pieces you have in place, the easier it is to fit in the final pieces.

10. Building a vocabulary

This will improve reading efficiency enormously. There are two principal areas:

a. Items of general vocabulary which are likely to feature in a wide variety of texts. My *Important Word* list (Appendix B) is meant to be such a vocabulary. The most important words on the list are: auxiliary verbs (*haben*, *sein*, *werden*), modals, connectors and conjunctions, pronouns, prepositions, and negation words as well as common verbs and nouns. If you find yourself looking up the same word several times in the dictionary, you should probably memorize it—

or be able to find it quickly. You might find it helpful to paste my Important Word list into the front of your dictionary.

- b. Items of specialized vocabulary in your own field.
- c. I have given suggestions for memorizing words in Chapter 2, section 2.10. You may wish to review these.

Note: For other strategies for reading German, consult *Reading German* (Waltraud Coles and Bill Dodd, Oxford University Press, 1997)

SUGGESTED SCHEDULE FOR READING GERMAN QUICKLY

- 1. Introduction; get a general idea of the pronunciation (although this is difficult if you do not have a teacher).
- 2. chapters 1 & 2
- 3. chapter 3, part I
- 4. chapter 3, part II
- 5. chapter 4
- 6. chapter 5, part I
- 7. chapter 5, part II
- 8. chapter 6
- 9. chapter 7
- 10. chapters 8 & 9
- 11. chapters 10 & 11
- 12. chapter 12, including reading selection
- 13. chapter 13
- 14. chapter 14
- 15. chapter 15, including the reading selection
- 16. chapters 16 & 17 (sentences in 17 are optional)
- 17. chapters 18 & 19
- 18. chapters 20 & 21
- 19. chapters 22 & 23
- 20. chapters 24 & 25;
- 21. chapter 26; reading selections are optional
- 22. chapter 27—a really difficult assignment
- 23. chapter 28
- 24. chapter 29 (an easy assignment)
- 25. chapter 30
- 26. chapter 31
- 27. chapters 32 & 33

266

29. chapter 36

book, many questions you have about the grammar might fall into place.)

30. review (You may wish to skip reading selections or exercises at the end of chapters and use them when you review the entire book. Once you review the

Important Words

(* = most important words; bold faced words are those which are especially problematic)

der Abend-evening

- * aber—however, but
 aktuell—modern, up-to-date
 all—all, every
 alle—everyone
 allein—alone
 - alles—everything
- * als—than, when
- * also—thus, so
- * an (a, d) of, at, on
- * ander—other
 andere—others
 ändern—to change
 anfangen—to begin
 ansehen—to look at
 anstatt (g)—instead of
 die Antwort—answer
 die Arheit—work

- arm—poor
 die Art—manner, way, kind
 der Arzt—doctor, physician
- * auch—also, even auch wenn—even if

be situated

- * auf (a,d)—up, upon, at aufmachen—to open aufstehen—to get up der Augenblick—moment
- * aus (d)—out of, of, from
 aussehen—to look, appear
 außer (d)—except for, outside, in
 addition
 bald—soon
 bauen—to build
 der Baum—tree
 befinden, befand, befunden (r)—to
 - begreifen—to understand, grasp
 bei (d)—at, with, amongst, near by

beide-both das Beispiel-example; z.B.-for example bekommen, bekam, bekommen—to receive, get beschreiben—to describe besonders—especially bevor-before die Bewegung—movement das Bild-picture, image die Bildung-education, development bis (a)—until, as far as bitten (um)—to ask (for) blicken—to look bleiben, blieb, ist geblieben-to remain böse-bad, evil, guilty brauchen nicht-need not brechen (bricht), brach, gebrochen to break breit—broad, wide

* da—since (as a subordinating conjunction); (as an adverb) there, then, it dabei—besides, in so doing, thus, moreover

bringen, brachte, gebracht—to bring

* dagegen—on the contrary damals—at that time damit—so that, with it danken—to thank

der Christ-Christian

- * dann—then
 d.h.—das heißt—that is, i.e.
 das Dasein—being, existence
- * daß—that
 dein—your
 denen—to or for whom
 denken, dachte, gedacht—to think
 * denn—for, because

- * der—the (mas. nom., fem. dat. & gen., pl. gen.)
 deren—whose
- * derselbe—the same deshalb—therefore, for that reason dessen—whose
- * deutsch—German der Dichter—poet die Dichtung—writing, poetry
- * dieser—this
- * die—the (fem & pl. nom. & acc)
 das Ding—thing
- * doch—nevertheless
 dort—there
 drei—three
 du—you (informal)
 dunkel—dark
 durch (a)—through, by
 dürfen (darf)—to be permitted
 eben—just, flat
 ehe—before
 eigen—own, particular, unique
 eigentlich—actually
 ein—a, one
 einfach—simple
- einige—several, some
 einfallen—to occur to
 einmal— once
 einsam—lonely
 einzig— only, sole, unique
 das Ende—end
 endlich— finally
 entstehen, entstand, ist entstanden—
 to originate

entweder...oder—either...or
er—he, it
die Erde—earth
erfahren (erfährt)—to learn,
discover, experience
erhalten, erhielt, erhalten—to
receive

erinnern (r)—to remember erkennen, erkannte, erkannt-to recognize

erscheinen-to appear

- * erst—only, not until, first erwarten—to expect
- * es gibt—there is, there are essen, aß, gegessen—to eat etwa-about, approximately etwas-something fahren—to travel, go der Fall-case, instance, trap, fall
 - fallen, fiel, ist gefallen—to fall fast—almost faul—lazy (people); rotten (food) fehlen—to lack der Fehler-error der Feind-enemy fern—far, afar finden, fand, gefunden—to find; sich finden—to be located fleißig-hard-working folgen—to follow die Frage-question fragen (nach)—to ask (about) das Frankreich-France die Frau-woman die Freiheit-freedom die Freude-joy freuen (r)—to be pleased der Friede—peace

die Frucht—fruit

früh- early

fühlen (r)—to feel

die Furcht-fear

fürchten-to fear führen—to lead

- für (a)—for
- ganz-whole, complete, entirely, quite
- * geben (gibt), gab, gegeben—to give

die *Geburt*—birth der Gedanke-thought gefallen, gefiel, gefallen—to please gegen (a) - against, toward, approximately

gegenüber (d)—opposite, vis-à-vis die Gegenwart-present

* gehen, ging, ist gegangen—to go; es

geht um—it is a matter of gehören—to belong to der Geist-spirit, intellect geistig-spiritual, intellectual das *Geld*—money gelingen, gelang, ist gelungen—to succeed

gelten (gilt), galt, gegolten—to be valid, considered, true genau—exact, accurate genug-enough

gerade-just, straight die Gerechtigkeit-justice gern—gladly; er tut das gern—he

likes to do that

geschehen, geschah, ist geschehen to happen

die Geschichte—history, story

die Gesellschaft-society

das Gesicht-face

gestern—yesterday

gesund—healthy

gewesen (p. part. of sein)—been

gewiß—certainly gewöhnlich—usually

glauben—believe

gleich—equal, immediately gleichen (i)—to compare

das Glück—happiness, luck, fortune glücklich—happy, lucky, fortunate

der Gott-God, god

* groß-great, large der Grund- reason gut-good

* haben (hat) hatte, gehabt—to have

* halten (hält), hielt, gehalten—hold; support; stop; halten für—consider

halten für—consider

handeln—to act, deal with; sich handeln um—to be a matter of

hassen—to hate

das *Haupt*—head, chief, main *heiß*—hot

* heißen, hieß, gehießen—to be called; das heißt—that is (i.e.)

helfen, (hilft), half, geholfen—to help her—motion towards someone

der *Herr* (-n, -en) — mister, lord, master

das *Herz*—heart

heute—today

hin—motion away from someone der Himmel—sky, heaven

hinter (a, d)—behind

* *hoch*, höher, am höchsten—high die *Hoffnung*—hope

hören—to hear

ich—I
ihr—(pron.) you; her; (poss. adj.)

her, their, its

* immer—always; immer mehr—more and more

immer wieder—again and again
* in (a, d)—in, within, into, at

indem—while

das *Italien*—Italy *ja*—yes, indeed

das *Jahr*—year

das *Jahrhundert*—century *je*—ever

je . . . desto—the . . . the

- * jeder—each, every
- * jemand—someone
- * jetzt—now

jung-young

kein—no, none, not any

* kennen, kannte, gekannt—to know klar—clear

Riar—clear

* klein—little, small kommen—to come

* können (kann)—to be able to, can

der *Kopf*—head die *Kraft*—strength, power der *Krieg*—war

die *Kunst*—art

* *kurz*—short, brief

* *lachen*—to laugh das *Land*—country

* lang—long; 10 Jahre lang—**for ten**

years

lange—for a long time

langsam—slow

* lassen, ließ, gelassen—to let, leave;

sich lassen—can be

lauter—nothing but
leben—to live

das Leben—life

legen—to place die Lehre—doctrine, teaching

der *Lehrer*—teacher

leicht—easy, light

lernen—to learn

lesen (liest), las, gelesen—to read

letzt—last

* die *Leute*—people

die *Liebe*—love

lieben—to love

* lieber—rather, preferably

liegen, lag, gelegen—to lie, be situated

link, lak

links—left

die *Luft*—air *lügen*—to lie, fib

* machen— to make, do die Macht—power, strength

- das Mal—time (einmal—once)
- * man—one
- * manche—some
 manchmal—sometimes
 der Mann—man, husband
- * mehr—more (comparative of viel)
- * mehrere—several
 mein—mine
 meinen—to think, say, mean
 die Meinung—opinion
- * meist—most (superlative of viel)
 meistens—mostly
- * der *Mensch* (-en, -en)—person, human being *merken*—to notice
- * mit (d)—with, by die Mitte—middle
- * mögen (mag) may, like
- * *möglich*—possible der *Monat*—month
- * morgen—tomorrow der Morgen—morning
- * müssen (muß)—must; mußte—had
- * nach (d)—after, according to
 nachdem (subordinating conjunction)—after
 nachher—afterwards
 nächst—next
 die Nacht—night
 nah—near
 die Nähe—vicinity (cf. "nearness")
 namens—by name of
 nämlich—namely
 neben (a, d)—next to, near
- * nehmen (nimmt), nahm, genommen—to take nein—no nennen—to call, name
- neu—new
 * nicht—not

- nicht mehr-no longer
- * nichts—nothing
- * nie—never
- * niemand—no one
- * noch—still, yet; noch nicht—not yet; noch einmal—once again
- * *nun* now
- * nur— only
- * ob—whether, if
 oben—above
 obwohl—although
 oder—or
 oft—often
 ohne (a)—without
 paar—couple, few
 - paar— couple, few
 der Pfund—pound
 - plötzlich—suddenly
- * recht—right, correct, rather das Recht—right, justice rechts—to the right; on the right side reden—to speak die Regel—rule das Reich— empire
 - das *Reich* empire
 - der *Roman*—novel
 - rufen, rief, gerufen—to call
 - sagen— to say
 - der Satz— sentence
 - schauen—to look at
- * scheinen, schien, ist geschienen—to appear, seem; to shine
 - schlecht—bad, poor, wicked
 - schließen—to close schnell—quick
- * schon—already schön—beautiful
 - schreiben, schrieb, geschrieben—to
 - write
 - *schwarz*—black
 - die Schweiz-Switzerland
- * schwer-heavy, difficult

sehen (sieht), sah, gesehen-to see

* sehr—very, much

* sei (imperative, subj. 1)—be, is, was * sein (ist), war, ist gewesen—to be

* sein-his, its

* seit (d)—since, for

selber—self

* selbst—even, self selten—seldom, rare

setzen-to put, set, place sich—himself, herself, itself,

themselves

sicher—sure, safe, certainly

* sie—she, they, her, them, it Sie—you (formal)

der Sinn-meaning

sitzen, saß, gesessen-to sit

so—then, so; so . . . wie—as . . . as

sofort—immediately

sogar-even, indeed

solange—as long as

solch—such

* sollen (soll)—is to, should

* sondern—rather, on the contrary

spät-late

die Sprache-language sprechen—to speak

* der Staat—state

* die Stadt—city

stark—strong

statt (g)—instead of

* stehen, stand, ist gestanden—to

stand, to be

stellen—to put, place, lay, impose

* sterben (stirbt), starb, ist gestorben to die

still-quiet, quietly

* die Straße—street das Stück—piece

die Stunde-hour

suchen—to search for, seek

der Tag—day

täglich—daily

die Tat-deed

die Technik-technology

das Teil-part

teuer—expensive *tief*—deep

der Tod-death tot—dead

tragen (trägt), trug, getragen—to

carry, wear

treffen (r)—to meet

treten (tritt), trat, getreten-to walk,

step, enter trotz (g)—in spite of

trotzdem—nevertheless

* tun, tat, getan—to do

über (a, d)—over, about die *Uhr*—o'clock; watch

um (a)—around, at; um . . .

willen-for the sake of; um . . . zu-in order to

* und—and

ungefähr-approximately

unser-our * unter (a,d)—under, among

die Vergangenheit-past vergessen, vergaß, vergessen-to forget

vergleichen—to compare; vgl.—cf.

verlieren, verlor, verloren-to lose verstehen, verstand, verstanden- to

understand

versuchen—to try, tempt viel-much

viele-many

vielleicht-perhaps

vielmehr—rather

das Volk-people, nation voll—full, filled with

- * von (d) of, from, about
- * vor (a,d)—before, of, with; vor 10

 Jahren—10 years ago; vor allem—
 above all
 vorsichtig—cautious
 vorstellen (v.r.)—to imagine, introduce
- * wahr—true, real die Wahrheit—truth
- * während (g)—during; (subordinating) while wahrscheinlich—probably
- * wann—when
 warten (auf)—to wait (for)
- * warum—why
- * was—what, that, which
 weder...noch—neither...nor
 der Weg—way
 weg—away
 wegen (g)—because of
- * weil—because, since
 weise—wise
 die Weise—manner, custom, way
 die Weisheit—wisdom
 weiß—white (also third person sing.
 of wissen)
- * weit—far, wide
- * weiter—further
 welch—which
 die Welt—world
 die Weltanschauung—world view
- * wenig—little; wenige—few
- * wenn—when, if
- * wer—who
- * werden, wurde, ist geworden—most frequently: is 28. iff; to become; will

- wert—worth; nicht der Mühe wert—not worth the trouble der Wert—value wert—worth
- * wichtig—important wider—against
- * wie—how, like, as
- * wieder—again wiederholen—to repeat der Wille—will
- * wir—we
 wirklich—real, genuine, really
 die Wirklichkeit—reality
 die Wirtschaft—economy
- * wissen (weiß), wußte, gewußt—to know die Wissenschaft—science
- * wo—where, when
- * wohl—indeed, probably, well wohnen—to live
- * wollen (will)—to want to
- * worden—been
 der Wunsch—wish
 wünschen—to wish
 zeigen— to show, point
- * die Zeit—time ziehen, zog, gezogen—to draw, pull, raise, attract ziemlich—rather
- * zu (d)—at, to, too die Zukunft—future zumachen—to close
- * zurück—back, behind zusammen—together zwar—indeed zwischen (a, d)—between



English Grammar Necessary for Learning German

If you are unfamiliar with English grammar, please use this section as a reference. You will need it. If you would like to buy an English grammar book, I would recommend *The Deluxe Transitive Vampire: The Ultimate Handbook of Grammar for the Innocent, the Eager and the Doomed* (Karen Elizabeth Gordon).

Clause

A clause is a unit within a sentence that has both a subject and a verb. German sentences may contain multiple clauses, much to the chagrin of many readers.

Nouns (See Chapter 3)

A noun is a word that names a person, place, thing, or abstraction. Nouns have cases. German has four cases: nominative (English subjective), accusative (English objective), genitive (usually, but not always, English possessive), and dative (usually, but not always, English indirect object).

Nominative is the subject; all sentences have subjects:

The man is friendly.

The bear dances.

I am happy.

A **predicate nominative** is a noun after the verbs "to be," "to become," "to remain," and similar verbs. The predicate nominative indicates that the subject and the object are one and the same:

The poet is a great man.

The woman becomes a professor.

(This will not generally affect your translation.)

A direct object answers the question what or whom after the verb:

The man kills the wolf.

The woman writes a poem.

He likes me. *

I like him. *

* In English, some pronouns reveal the difference between nominative (*I, he, she, we, they*) and accusative (*me, him, her, us, them*) cases.

A possessive noun is in an inextricable relationship with another noun:

The man's friend is nice. (Or: The friend of the man is nice.)

He loves the woman's sister. (Or: He loves the sister of the woman.)

An indirect object is an object for which the prepositions "to" or "for" are understood:

The man writes his girl friend a love letter. (Or: The man writes a love letter to his girl friend.)

The woman sends her mother a Mother's Day card.

Note: Even when a sentence begins with prepositional phrases, the verb will appear directly after the subject and before the object: During the dark and stormy night, in the middle of the woods, the storyteller *frightened* the campers.

Adjectives (See Chapter 4)

Adjectives describe nouns or pronouns: A nice man; a certain someone

Adjectives usually appear before the noun they modify: An interesting concept; a useless animal; an engaging woman; good friends

Articles and numbers are also adjectives:

A kind woman; the interesting book; three blind mice; ten partridges

Usually, adjectives are preceded by articles: a *good* idea; the *hungry* cat. However, when adjectives precede plural nouns, they often do not need an article: *loyal* friends; *difficult* ideas.

Adjectives after the verbs "to be," "to become," "to remain," and verbs involving the senses are **predicate adjectives:**

She is funny.

He became rich.

They remained angry for a long time.

She seems sad.

He looks happy.

Adjectives can also appear in **comparative and superlative** forms (see chapter II): A *better* idea; a *nicer* cat; a *more beautiful* child; the dog is *friendlier* than the cat (comparative)

The best idea; the nicest cat; the most beautiful child; "Mirror, mirror on the wall, who is the fairest of them all?" (superlative)

Two verb forms (**present participles**—singing, climbing—and **past participles**—stolen, admired) can be used as adjectives *if* they appear directly before a noun (usually after an article):

They gazed at the dancing bear.

The frightened elephant hid in the forest.

Adverbs (see Chapter 4)

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs:

He runs quickly; The beautifully singing woman is homely; He speaks German quite fluently.

Typical adverbs are; mostly, usually, perhaps, moreover, especially, thus, therefore, still, yet, certainly, consequently, very, however, quite, really, also, now, only, soon, then, just, even, rather, indeed, probably, immediately, yesterday, too, here, there, tomorrow, often. rarely, nearly, always, never, not

A noun and an adjective, or a prepositional phrase can also have an adverbial function in a sentence: to be sure; last week; some day; for years; to the right; first of all

Like adjectives, adverbs can also have comparative and superlative forms: She runs more quickly than he does. He is the *least likely* to succeed. The most beautiful grapes hang *the highest*.

Prepositions (See Chapter 5)

Prepositions indicate the relation of a noun or pronoun to another word in the sentence. A prepositional phrase consists of the preposition, the noun or pronoun that follows it, and any modifiers of the noun:

She walks *through* the park. She walks *around* the beautiful park *with* the red geraniums. She walks *across* the park, which is *in* the center *of* the city. He is upset *with* her.

There are also some compound prepositions, those consisting of more than one word: because of; instead of; with regard to:

She walks outside of the park.

Common prepositions are: for, to, of, through, between, on, from, beside, against, without, by. There will not be a one-to-one correlation between German and English prepositions.

Pronouns (See Chapter 7)

Pronouns take the place of nouns. They also have cases.

Nominative (subjective): He is rich.

Accusative (objective): The wolf devours him.

Dative (indirect object): The woman gives him a big smile.

Pronouns in front of nouns are possessive adjectives:

His friends are nice.

Her cat seems playful.

Our goals are difficult to attain.

Note that her can be both a personal pronoun and a possessive adjective:

He likes her. (her is merely a pronoun.)

He likes her friends. (her is a possessive adjective)

Although he likes her (pronoun), he dislikes her iguana (possessive adjective).

Pronouns are:

Personal (I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they): I am happy. (Chapter 2)

Interrogative (who, whom, which, what, or whose): Who loves him? (Chapter 6)

Indefinite (such as: one, someone, many, everyone, some, nobody, everything, nothing, something): *Everyone* likes her; *Something* is missing. (Chapter 3)

Demonstrative (this, that, these, those): This is wonderful. (Chapter 3)

Relative (who, whom, whose, what, which, that [Chapter 25]:

Everyone who knows her likes her

Everyone whom she knows is brilliant.

Everything that she said was interesting.

The anecdote, which she had heard many times, still amused her.

Note that that has a variety of functions in English.

- 1. It can be a demonstrative pronoun: I know that.
- 2. It can be a relative pronoun: He recommended the book *that* helped him learn German quickly.

It can also be a subordinating conjunction: I know *that* he is trustworthy. (Chapter 23)

Reflexive: He looked at himself in the mirror. (Chapter 26)

Verbs (Chapter 2)

A verb is a word or group of words stating something about the subject of the sentence. This statement can describe an action or an identity or a state of being:

The mouse roared (action).

The elephant is enormous (state of being).

Verbs can be either transitive or intransitive.

They are transitive when they are followed by a direct object:

He loves the woman.

The obese man ate the entire pizza.

280

They are *intransitive* when they cannot be followed by a direct object, and instead are followed by a preposition or an adverb or another clause:

The child dives into the swimming pool.

He sleeps restlessly.

The tired student yawned, much to his professor's annoyance.

Verbs are conjugated, their conjugation depending on the subject:

The wolf kills the sheep.

The bears dance in a circle.

I am hungry.

He is singing loudly.

She does not know German yet.

Does he want to go with us?

Verbs have the following forms: present, past, present perfect, past perfect. (Chapters 14 and 15)

He stares at the spectacle. (present)
He stared at the spectacle. (past, also called preterite)
He has stared at the spectacle. (present perfect)

He had stared at the spectacle. (past perfect)

Note that the present and past perfect are formed by using an auxiliary (have, had) with a participle. A participle is a verb form that always requires an auxiliary: He has helped her; He is helped by her.

When the three main forms of the verb are given, they are listed as the infinitive (the form that appears in the dictionary), the past, and the perfect form. Verbs in English, as well as in German, can be either "strong" or "weak."

They are weak (easy to determine) when -ed is added to their past and perfect forms: look, looked, has looked; ask, asked, has asked; hope, hoped, has hoped

They are strong (their pattern can be hard to determine) when their past and perfect forms do not end in -ed; often a vowel change is involved. Many strong participles will end in -n, -en, -d, or -t:

write, wrote, has written; bring, brought, has brought; cut, cut, has cut; lose, lost, has lost; find, found, has found; fall, fell, has fallen; do, did, has done; sing, sang, has sung

Verbs will sometimes require auxiliary (i.e. helping) verbs. Here are examples:

Present perfect: They have gone to the zoo.

Past perfect: They had gone to the zoo.

Future: They will go to the zoo. (Chapter 10)

Future perfect: They will have gone to the zoo.

Modals, words that change the aspect of the verb, are also auxiliaries (Chapter 19):

He must learn German.

He wants to learn German.

He should learn German.

He can learn German

They should be able to learn German.

A modal with the future tense:

She will be able to learn German.

The **passive** voice is formed by using the verb "to be" as an auxiliary along with the main verb in its participial form (Chapter 28):

The man is eaten by the wolf. (Cf. active: The wolf eats the man.)

The apple was stolen by a child. (Cf. active: The child stole the apple.)

The song has been sung by thousands of people.

The window had been opened by a visitor.

The film will be seen by millions.

The dancing bear must be fed often.

Although English-speaking students are taught to use the passive minimally, Germans use the passive often.

The **subjunctive** is used with conditions contrary to the fact, and with conjectures or desires. (Chapters 30–32)

Here are some examples (Chapter 30):

Long live the King!

God protect me from my friends!

In German, the following sentence is considered subjunctive because the activity in the second clause is not immediately verifiable:

The dean of students thinks that he is extremely insightful.

Here are examples of the subjunctive used as a conditional or a conjecture (Chapters 31–32):

If he were wise, he would save his money.

If he had been wise, he would have saved his money.

If he had saved his money, he would have been rich.

The dancing bear looks as if it were hungry.

He wished he had learned German sooner.

Conjunctions (Chapters 21, 23-25)

Conjunctions can be either co-ordinating or subordinating. They are extremely important in German grammar, because they link together clauses, some of which occasionally seem interminable.

Co-ordinating conjunctions join words, phrases, and clauses of equal importance in the same sentence. (Chapter 21) Common co-ordinating conjunctions are: and, or, either . . . or, neither . . . nor, but, however:

She studies philosophy and music.

She studies philosophy and ponders various theories.

She studies philosophy, and she enjoys it.

She is beautiful, but she doesn't know it.

Neither the student nor the teacher wants to read the boring book.

Subordinating conjunctions change clauses into dependent clauses, which means they are unable to exist without the help of independent clauses. They still need to have a subject and a verb, however. They generally begin the clause (Chapters 23–25):

Because he was happy, he hugged her.

If he has any sense, he will marry her.

When she was in Switzerland, she saw thousands of cows.

He was not happy until he saw her again.

Although she had many friends, she was still sometimes lonely.

He suffered a great deal when he was young.

After she had learned German, she felt as if she could do anything.

Note that until and after can be either a preposition or a subordinating conjunction:

Until now, he did not want to learn German. (preposition)

He did not want to learn German *until* he met a beautiful Austrian woman. (subordinating conjunction)

After many years of intense effort, he could speak German like a native. (preposition)

After he had lived in Germany, he became more interested in German culture. (subordinating conjunction.)

Relative pronouns are forms of subordinating conjunctions. (Chapter 25) When the relative pronoun is the subject of the clause, the verb follows it immediately:

I know the man who loves her.

When the relative pronoun is the object of the clause, the verb follows the subject:

The man whom she loves is quite intense.

Note that who is also an interrogative pronoun:

Who wants to go to the movies with me?

Punctuation (Chapter 35)

You will find that German uses commas more frequently than English does. Commas have two main uses:

1. To show sequences:

Men, women, and children are all fascinated by the mysteries of the universe. Roses, geraniums, irises, marigolds, and begonias grew in her garden.

2. To show how sentences should be parsed:

He had many children, and he was always quite busy.

Whenever he went to Germany, he bought liqueur-filled chocolates.

He sent her flowers, which pleased her.

My wife, Roger, is a complex woman. (If there were no commas, it would seem as if the man's wife's name were Roger!)



Summary of German Grammar

I. Declensions of the definite (der) and indefinite (ein) articles (For a review of case endings, see Chapter 3, parts I and II, and 5.16.)

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	der	das	die	die
	ein	ein	eine	_
accusative	den	das	die	die
	einen	ein	eine	_
genitive	des	des	der	der
	eines	eines	einer	_
dative	dem	dem	der	den
	einem	einem	einer	_

Except for masculine and neuter nominative and neuter accusative, the *der* article and the *ein* article have the same endings.

Note: dieser (this one), jener (that, that one), jeder (each, every), mancher (some, many a), solcher (such), and welcher (what, which) follow the paradigm for der words.

Kein and the possessive adjectives mein (my), dein (your), sein (his, its), ihr (her, their), unser (our), euer (your), and Ihr (your) follow the paradigm for ein words.

II. Adjective endings (For a review of adjectives, see Chapter 4)

A. Strong adjective endings

	neuter	masculine	feminine	plural
nominative	gut er Wein	gut es Brot	gut e Milch	gut e Tage
accusative	gut en Wein	gut es Brot	gut e Milch	gut e Tage
genitive	gut en Weins	gut en Brots	gut er Milch	gut er Tage
dative	gut em Wein	gut em Brot	gut er Milch	gut en Tagen

Adjectives are more likely to be strong when preceding plural nouns: schöne Blumen guter Gärtner – beautiful flowers of good gardners

B. Weak adjective endings (after *der* or a similar article)

- 1. **nominative** masculine, neuter, and feminine; **accusative** neuter and feminine weak adjectives will end in -e: der gute Wein, das gute Brot, die gute Milch
- 2. All other weak adjectives (masculine accusative, all genitives, all datives, and all plurals) will end in -en: den guten Wein, des guten Brots, dem guten Mann, die guten Ideen, etc.)

C. Adjectives following ein words in nominative masculine and neuter and accusative neuter will be strong: ein guter Mann, ein gutes Kind

D. Possessive adjectives (See Chapter 7)

mein	(my)	unser	(our)
dein	(your)	euer	(your)
sein	(his, its)	ihr	(their)
ihr	(her)	Ihr	(your—formal)

III. Pronouns

A. Personal pronouns (See Chapter 7)

nominative		accusa	tive	dativ	e
I	ich	mich	(you)	mir	(to me, me)
you (informal)	du	dich	(thee, you)	dir	(to thee, you)
he	er	ihn	(him)	ihm	(to him)
it	es	es	(it)	ihm	(to it)
she	sie	sie	(her)	ihr	(to her)

we	wir	uns	(us)	uns	(to us)
you (informal)	ihr	euch	(you)	euch	(to you)
they	sie	sie	(them)	ihnen	(to them)
you (formal)	Sie	Sie	(you)	Ihnen	(to you)

Do not worry about pronouns that take the genitive, as they appear rarely, and you will know how to deal with them if you should come upon them. Here are examples: Sie tut das um *seinet*willen—She does that for *his* sake; Er ist hier um *ihret*willen—He is here for *her* (or *their*) sake.

B. Relative pronouns (See Chapter 25)

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
nominative	der	das	die	die
accusative	den	das	die	die
genitive	dessen	dessen	deren	deren
dative	dem	dem	der	denen

C. Reflexive pronouns (See Chapter 26)

singular (I, yo	ou, he, it,	she)	plural (we,	you, they	7)
accusative	mich	(myself)	accusative	uns	(ourselves)
dative	mir	(myself)	dative	uns	(ourselves)
accusative	dich	(yourself)	accusative	euch	(yourselves)
dative	dir	(yourself)	dative	euch	(yourselves)
accusative and dative	sich	(himself, itself, herself)	accusative and dative	sich	(themselves, each other)

sich is also the accusative and dative for the formal you (Sie).

IV. Prepositions (For more definitions, see also listings in Appendix K, the General and Humanities Vocabulary.) **Prepositions can also be dictated by the verb they are connected with:** sitzen an—to sit at; glauben an—to believe in.

A. Prepositions taking the accusative (cf. 5.7)

bis—until, as far as
durch—through, by means of, as far as

```
für—for, instead of; halten für—to consider; was für—what kind of gegen—against, towards; gegen acht Uhr—around 8:00 ohne—without
um—at, around; um sechs Uhr—at 6:00; es geht um—it is a matter of wider—against, contrary to entlang—along; den Fluß entlang—along the river
```

B. Prepositions taking the dative (cf. 5.9)

```
aus—out of, of, from; aus Berlin—from Berlin; aus diesem Buch—from this book; aus der Tür—out of the door
```

außer—out of, except (for), aside from, in addition to

bei—near, with, among, at the house of, at; beim—bei + dem; (bei rarely means by)
mit—with, by, at

nach—after, according to, to (with regard to direction); nach der Vorlesung—after class; meiner Meinung nach—in my opinion; fragen nach—to ask about;

fahren *nach*—to go *to*seit—since, for; seit Jahren studiert sie deutsche Philosophie—for years, she has been studying German philosophy

von—from, of, by, about; vom—von + dem

zu—to, at, in addition to; zum Beispiel—for example; zu Hause—at home; zur—zu + der; zum—zu + dem

gegenüber—vis-à-vis, opposite, in relation to; dem Nächsten gegenüber—vis-à-vis the neighbor

C. Prepositions taking either dative or accusative (cf. 5.11)

an—at, on, to, in, near to; denken an—to think of, an dem Tisch sitzen—to sit at the table; am—an + dem

auf-on, upon, on top of, in, at, to; warten auf-to wait for

hinter-behind; hinterm-hinter + dem

in-in, into; ins-in + das; im-in + dem

neben-beside, near, next to

über-above, over, about, across; sprechen über-to speak about

unter—under, beneath, among, below; unter den Blinden—among the blind

vor—before, in front of, ago; vor sechs Stunden—six hours ago! vor allem—above
all; vor Freude—with joy

zwischen—between

D. Prepositions taking the genitive (cf. 5.13)

```
trotz—in spite of
statt—instead of
während—during
wegen—because of
um...willen—for the sake of
```

V. Conjunctions

A. Co-ordinating conjunctions (See Chapter 21)

```
aber—but, however
denn—for, because
oder—or
sondern—rather, on the contrary
und—and
entweder...oder—either...or
weder...noch—neither...nor
```

B. Subordinating conjunctions (See Chapter 23)

```
als—when (always in the past tense)
auch wenn-even if
bevor-before
bis-until
da—since, because
damit—so that
daß (or dass)—that
ehe-before
nachdem—after
ob—if, whether
obschon, obwohl-although
sobald—as soon as
solange - as long as
während-while
weil—because
wenn-when, if
```

C. Subordinating relative pronouns (See Chapter 24)

wer-he who, whoever

was—what, whatever, which, that which, that

wie-how, as

wo-where, when

warum—why

VI. Verb conjugations—present, past, and present perfect (For a review, see Chapters 14 and 15.)

A. Conjugation of a weak/easy verb and of a strong/hard verb; present, past, present perfect, and subjunctive II

I. a weak/easy verb: lachen (to laugh)

	present	past	present perfect	subjunctive II
ich	lache	lachte	habe gelacht	lachte
du	lachst	lachtest	hast gelacht	lachtest
er	lacht	lachte	hat gelacht	lachte
wir	lachen	lachten	haben gelacht	lachten
ihr	lacht	lachtet	habt gelacht	lachtet
sie	lachen	lachten	haben gelacht	lachten
Sie	lachen	lachten	haben gelacht	lachten

2. a strong/hard verb: finden (to find)

	present	past	present perfect	subjunctive II
ich	finde	fand	habe gefunden	fände
du	findest	fandest	hast gefunden	fändest
er	findet	fand	hat gefunden	fände
wir	finden	fanden	haben gefunden	fänden
ihr	findet	fandet	habt gefunden	fändet
sie	finden	fanden	haben gefunden	fänden
Sie	finden	fanden	haben gefunden	fänden

B. Conjugation of sein (to be)

	present	past	present perfect	subjunctive II
ich	bin	war	bin gewesen	wäre
du	bist	warst	bist gewesen	wärest
er	ist	war	ist gewesen	wäre

wir	sind	waren	sind gewesen	wären
ihr	seid	wart	seid gewesen	wäret
sie	sind	waren	sind gewesen	wären
Sie	sind	waren	sind gewesen	wären

C. Conjugation of haben (to have)

ich	habe	hatte	habe gehabt	hätte
du	hast	hattest	hast gehabt	hättest
er	hat	hatte	hat gehabt	hätte
wir	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hätten
ihr	habt	hattet	habt gehabt	hättet
sie	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hätten
Sie	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hätten

D. Conjugation of werden (to become; to be)

ich	werde	wurde	bin geworden	würde
du	wirst	wurdest	bist geworden	würdest
er	wird	wurde	ist geworden	würde
wir	werden	wurden	sind geworden	würden
ihr	werdet	wurdet	seid geworden	würdet
sie	werden	wurden	sind geworden	würden
Sie	werden	wurden	sind geworden	würden

VII. Modals (for a review, see Chapter 19)

	to be		may,		should,	
	permitted	can	like to	must	is to	want to
	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ich	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
du	darfst	kannst	magst	mußt	sollst	willst
er	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
wir	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr	dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
Sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

VIII. Werden (See Chapters 10 and 28, especially 28.10).

⁽A) When werden appears with a participle, it will mean is (passive): Es wird selten getan—It is seldom done. This is the most common use of werden!!!

Die Alten werden selten ernst genommen—The old people are seldom taken seriously.

- (B) When werden appears with an infinitive, it will mean will (future): Er wird nicht gehen—He will not go.
- (C) When werden appears alone in a sentence, it will mean to become, to grow: Er wird alt—He is growing old.

IX. Verb placement (See Chapters 6, 22, 23-25, 33)

(A) When there is only one verb in the clause:

(1) In a standard main clause, the verb will appear in "second" place:

Er kennt Fräulein Meier—He knows Fräulein Meier.

Heute *geht* er mit uns ins Theater—Today he is going to the theater with us.

Den Freund *erkennt* man in der Not—One recognizes a (true) friend (when one is) in need.

Auf dem Fußpfad wächst kein Gras-No grass grows on the footpath.

- (2) If the clause begins with a verb,
- 1. It may be a question:

Kennt er den Briefträger?—Does he know the mailman?

Schreibt sie eine E-mail an ihn? - Is she writing him an e-mail?

2. It may be a command:

tered side.

Tue das sofort!—Do that immediately!

Vergessen Sie ihren Geburtstag nicht! - Do not forget her birthday!

3. When the verb appears in the subjunctive I form and is followed by wir, it will be translated *let us:*

Seien wir tapfer!—Let us be brave!

4. It can signal an "if . . . then" construction:

Fehlt es dir an Bier, so trinke Wein—If you lack beer, then drink wine Fällt das Brot, so fällt es auf die Butterseite – If the bread falls, it falls on the but-

Wäre er reich, so arbeitete er nicht—If he were rich, he would not work.

(3) If the clause is a subordinate clause, the verb will appear at the end:

Es ist wahr, daß sie viel studiert—it is true that she studies a lot.

(B) When the verb appears with an auxiliary (such as a form of sein or haben or werden or a modal), the auxiliary will be conjugated, and it will appear in "second" place in the clause (if it is a standard main clause—cf. A-l), while the other verb infinitive or participle will appear at the end of the clause:

Er kann nicht gehen-He cannot go

Sie hat das oft gesagt—She has often said that.

Hoffnung ist in den Brunnen gefallen—Hope has fallen into the well.

The auxiliary will appear at the beginning of the clause if the clause is a question, or if it is an "if . . . then" construction (cf. A-2), while the other verb infinitive or participle will appear at the end of the clause:

Darfer das tun—Is he permitted to do that?

Hätte sie das gewußt, so hätte sie darüber gelacht—If she had known that, she would have laughed about it.

In dependent clauses, the auxiliary will appear at the end (cf. A-3), while the other verb infinitive or participle will be the penultimate word in the clause: Ich glaube, daß wir *gehen werden*—I believe that we will go

Nachdem der Briefträger Fräulein Meier einen Ring geschenkt hatte, war sie sehr glücklich—After the mailman had given Fräulein Meier a ring, she was very happy.

(C) Whenever there are three or more verbs in a clause, the conjugated verb will be translated first, the verb at the end of the clause will be translated next, the penultimate verb will be translated third, and any other possible verb will be translated last: Er wird das getan haben—He will have done that.

I 3 2

Man <u>hat</u> mich oft <u>tanzen sehen können</u> (Nietzsche)—One was often able to see me

I 4 3 2
dance.

In dependent clauses that have three or more verbs, the conjugated verb will precede the other two verbs:

Er war glücklich, weil er oft hat tanzen können—He was happy because he was

I 3 2

often able to dance.

X. Verb tenses: here are some verb combinations of the infinitives sagen (to say) and singen (to sing):

(Note some of the possibilities are extremely confusing; don't worry about them. I am omitting many possibilities because they are simply too rare and too difficult)

presenter sagt—he sayspaster sagte—he said

present perfect er hat gesagt—he said or has said past perfect er hatte gesagt—he had said

future er wird sagen—he will say

present (with a modal) er will sagen—he wants to say
past (with a modal) er wollte sagen—he wanted to say

present perfect (+ a modal) er hat sagen wollen—he (has) wanted to

say

past perfect (+ a modal) er hatte sagen wollen—he had wanted to

say

future (+ a modal) er wird sagen wollen-he will want to say

present passive es wird gesagt—it is said
past passive es wurde gesagt—it was said

present perfect passive es ist gesagt worden—it has been said

past perfect passive es war gesagt worden—it had been said es wird gesagt werden—it will be said

present passive (+ modal) es will gesagt werden—it wants to be said es wollte gesagt werden—it wanted to be

said

present perfect passive (+ **modal**) es hat gesagt werden wollen—it has

wanted to be said

past perfect passive (+ modal) es hatte gesagt werden wollen—it had

wanted to be said

present and past subj. I er sage—he may say, says, said

present and past subj. II er sagte—he would say, he had said, if he

were to say

presenter singt—he singspaster sang—he sang

present perfecter hat gesungen—he has sungpast perfecter hatte gesungen—he had sung

future er wird singen—he will sing

present (with a modal) er kann singen—he can sing

past (with a modal) present perfect (+ a modal)	er konnte singen—he could sing er hat singen können—he could (or: has been able) to sing
past perfect (+ a modal)	er hatte singen können—he had been able
future (+ a modal)	to sing er wird singen können—he will be able to
	sing
present passive	es wird gesungen—it is sung
past passive	es wurde gesungen—it was sung
present perfect passive	es ist gesungen worden—it has been sung
past perfect passive	es war gesungen worden—it had been
	sung
future passive	es wird gesungen werden—it will be sung
present passive (+ modal)	es kann gesungen werden—it can be sung
past passive (+ modal)	es konnte gesungen werden—it could be
	sung
present perfect passive (+ modal)	es hat gesungen werden können—it is
	able to have been sung
past perfect passive (+ modal)	es hatte gesungen werden können—it was
	able to have been sung
present and past subj. I	er singe—he may sing, sings, sang
present and past subj. II	er sänge—he sang, he would sing, if he
	were to sing



I. Patterns for Strong/Hard Verbs

(If you say these repeatedly, you may become more familiar with the ways in which verbs change.)

infinitive (and irregular third singular person	past (first and third person singular	participle	definition

group I: ei-ie-ie or ei-i-i

blieb	geblieben	stay, remain
schied	geschieden	part, depart
schien	geschienen	shine, seem
schrieb	geschrieben	write
stieg	gestiegen	climb
wies	gewiesen	point
griff	gegriffen	grasp
litt	gelitten	suffer
riß	gerissen	tear
schnitt	geschnitten	cut
stritt	gestritten	fight
	schied schien schrieb stieg wies griff litt riß schnitt	schied geschieden schien geschienen schrieb geschrieben stieg gestiegen wies gewiesen griff gegriffen litt gelitten riß gerissen schnitt geschnitten

298	German Quickly
infinitive	(and

irregular third

person singular)

group II: ie-o-o

biegen fliegen fliehen fließen genießen riechen schließen verlieren ziehen	or <i>i-a-o</i>	bog flog floh floß genoß roch schloß verlor zog	gebogen geflogen geflohen geflossen genossen gerochen geschlossen verloren gezogen	bend fly flee flow enjoy smell close lose pull
binden finden beginnen gelingen gewinnen liegen schwimmen singen trinken verschwinden zwingen group IV: e-a-o		band fand begann gelang gewann lag schwamm sang trank verschwand zwang	gebunden gefunden begonnen gelungen gewonnen gelegen geschwommen gesungen getrunken verschwunden gezwungen	bind find begin succeed win, gain lie swim sing drink vanish force
befehlen brechen gelten helfen kommen nehmen sprechen stehlen	befiehlt bricht gilt hilft nimmt spricht stiehlt	befahl brach galt half kam nahm sprach stahl	befohlen gebrochen gegolten geholfen gekommen genommen gesprochen gestohlen	command break be valid help come take speak steal

past (first and participle

third person

singular)

definition

do

infinitive (and first and thi person singular)	rd	past (first and third person singular	participle	definition
group V: e-a-e (n	ote that sitzen	is somewhat diff	ferent)	
essen geben geschehen lesen sehen treten sitzen	ißt gibt geschieht liest sieht tritt	aß gab geschah las sah trat saß	gegessen gegeben geschehen gelesen gesehen getreten gesessen	eat give happen read see enter, step sit
group VI: a-u-a				
erfahren fahren schlagen tragen wachsen	erfährt fährt schlägt trägt wächst	erfuhr fuhr schlug trug wuchs	erfahren gefahren geschlagen getragen gewachsen	experience go, travel hit carry, wear grow
group VII: a-ie-a	(note that he	ißen, laufen, and	rufen vary)	
blasen fallen fangen gefallen halten lassen raten heißen laufen rufen	bläst fällt fängt gefällt hält läßt rät	blies fiel fing gefiel hielt ließ riet hieß lief rief	geblasen gefallen gefangen gefallen gehalten gelassen geraten geheißen gelaufen gerufen	blow fall catch please hold let, permit advise be called run call
irregular strong gehen	verbs	ging	gegangen	go
sein stehen	ist	war stand	gewesen gestanden	be stand

tut

tun

tat

getan

infinitive	past	participle	definition

irregular weak or "mixed" or "curve ball" verbs

brennen		brannte	gebrannt	burn
kennen		kannte	gekannt	know
nennen		nannte	genannt	name
senden		sandte	gesandt	send
bringen		brachte	gebracht	bring
denken		dachte	gedacht	think
wissen	weiß	wußte	gewußt	know

verbs with an umlaut in their stem, which are strong (note that they do not have umlauts in their past or participial forms):

infinitive	past	participle	definition
betrügen	betrog	betrogen	cheat, defraud
gebären	gebor	geboren	bear
hängen	hing	gehangen	hang
lügen	log	gelogen	lie, fib
schwören	schwor	geschworen	swear
trügen	trog	getrogen	to be deceptive
wägen	wog	gewogen	weigh

II. Strong/hard verbs and some troublesome weak verbs (always double check definitions in your dictionaries)

backen (bäckt), buk (or backte), gebacken - to bake bedürfen (bedarf), bedurfte, bedurft (with genitive)-to require befehlen (befielt), befahl, befohlen - to command begehen, beging, begangen - to commit beginnen, begann, begonnen-to begin begraben, begrub, begraben - to bury begreifen, begriff, begriffen-to comprehend beißen, biß/biss, gebissen-to bite bekommen, bekam, bekommen—to receive benehmen (benimmt), benahm, benommen (vr.) - to behave bergen, borg, geborgen - to conceal beschreiben, beschrieb, beschrieben—to describe bestehen, bestand, bestanden - to exist, consist, insist betragen (beträgt), betrug, betragen - to amount to betrügen, betrog, betrogen-to deceive bewegen, bewog, bewogen - to move biegen, bog, gebogen-to bend bieten, bot, geboten-to offer binden, band, gebunden-to bind bitten, bat, gebeten - to ask blasen (bläst), blies, geblasen - to blow bleiben, blieb, ist geblieben - to remain brauchen, brauchte, gebraucht-to need brechen (bricht), brach, gebrochen-to break brennen, brannte, gebrannt-to burn bringen, brachte, gebracht-to bring denken, dachte, gedacht-to think dringen, drang, ist gedrungen-to press dürfen (darf), durfte, gedurft-to be permitted to empfangen (empfängt), empfing, empfangen - to receive empfehlen, empfahl, empfohlen—to recommend empfinden, empfand, empfunden—to perceive enthalten (enthält), enthielt, enthalten - to contain entnehmen (entnimmt), ennahm, entnommen-to take away from ergreifen, ergriff, ergriffen - to seize erhalten, erhielt, erhalten — to receive erkennen, erkannte, erkannt-to recognize erschrecken, erschrack, erschrocken - to be shocked

entstehen, entstand, ist entstanden-to originate erwachsen (erwächst), erwuchs, ist erwachsen—to grow essen (ißt), aß, gegessen—to eat fahren (fährt), fuhr, ist gefahren - to travel fallen (fällt), fiel, ist gefallen - to fall fangen (fängt), fing, gefangen - to catch finden, fand, gefunden - to find fliegen, flog, ist geflogen - to fly fliehen, floh, ist geflohen-to flee fließen, floß/floss, ist geflossen-to flow fressen, fraß, gefressen-to eat like an animal frieren, fror, gefroren - to freeze gebären, gebar, ist geboren -to bear (geboren-born) geben (gibt), gab, gegeben - to give gebrauchen, gebrauchte, gebraucht-to use gedeihen, gedieh, ist gediehen-to thrive gefallen, gefiel, hat gefallen-to please gehen, ging, ist gegangen - to go gehören, gehörte, gehört-to belong to gelangen, gelangte, gelangt-to reach gelingen, gelang, ist gelungen-to succeed gelten (gilt), galt, gegolten-to be valid genießen, genoß/genoss, genossen—to enjoy geraten (gerät), geriet, ist geraten - to fall, land geschehen, geschah, ist geschehen-to happen gestehen, gestand, gestanden-to confess gewinnen, gewann, gewonnen-to win gewöhnen, gewöhnte, gewöhnt (r.) - to accustom oneself to gießen, goß, gegossen-to pour gleichen, glich, geglichen-to compare graben (gräbt), grub, gegraben - to dig greifen, griff, gegriffen - to seize haben (hat), hatte, gehabt-to have halten (hält), hielt, gehalten - to hold, consider, stop hängen, hing, gehangen - to hang heben, hob, gehoben - to lift heißen, hieß, gehießen-to be called, to command helfen (hilft), half, geholfen - to help kennen, kannte, gekannt - to know (a person) kommen, kam, ist gekommen-to come, to go können (kann), konnte, gekonnt-to be able to

kriechen, krach, ist gekrochen-to crawl laden, lud, geladen—to invite lassen, ließ, gelassen—to let, to leave; sich lassen—can be laufen (läuft), lief, ist gelaufen - to run leiden, litt, gelitten-to suffer leihen, lieh, geliehen - to lend lesen (liest), las, gelesen—to read liegen, lag, ist gelegen—to lie löschen, losch, geloschen - to extinguish lügen, log, gelogen-to fib meiden, mied, gemieden—to avoid messen (mißt), maß, gemessen-to measure mißlingen, mißlang, mißlungen—to fail mögen, mochte, gemocht—to like, may müssen (muß/muss), mußte/musste, gemußt/gemusst—have to, must nehmen (nimmt), nahm, genommen—to take nennen, nannte, genannt-to name, call preisen, pries, gepriesen-to praise raten (rät), riet, geraten - to advise, counsel reißen, riß/riss, ist gerissen—to rip, tear reiten, ritt, ist geritten-to ride rennen, rannte, ist gerannt-to run riechen, roch, gerochen—to smell ringen, rang, gerungen—to struggle rufen, rief, gerufen—to call schaffen, schuf, geschaffen - to create scheiden, schied, ist geschieden - to separate scheinen, schien, geschienen—to seem schießen, schoß, geschossen—to shoot schlafen (schläft), schlief, geschlafen — to sleep schlagen (schlägt), schlug, geschlagen - to hit schleichen, schlich, ist geschlichen—to creep schließen, schloß, geschlossen—to close schneiden, schnitt, geschnitten—to cut schrecken, schrack, geschrocken—to shock schreiben, schrieb, geschrieben—to write schreien, schrie, geschrie(e)n—to cry, to call schreiten, schritt, ist geschritten—to step schweigen, schwieg, geschwiegen—to be silent schwellen, schwoll, geschwollen — to swell

schwimmen, schwamm, ist geschwommen—to swim

schwinden, schwand, ist geschwunden-to vanish sehen (sieht), sah, gesehen - to see sein (ist), war, ist gewesen - to be senden, sandte, gesandt-to send singen, sang, gesungen - to sing sinken, sank, ist gesunken-to sink sinnen, sann, gesonnen-to ponder sitzen, saß, ist gesessen-to sit sollen, sollte, gesollt—should, is to sprechen (spricht), sprach, gesprochen—to speak stehen, stand, ist or hat gestanden - to stand stehlen (stiehlt), stahl, gestohlen—to steal steigen, stieg, ist gestiegen-to rise sterben (stirbt), starb, ist gestorben - to die stoßen, stieß, gestossen—push, shove streichen, strich, gestrichen - to stroke, to spread, to cancel streiten, stritt, gestritten—to quarrel tragen (trägt), trug, getragen - to wear, to carry treffen (trifft), traf, getroffen - to hit; (v.r.) to meet treiben, trieb, getrieben—to drive (with haben); to drift (with sein) treten (tritt), trat, hat or ist getreten—to step, enter, tread trinken, trank, getrunken - to drink trügen, trog, getrogen-to be deceptive tun, tat, getan - to do üben, übte, geübt-to practice unternehmen (unternimmt), unternahm, unternommen—to undertake verbinden, verband, verbunden—to combine verbringen, verbrachte, verbracht-to spend verderben (verdirbt), verdarb, verdorben—to spoil vergessen (vergißt), vergaß, vergessen—to forget verlieren, verlor, verloren — to lose vermögen (vermag), vermochte, vermocht—to be able to verschwinden, verschwand, ist verschwunden-to vanish verzeihen, verzieh, verziehen - to excuse wachsen (wächst), wuchs, ist gewachsen - to grow wägen, wog, gewogen-to weigh waschen (wäscht), wusch, gewaschen - to wash weisen, wies, gewiesen—to show wenden, wandte, gewandt-to turn werden, wurde, ist geworden-to become werden, wurde, ist worden—to be (passive)

werfen (wirft), warf, geworfen-to throw wiegen, wog, gewogen-to weigh wissen, wußte, gewußt—to know (a fact) wollen (will), wollte, gewollt-to want zeihen, zog, hat or ist gezogen-to pull, to draw zwingen, zwang, gezwungen-to force



Days of the Week, the Months, and Numbers

1. Days of the week

Sonntag	Sunday	Donnerstag	Thursday
Montag	Monday	Freitag	Friday
Dienstag	Tuesday	Sonnabend	Saturday
Mittwoch	Wednesday	Samstag	Saturday

Heute in acht Tagen—a week from today

II. Names of the month

Januar Februar März April Mai Juni	January February March April May	Juli August September Oktober November	July August September October November
Juni	June	Dezember	December

III. The cardinal numbers

I	eins	9	neun	17	siebzehn	40	vierzig
2	zwei	IO	zehn	18	achtzehn	50	fünfzig
3	drei	II	elf	19	neunzehn	60	sechzig
4	vier	12	zwölf	20	zwanzig	70	siebzig
5	fünf	13	dreizehn	21	einundzwanzig	80	achtzig
6	sechs	14	vierzehn	22	zweiundzwanzig	90	neunzig
7	sieben	15	fünfzehn	23	dreiundzwanzig	100	hundert
8	acht	16	sechzehn	30	dreißig	1000	tausend

Also: *null*—zero; die *Million*—million; die *Milliarde*—billion; die Billion—trillion

IV. The ordinal numbers

 Numbers 1-19 will have a te added to the cardinal number: der zweite, der fünfte, der achtzehnte, etc.

Exceptions are: der erste (first), der dritte (third), and der achte (eighth).

The seventh can be either der siebte or der siebente.

2. Numbers 20 and above will have a **-ste** added to the cardinal number: der *zwanzigste* (twentieth), der *einundfünfzigste* (fifty-first), der *hundertste* (hundredth), etc.

Time Phrases

German idioms for time are a nuisance because few of them correspond to English idioms. Here are some of the most common time phrases.

I. Times of day

um acht Uhr—at eight o'clock; um halb acht—at seven thirty gegen acht Uhr—around eight o'clock zu Mittag—at noon; zu dieser Zeit—at this time

II. Note how dates are expressed

am 4. Juli—on the 4th of July Novalis starb 1801—Novalis died in 1801 die sechziger Jahre—the sixties

III. Two prepositions relating to time

vor drei Jahren — three years ago
Seit drei Jahren studiert (present tense) sie Erdkunde — For three years she has been studying (present perfect progressive) geography.

IV. Other time phrases to watch for drei Jahre *lang—for* three years

in acht Tagen—in a week
am anderen Tag—on the next day
Erst gestern bekam er den wichtigen Brief—Not until yesterday did he get the important letter.

V. Note also

- I. When definite time is being expressed, the *accusative* case is used when there is no preceding preposition: *Jeden Tag* liest er eine Zeitung—He reads a newspaper *every day*.
- 2. But when indefinite time is being expressed, the *genitive* is used:
 - Eines Tages müssen wir ein geregeltes Leben anfangen One day we must get organized (literally: begin a well-ordered life).
- 3. Adverbial expressions of time end in -s and are not capitalized. Examples are: morgens, abends, freitags, etc.
 - Er will sonntags nicht arbeiten—He does not want to work Sundays.

Genitive and Plural Endings

ending	gender	genitive	plural
-chen (Mädchen)	n.	-s (des Mädchens)	—(die Mädchen)
-e (Blume)	f.	-	-n (die Blumen)
-e (Junge)	m.	-n (des Jungen)	-n (die Jungen)
-el (Regel)	f.	-	-n (die Regeln)
-el (Titel)	m.	-s (des Titels)	—(die Titel) **
-er (Dichter)	m.	-s (des Dichters)	—(die Dichter)*
-heit (Wahrheit)	f.	-	-n (die Wahrheiten)
-ion (Situation)	f.	-	-en (die Situationen)
-ist (Novellist)	m.	-en (des Novellisten)	-en (die Novellisten)
-ium (Studium)	n.	-s (des Studiums)	-ien (die Studien)
-keit (Möglichkeit)	f.	-	-en (die Möglichkeiten)
-lein (Häuslein)	n.	-s (des Häusleins)	– (die Häuslein)
-ling (Liebling)	m.	-s (des Lieblings)	-e (die Lieblinge)
-nis (Kenntnis)	f.	_	-se (die Kenntnisse)
-nis (Verhältnis)	n.	-ses (des Verhältnisses)	-se (die Verhältnisse)
-schaft (Gemeinschaft)	f.	-	-en (die Gemeinschaften)
-tät (Universität)	f.	-	-en (die Universitäten)
-ung (Übung)	f.	-	-en (die Übungen)

^{*} While this is not the only possible ending, it is definitely the most common ending.

^{**} The plural may or may not have an umlaut over the medial vowel (der Apfel—singular; die Äpfel—plural).



Specific German Dictionaries

The following is a list of various German dictionaries as of 2002, and the information may change as other dictionaries are published or revised after this date. It is not complete, but it does include the most commonly used dictionaries. More current information can be found on Amazon.com, although the reviews should not be the only factor in making a final decision about buying a dictionary. Unfortunately (but logically enough), there is no perfect dictionary. In order to translate German competently, you will need a hardback dictionary such as the **Harper Collins** or the **Oxford Duden** or, the **Langenscheidts**. But, if you have never had German before, you will find that using only a large dictionary will slow down your reading/translation time. Therefore, I would recommend that you use two dictionaries—a hardback dictionary for compound or obscure words, or for a more precise definition of a word, and a paperback dictionary for more common words that you tend to look up over and over again. There are also several mid-size dictionaries, which work as good compromise dictionaries, such as the Harper Collins College Dictionary.

Because each German dictionary has a slightly different layout, I would advise you to check out the introductions of your particular dictionaries to discover the specific abbreviations used and the rationales of their formats. Note that it is difficult to determine how many words are actually in the dictionary, as each dictionary lists the number of entries differently. Oddly, the Harper Collins boasts of 800,000 entries, while the Langenscheidts notes that it has 220,000 references, yet the Langenscheidts seems to have more words than the Harper Collins College Edition with 380,000 entries. Evidently, an "entry" is shorter than a "reference."

The Harper Collins

The Collins German Dictionary, with 800,000 entries, has more words and definitions than any of the other dictionaries mentioned in this appendix. It also gives complete grammar explanations in the preface, and it includes a list of regular German noun endings, their genders, genitives, and plurals. There is also a handy reference of all the abbreviations, field labels, and style labels on the inside cover. It also includes the past and participial forms for all strong verbs, and it gives past subjunctives within the text. Like many large dictionaries, the Collins gives declensions for pronouns such as wer and jemand, and it lists proper nouns within the text. Verbs that differ from the stem of the infinitive are listed in their imperative singular form (hilf, sprich, etc.). The traditional orthography is given in the body of the dictionary, with a symbol indicating words that have changed on account of the spelling reform of 1996.

However, in some ways, the Collins contains almost too much information for a beginning student. While both the Cassells and the Langenscheidts have about fifty entries under the word *Auge*, the Collins has about seventy-five entries; yet because there are so many entries, some of which are redundant, it is quite time-consuming to wade through all of them. Moreover, some of the German words need not be listed because they are so obvious. Examples are: *Kleptomanin* (female kleptomaniac) when *Kleptomane* is already given; *Gin-Fizz; Herzpatient*. Because it is so large, the binding tends to collapse with frequent use, even though it is a hardback.

While abbreviations are listed in alphabetical order in the text, their definitions are not given to you immediately. For example, if you look up *usf.*, you are told that it is an abbreviation of *und so fort;* then you must look up *fort* to discover that *usf.* means *and so forth*. The Collins listing of German verbs is at the very end of the dictionary, which makes it hard to find.

Nevertheless, I consider the Collins to be the best dictionary available if you need to read specialized texts. Fortunately, the Collins is revised often, so you can assume that its information is current.

Note that there are a variety of Collins dictionaries. The unabridged version has 800,000 entries, while the College Edition has 380,000 entries, and the Concise edition has 195,000 entries. Some of the smaller dictionaries have entries listed in red or in blue, which is helpful for finding words more quickly.

The Harper Collins Beginner's Dictionary

This dictionary looks more helpful than it is because it has all entries listed in blue so that they are easy to find, and grammar explanations are also shaded in blue. Information about German daily life and places is listed in the body of the text in

boxes, which can be informative for students interested in learning more about Germany. There is also useful information in the middle of the dictionary, giving false cognate warnings, verb tables, numbers, and games. In the beginning of the dictionary, there is also a summary of German grammar and a caution not to overuse one's dictionary. The post 1996 orthography is used, so that readers have to know that daß can be found only under dass, or that they should consult the German spelling reform list at the back of the dictionary. This dictionary has disappointingly few words, and oddly leaves out words such as Gemeinschaft (community), Abschnitt (section), Haupt (head) and several meanings of wohl, although some of them can be intuited in examples. Moreover, the definitions of können and sollen are incomplete. It is probably a handy dictionary for people more interested in going to Germany than it is for people interested in reading scholarly German. Thus Bildungsroman (a novel in which the hero develops from childhood to maturity) is omitted, while Bierzelt (beer tent) is listed.

The Oxford Duden

The Oxford Duden, first published in 1990 and revised about every two years, is an acceptable German-English dictionary. It is quite comprehensive (although currently not quite as comprehensive as the Harper Collins). It also has an abundance of information in the back, including grammar explanations, orthography and punctuation, guides to writing letters, useful phrases (for saying thank you, and even for expressing amazement, disappointment, hope and fear), weights and measures, temperature conversion, numbers, and times of day. Its word definitions tend to be more explicitly laid out than those of other German dictionaries. For example, nouns are listed with the appropriate articles **der**, **das**, **die**, rather than as m., n., or f., and definitions are often given in order of frequency of usage rather than by automatically listing transitive verb definitions before intransitive verb definitions.

Slight (but minor) disadvantages are that the Duden has such an abundance of material that finding words and their precise definitions can be more time-consuming (but ultimately more rewarding) than using the large Cassells. Moreover, the grammar explanations and synonyms of German words are listed in German, as is also the case with the Collins, which can be inconvenient for a beginner with a limited vocabulary. For example, sein as a possessive pronoun is listed as follows: sein Possessivpron. a) (vor Substantiven) (bei Männern) his; (bei Mädchen) her; (bei Dingen, Abstrakta) its; (bei Tieren) its; (bei Männchen auch) his; (bei Weibchen auch) her; (bei Ländern) its; her; (bei Städten) its; (bei Schiffen) her; its; (nach man) one's; his (Amer.) . . . Like the Langenscheidts, it has three columns of entries rather than two, so entries are somewhat harder to find quickly.

The large Cassells

A large Cassells has a clearer layout than the other large dictionaries, as it has separate entries for most words, rather than listing *Gleichnis* under the basic heading *gleich*. It also lists idioms in bold face type, which makes them relatively easy to find. It also has several aids for people not totally familiar with German grammar. For example, it lists the third person singular for all verbs which differ from the stem of the infinitive (such as *tritt*, *liest*, and *läßt*), and it also lists the past and participal forms for all irregular verbs in the text, as well as having a separate irregular verb chart. It also gives the past subjunctives within the text, and it gives the declensions for prounouns such as *wer* and *jemand*.

However, the large Cassells has some major disadvantages. It does not list the plural for nouns when it considers the plural obvious. (For example, it does not tell you that the plural of *Pflanze* is *Pflanzen*, or that the plural of *Übung* is *Übungen*)

But, more seriously, the large Cassells does not contain as many words as the other large dictionaries. The large Cassells has not been revised since 1978, which is disgraceful for a dictionary. Although it claims it has been revised in 2002, its current definition of *Email* is *enamel!* Moreover, although it has a list of specialized dictionaries, the most recent dictionary listed in the *various dictionary* section has a copyright of 1970. When I called their 800 number, I was unable to reach anyone who knew anything about this dictionary, much less whether it would ever be revised.

The pocket Cassells has not been revised since 1969! It is inexpensive, but you are getting what you pay for.

The large Langenscheidts

The large Langenscheidts is a good dictionary for a student who has mastered German grammar thoroughly because it has more words and more precise definitions than the large Cassells, and it is not as unwieldy as the Duden or the Collins. However, for a beginning student, the layout is confusing, as nouns often are listed under root verbs, and the reverse (although the 1995 edition is not as confusing as earlier editions). Because the large Langenscheidts has three columns per page rather than two, students find it difficult to locate specific definitions unless they already have a general idea of what they are looking for. Reflexive verbs are particularly poorly indicated. The large Langenscheidts also does not include the third person singular of some verbs, nor does it include past subjunctives.

However, the large Langenscheidts does include more abbreviations than some other dictionaries, and its lists of Geographical names, Historical, Biblical and Mythical names, and Musical Works probably would be quite helpful for students who are unfamiliar with German culture. Perhaps the list of Musical Works means

that it has an emphasis that students interested in music would find especially helpful. The large Langenscheidts was revised in 1995. If students are working with scholarly materials prior to this time, it might be a good dictionary to have on hand, but it also needs to be revised. Although the spelling reform took place in 1996, the Langenscheidts at least refers to this at the very end of the dictionary.

The Bantam "New" College German & English Dictionary

With approximately 75,000 entries, the Bantam paperback dictionary contains more words than other paperback dictionaries; therefore it is a useful resource when you do not have a large dictionary handy, or when you don't want to go wading through the numerous definitions contained in a larger dictionary. Proper nouns are included in the text rather than in a separate section. In the middle of the dictionary, there is a brief summary of German grammar, as well as a verb table. Numbers after strong verb entries refer you to the verb table in the middle of the book. The key to the abbreviations (h., coll., fig., etc.) can be found in the back of the dictionary.

Previously, I had believed that the Bantam was probably the best paperback German dictionary to have, but because it has not been revised since 1981, I no longer recommend it. In addition to its not being updated, it has some other drawbacks. Occasionally, definitions are misleading. For example, *Christ* seldom means *Christ*, and yet that is the first definition given. While *alle* means *everyone*, this definition cannot be found. Prepositions are not too well defined, and when words have an adverbial as well as a prepositional meaning, the less common adverbial meaning is given first. Moreover, there is no list of common German abbreviations.

The pocket Oxford Duden Dictionary

This dictionary is frequently revised, and there are varying sizes of it. The second edition has 90,000 entries and a relatively clear layout. Some of the editions have entries listed in blue, which is helpful.

Oddly enough, the revisions have omitted many of the nicest features which were included in previous editions until 1991. It no longer has a summary of German grammar in the front, and the chart of strong verbs no longer includes their English definitions. An etymology for some words has been eliminated, as well as the symbol indicating that a word is a false cognate. Also, in some versions, the German/English section of the dictionary is now located *after* the English/ German section, which makes it slightly less handy for translation purposes. Moreover, some of the more colorful idioms are omitted in the new revision. Examples are: durch die Blume sprechen—"to speak in a roundabout way" and um die Ecke bringen—"to murder".



Partial Answer Key

Definitions of the words in the pronunciation guide:

Paar-pair, Haar-hair, Schnee-snow sehen-to see, Jahr-year, Ohrring-ear ring gut-good, rot-red Bett-bed, Mann-man, hoffen-to hope sitzen-to sit, ernst-earnest Vater-father, haben-to have, sagen-to say Wasser-water, Hand, alt-old See-sea, geben-to give Ende-end. Henne-hen Tiger, Universität-university ist-is, dick-thick (fat), Mitte-middle, Mittag-noon, Mittwoch-Wednesday Bier-beer, hier-here, fliegen-to fly, liegen-to lie Sohn-son, Brot-bread, Segelboot-sail boat Sonne-sun, Sommer-summer Blume-flower, Pudel-poodle, Handschuh-glove Mutter-mother, und-and, unter-under Mädchen-girl, Väter-fathers, Waschbär-raccoon Männer-men, Länder-countries, Rotkäppchen-Little Red Riding Hood Söhne-sons öffnen-to open, östlich-easterly kühl-cool, grün-green, Bücherwurm-bookworm

Hütte-hut, küssen-to kiss

spät-late; Öl-oil; Büffel-buffalo

Wein-wine, Mai-May

Maus-mouse, Haus-house

neu-new, Fräulein-Miss, Nachteule-night owl, Feuer-fire

bevor-before, Baumwolle-cotton

halb-half, Grab-grave

ich-I, mich-me, Licht-light

Nacht-night, Macht-might, power

Christus-Christ, Charakter-character

sechs-six, Lachs-lox

Donnerstag-Thursday

Hund-dog, Gesundheit-health

Goldfisch-goldfish: Regen-rain

Tag-day, Weg-way

König-king, hungrig-hungry, durstig-thirsty

Königin-queen, hungriger-hungrier, durstiger-thirstier

hören-to hear, helfen-to help, harmlos-harmless, aha-aha jung-young, ja-yes, Jahrhundert-century

laut-loud, Lippe-lip

länger-longer, Fingerhut-thimble

Apfel-apple, Pfund-pound, pfui-pfooey

Quecksilber-quicksilver, mercury; Qualität-quality

studieren-to study, reparieren-to repair, klar-clear

senden-to send, Suppe-soup, Sanduhr-hourglass

Gast-quest, Fledermaus-bat

Klasse-class, besser-better

Kuß-kiss, muß-must

Erdnuß-peanut, barfuß-barefoot

spanisch-Spanish, Spinne-spider, Staat-state, Stinktier-skunk

Theologie-theology

Volk-folk, Vorwort-foreword, vier-four, Vergißmeinnicht-forget-me-not

Wald-woods, Wörterbuch-dictionary, Wassermelone-watermelon

Axt-axe, Vexierbild-jigsaw puzzle

Zickzack-zig zag, Zigarre-cigar; Quecksilber Zigarre-thermometer

Chapter 2—The present tense of verbs and the personal pronouns

2.8. er nimmt—he takes (nehmen); sie sieht—she sees (sehen); es bricht—it breaks (brechen); du ißt—you eat (essen); du wächst—you grow (wachsen); sie wäscht—she washes (waschen).

2.9. Sentence translations:

- 1. Man is what he eats.
- 6. Beautiful faces have many judges.
- 7. A new doctor needs a new graveyard.
- 10. A burned child avoids the fire.
- 11. It is raining sausages.

2.10. Vocabulary aid:

- 5. I do not know.
- 7. Often they say (or speak) the truth.
- 8. He eats the bratwurst (sing.).

2.11. Geographical names

Mittelamerika—Central America Wien—Vienna Venedig—Venice

Chapter 3—The case endings

Chapter 3, part I

3.5. Sentence translations—the accusative:

- 3. A beginning (mas. nom.) is no masterpiece (neut. nom.).
- 4. Effort (mas. nom.) breaks the ice (neut. acc.) (The infinitive of bricht is brechen.)
- 5 Truth (fem, nom.) has a beautiful face (neut. acc.), but torn clothing (acc. pl.)
- 6. A dwarf (mas. nom.) always remains a dwarf (mas. nom.).
- 11. The farmer (mas. nom.) kills the wolf (masc. acc.)

3.9. Sentence translations—the genitive:

- 1. The lion (mas. nom.) is the king (pred. nom.) of the animals (pl. gen.)
- 2. The will (mas. nom.) is the soul (fem, nom.) of work (neut. gen.).
- 3. Self-knowledge (fem. nom.) is the beginning (mas. nom.) of self-improvement (fem. gen.).
- 6. The goat (fem, nom.) is the cow (fem, nom.) of the *small man* (mas. gen.). (Do not confuse *klein*—small with *kein*—no)
- 8. The disorderly life (neut. nom.) of the people (pl. gen.) is the well-being (neut. nom.) of the doctors (pl. gen.).
- 9. The shadow (mas. nom.) of virtue (fem, gen.) is honor (fem. nom.).
- II. Rest is the daily reward (mas. nom.) of the workers (gen. pl.) (singular would have been *des Arbeiters*)

Chapter 3 (continued)

3.14. Sentence translations—the dative:

- 2. Patience (fem. nom.) is a shield (mas. nom.) for the soul (dat. fem.).
- 3. The work (fem. nom.) is difficult for the woman (dat. fem.)
- 5. The meaning (fem. nom.) of the drama (neut. gen.) remains a riddle (neut. nom.) to the viewers (pl. dat.).
- 8. The professor (mas. nom.) explains the problem (neut. acc.) to the students (pl. dat.).
- 9. The work (fem. nom.) of the woman (gen. fem.) is difficult.
- 10. The learning (neut. nom.) of the German language (fem. gen.) ideally pleases the students (dat. pl.).

3.18. More sentence translations:

- 1. The friend of the engaged couple sends an e-mail to the bride's mother.
- 4. The wife (fem. nom.) of the doctor (mas. gen.) doubts the truth (fem. acc.) of the proverb (neut. gen.).
- 7. The mailman (mas. nom.) gives FM (fem. dat.) a red rose (fem. acc.)

3.21. Translate these sentences, indicating the gender and case of each noun:

- 2. The earth (fem. nom.) covers the mistakes (pl. acc.) of the doctors (pl. gen.).
- 3. The sun (fem. nom.) illuminates the entire world (fem. dat.)
- 5. The blessing (mas. nom.) of the parents (pl. gen.) builds houses (pl. acc.) for the children (pl. dat.).

- 8. Perhaps one avoids punishment (fem, dat.), but one does not avoid the conscience (neut. dat.).
- 12. The stolen bread (neut. nom.) tastes good to the man (mas. dat.); but finally he has *a* mouth full of pebbles (pl. gen.).
- 13. We are the children (pred. nom.) of God (mas. gen.)
- 14. What flies (pl. nom.) are to idle knaves (pl. dat.), that (neut. nom.) are we to the gods (pl. dat.).

3.22. Vocabulary aid:

- 2. This proverb (neut. nom.) is not true.
- 3. The meaning of this proverb (neut. gen.) is unclear.
- 10. The mother sends the son an e-mail.

Chapter 4—Adjectives and adverbs

4.12. Translate these sentences:

- 2. Old churches (pl. nom.) have dark windows (pl. acc.).
- 3. Thin (adj.) gnats (pl. nom.) sting wickedly (adv.).
- 6. Poverty is the inventor of all things (pl. gen.).
- 7. Mute (adj.) dogs (pl. nom.) and still (adj.) waters (pl. nom.) are dangerous (pred. adj.). Compare: stilles Wasser (sing.) with stille Wasser (pl.)
- 9. Dark thoughts (pl. nom.) are the children (pl. nom.) of a melancholy head (mas. gen.). Note that Kopfes is singular!
- 11. Children are the wealth of poor people (pl. gen.).
- 14. Death is the doctor of the poor man (gen. masc.).
- 16. The historian looks backwards (adv.); finally he also believes (or thinks) backwards (adv.).
- 18. A foolish son (mas. nom.) is his father's (mas. gen.) suffering (neut. nom.), and a cranky wife (neut. nom.) is like a constantly (adv.) dripping (adj.) roof (neut. nom.). Ständig must be an adverb because it does not have an adjectival -es ending.

4.13. Vocabulary aid:

- 3. The children of old people (pl. gen.) often have problems (pl. acc.).
- 5. Many people like to drink wine.
- 7. The work (fem, nom.) of the historian (mas. gen.) interests the professor (mas. acc.).

8. The collected works (pl. nom.) of the American historians (pl. gen.) are also in a library in Berlin. (If Historiker had been singular, it would have been des Historikers.)

Chapter 5 (part I)—Prepositions

5.8. Prepositions—accusative:

- 2. Misfortune, nails and hair grow through the entire year (neut. acc.).
- 4. Fear considers all food poison.
- 5. For five years the professor (mas. nom.) fought against windmills (pl. acc.).
- 6. Fräulein Meier (fem. nom.) wraps the mailman (mas. acc.) around her little finger (mas. acc.).
- 8. The health fanatic (mas. nom.) swims against the stream (mas. acc.) every morning at (not around) six o'clock.

5.10. Prepositions—dative

- 2. Laziness (fem. nom.) is the key to proverty (fem. dat.).
- 6. For three years, the student has been reading Kant's philosophy.
- 8. Pride (mas. nom.) breakfasts with abundance (mas. dat.), eats at noon (or lunches) with poverty (fem, dat.) and eats in the evening with shame (fem.
- 10. From "thrift-mountain" one easily (adv.) gets to "fat city."
- 12. With regard to God (mas. dat.) the Christian (mas. nom.) has the heart (neut. acc.) of a child (neut. gen.); with regard to the neighbor (mas. dat.) he has the heart (neut. acc.) of a mother (fem, gen.); and with regard to himself he has the heart of a judge (mas. gen.).

Chapter 5

5.12. Prepositions—accusative or dative:

- 2. An old fox (mas. nom.) never goes into the trap (fem. acc.).
- 3. Virtue (fem, nom.) does not sit at the tables (pl. dat.) of great lords (pl. gen.).
- 5. Many years ago (dat. pl.) the mailman studied the philosophy of Schopenhauer.
- 10. The mailman (mas. nom.) hits (present tense) the nail (mas. acc.) on the head (mas. acc.) with his observations (pl. dat.) about Fräulein Meier (fem. acc.).

- II. Old friends (pl. nom.), old wine (mas. nom.) and old money (neut. nom.) have value (mas. acc.) in all the world (fem. dat.).
- 12. FM lives like God in France. Wie Gott in Frankreich leben means "to lead a wonderful life" because it originated at the time of atheism in France, when it was good to be God because you could be omnisicent, yet you had no responsibility because people did not believe in you!

5.14. Prepositions—genitive:

- I. One suffers (puts up with) the smoke (mas. acc.) on account of the fire (neut. gen.).
- 5. In spite of the present (neut. gen.) of the mailman (mas. gen.), Fräulein Meier is somewhat sad.

5.15. Vocabulary aid:

- I. Behind, next to, between, before (or: in front of), on, upon, over, under, in everyone wants to go to Aberdeen.
 At the, on the, in the, with the, from the—all roads lead to Rome.
- 2. For his whole life the mailman lived in Germany.
- 5. For a year, Fräulein Meier has been working part-time.
- 7. Almost every evening at 7:30 (literally: half of eight), Fräulein Meier receives a letter (mas. acc.) by special delivery.

Reading Selection: Fräulein Meier

Paragraph 2: Fräulein Meier likes to read proverbs, but the purposes of these proverbs are unclear to this woman (neut. dat.). The proverbs portray the good, happy people (pl. acc.) in the following way (fem, dat.): they work a lot, they fear God, and they distrust the easy life. But Fräulein Meier works little, she does what she wants to, and she is happy, nevertheless. Perhaps she has a better idea (mas. acc.) of reality (fem. dat.) than the proverb-tellers.

Chapter 6—Verb placement (part 1)

6.5. Translate these sentences:

- 2. No one (nom.) knows poor people (pl. acc.).
- 4. The wind (mas. nom.) chases the prayers (pl. acc.) of beggars (pl. gen.).

- 6. No goal (neut. nom.) is too high for virtue (fem. dat.).
- 8. One does not find poison in the kitchens of poor people (pl. gen.) (Or: poison is not found)
- 10. God likes a cheerful giver (mas. acc.).
- II. No plow (mas. nom.) is good enough for a lazy farmer (mas. dat.).
- 13. On earth, nothing (nom.) is without fear.
- 14. Whom (acc.) does the old woman know?

6.7. Translate—questions and commands:

- 1. Peacock, look at your legs!
- 2. Ask no questions, and you will hear no lies.
- 3. Be a snail in advice, a bird in deeds.
- 5. Don't take your worries with you into the bath.
- 8. Do not be a friend (to or of-both fem. dat. and gen. are acceptable) all the world.
- 10. Learn German!
- 11. Are you learning Russian?
- 13. Drink, drink, little brother drink/Just leave your worries at home . . .

6.9. Vocabulary aid:

- 1. For the sake of the whole truth (fem. gen.), Fräulein Meier lets the cat (fem, acc.) out of the bag.
- 3. In a summer garden, a romantic young man with an inclination for idealism picks a flower.
- 4. At five o'clock, a nice friend of the mailman visits an interesting woman with many cats.
- 6. In the neighborhood of the old university with great libraries and strange professors, an insightful student writes a very interesting book.
- 9. Always be friendly with good people.

Reading Selection: Meeresstrand (Seashore)

The seagull now flies to the lagoon,

And twilight arrives;

The evening glow reflects

Over the damp shoals.

Grey fowl scurries forth (her)

Next to the water:

The islands lie like dreams In the fog, upon the sea.

I hear the secret sound Of the swirling sand. Lonely birdcall— It was always like that.

Once again the wind shudders Softly and then is silent; The voices (which are) over the depth Are becoming clear.

Note: this is quite a literal translation. If you feel like it, you may make it more poetic.

Chapter 7—The pronouns

7.4. Replace all the nouns:

- 3. Es ist glücklich mit ihr (dat. fem.).
- 4. Er sieht sie mit ihnen (dat. pl.).
- 5. Außer ihnen sind sie nicht hungrig.
- 6. Sie sitzt ihm nicht gegenüber.
- 8. Es trinkt sie. (Even though this is improbable, it is correct because Mädchen is neuter and Milch is feminine.)

7.6. Translate the following sentences:

- 3. When do they speak with her?
- 4. She knows him.
- 6. Promises are like pie crust; one breaks them. (or: they are broken)
- 7. When the daughter sings a song, the mother likes to hear it (the song).

7.11. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Follow my words (pl. dat.), not my deeds (pl. dat.).
- 3. Learn order, practice it; order saves you (dat.) time and effort.
- 5. A wise son makes joy (fem. acc.) for his father (mas. dat.), a foolish one makes trouble for his mother (fem. dat.).
- 7. The listener by/at the wall hears his own disgrace (fem. acc).

- 8. When the mailman sees FM, he asks her about her basket-weaving course. (It is going well.)
- 12. The mailman is the favorite son of his parents (pl. gen.).
- 17. God sends us (dat.) poor guests (pl. acc.)
- 18. Thy shepherd's crook and staff, they are my comfort
 - —You set for me a table in the face of my enemies (pl. gen.)

You anoint my head with oil

My cup is overflowing. (From the twenty-third psalm)

7.12. Vocabulary aid:

- 2. It is a joy to her.
- 3. It does not please them.
- 5. Where are they?
- 6. She tells the story to her friend (mas. dat.).
- 7. The laziness of the child is inexplicable to his father, and he does not understand it (the laziness) at all.
- 10. They help her often.
- 11. Is that clear to you (formal you, dative)?
- 15. Where do you (informal you, nom.) find the answer?
- 17. They believe him.
- 18. He does not understand their, her, or your answer.

Chapter 8—Weak nouns and adjectives used as nouns

8.4. Translate (weak nouns):

- 1. The eye is the indicator of the heart (neut. gen.).
- 2. One recognizes the lion (mas. acc.) by his/its claws.
- 5. The wish is often the father (mas. nom.) of the thought (neut. gen.).
- 6. Man's (mas. gen.) will is his kingdom of heaven.
- 7. Sometimes the professor (fem. nom.) speaks with her students (dat. pl.).
- 8. The mailman often has a letter for the nice student (masc. acc.).

8.7. case ending review:

ein Guter—masc. nom.

den Guten-masc. acc. or dat. pl.

der Guten-gen. pl. or gen. or dat. fem.

8.9. Translate

- 1. The new is always interesting to modern (trendy) people.
- 2. Nothing (nom.) is agreeable to the sick one (mas. dat.).
- 3. The world belongs to the bold *one* (mas. dat.).
- 4. It is always a holiday in the house of a lazy person.
- 5. Other people have saints; the [Ancient] Greeks have sages.
- 6. No wise one (mas. nom.) despises [i.e. underestimates] small enemies and small wounds.
- 9. The lazy one's work day is tomorrow; his day of rest is today.
- 10. New saints throw the old ones into the junk pile. (If *die alten* had been capitalized—*die Alten*, the sentence would have been translated: New saints throw old *people* into the junk pile!)
- II. Everything (nom.) is pure to the pure one (mas. dat.).

8.10. Proper names:

Richard Löwenherz—Richard the Lionheart Hiob—Job

Chapter 9—The various uses of es

9.4. Translate these sentences:

- 1. There are no rules without exceptions.
- 8. No apples (pl. nom.) fall far from the tree.
- 10. There are no ugly little loved ones and no beautiful prisons.
- 12. No one now dies of deathly truths; there are too many antidotes.
- 13. Even among thieves there is honor.
- 14. No scholar falls from heaven.

Reading Selection: Das Sprichwort

Paragraph 4: One often finds a personification of the animal (neut. gen.) in the animal proverbs. Here are some recurring themes of such proverbs. (I) One is [always] what one is: "If the donkey wears a lionskin, the ears peek out from under it;" "A poodle that one has sheared so that it has a mane is still no lion." (2) A handicapped creature sometimes has luck (or is lucky): "Even a blind sow finds an acorn." (3) To err is "human:" "Even the best horse stumbles once (or sometimes);" "Even clever hens sometimes lay (eggs) in nettles." (4) Bragging amounts to nothing: "Hens who cackle a lot lay no eggs."

Paragraph 5: The small animals (for example the lamb and the calf) for the most part symbolize human children: "The wolf eats an impertinent little sheep;" "A good cow sometimes has a bad calf;" "Whoever goes abroad as a calf comes home as a cow." (In proverbs, only some animals are capable of spiritual growth. The goose, the donkey, and the ape always remain fools while the cow can develop spiritually.)

Chapter 10—The future tense

10.4. Translate these sentences:

- 3. Tomorrow morning a Bible salesman will visit Fräulein Meier.
- 5. The first will be the last, and the last will be the first.
- 6. The error of a moment becomes the worry of a lifetime.
- 8. No sorrow will happen to *the just person* (dat.); but the godless will be filled with misfortune. (Do not translate the "pay attention" *es* at the beginning of the sentence.)
- 9. Who will neglect the sowing (neut. acc.) because of the sparrows (gen. pl.)?
- II. Over all mountains peaks/ Is rest (or peace)/ In all the tree tops you (can)feel/ Barely a breath:/ The little birds are silent in the woods./ Just wait, soon/ You also will rest.

10.5. Vocabulary aid:

- 1. I will never understand the dramas of Georg Kaiser.
- 5. No one among these students will read the entire book.
- 6. Tomorrow they will fly to Europe.
- 8. Tell me with whom you associate, and I'll tell you who you are.

Chapter 11—Comparison of adjectives and adverbs

11.11. Translate these sentences:

- 4. More people drown in wine than in the Rhine.
- 5. One dumb person finds ten dumber ones.
- 6. There is no sweeter suffering than hope.
- 7. The love of the citizens (pl. gen.) is the country's strongest wall.
- 8. The cows of other people (pl. gen.) have larger udders.
- 9. The most mud (masc. nom.) always belongs to the laziest sow (dat. fem.) Note that *der größte Dreck* has to be the subject because *Dreck* is masculine. Also, *der faulsten*... can *never* be nominative.

- 10. Experience is a long way. (Weg is mas. nom.; thus langer is not comparative.)
- 14. Convictions are more dangerous enemies of truth (fem, gen.) than lies.

11.12. Vocabulary aid:

- I. Old friends and old wine (mas. nom.) are best.
- 2. A hand full of gold is heavier than a sack full of justice and truth.
- 6. An ounce of (a) good example is worth more than a pound of words.
- 7. [It is] better to be alone than in bad company (fem. dat.).
- 9. The chain is not stronger than its weakest link.

11.13. Comparative (or superlative) or not exercise: the following are regular: ein armer Mann; die Freunde schöner Leute; ein freundlicher Briefträger; Tom ist bei schlechter Laune; ein großer Hund; teuerer Wein (comparative would have been: teuererer Wein); die Eltern kleiner Kinder. If you are still having problems identifying case endings, I would advise you to review chapters 3, 4, and 5.16.

Chapter 12-Da- and wo-compounds

12.2. Translate the following:

- 2. Do you believe in it?
- 4. Do they write about it?
- 5. We help her with it.
- 6. Don't they have any time for it?
- 8. She hopes for it.
- 9. There is no water in it.

12.6. Translate these sentences:

- I. Wealth resembles sea water; the more one drinks (of) it, the thirstier one becomes.
- 3. The hen likes to lay (eggs) in the nest, in which eggs already are.
- 5. The mouth says it, but the heart knows nothing of it.
- 6. Whoever strives for a wreath gets a flower from it.
- 7. Hear (or heed) what others say, and reflect before you speak.
- 8. Fear of the Lord is a blessed garden; the most beautiful flowers grow in it.
- 10. For what is Fräulein Meier waiting? For whom is the mailman waiting?

Reading Selection: Der Elefant

Paragraph 2: The zoo lies in a small village, and it lacks some of the most important animals. For example, it lacks an elephant. (Three thousand rabbits are not a good substitute for it!) But finally the zoo gets the money for the purchase of an elephant. All the inhabitants of the village await the arrival of the elephant with joy.

Paragraph 7: But during the lecture of the teacher, something happens. The wind sets the elephant in motion, and so it rises (springs) higher and higher into the air. For a while the schoolchildren observe the four circles of the feet, the bulging belly and the trunk. But then the animal vanishes over the tree tops. Even the apes are astonished by it.

Paragraph 9: The schoolchildren of the village now do no more schoolwork. And they become scoundrels. Probably they now drink vodka, and they smash windows. And now they no longer believe in elephants.

Chapter 13—Verb prefixes

13.8. Translate these sentences (separable verbs):

- 1. The stupid ones never die out. (aussterben)
- 4. Where one sows love, there joy grows forth (hervorwachsen)
- 5. This picture portrays a woman with two cats.
- 7. Close your mouth and open your eyes (zumachen and aufmachen)
- 11. The evil wolf (mas. nom.) kills the poor child (neut. acc.). (umbringen)
- 13. Bad news always comes too soon.
- 14. No one finishes/stops learning until the grave is his home.

13.10. Translate these sentences (inseparable verb prefixes):

- 1. The father of the mailman complains about the behavior of his son.
- 2. Good swimmers drown first of all.
- 5. The mouse frightens the elephant (mas. acc.).
- 7. The fear magnifies the danger. (Because both nouns could be in either nominative or accusative case, the first noun has to be nominative.)
- 8. The father of the mailman distrusts FM. (Note that *der Vater* will *always* be nominative.)
- 10. The student stomps on the cockroach.

Chapter 14—Verb tenses (part I)

14.12. Translate these sentences:

- I Poverty has built many cities.
- 3. Whoever trusts in hope has built on [thin] ice.
- 7. Fräulein Meier did not expect the mailman's answer.
- 8. After the student had lived in Germany, he studied the novels of Grimmelshausen.
- 9. Pussycat, pussycat, what did you do there? I frightened a little mouse under her chair.
- II. Previously, a nice woman waited on you the whole time. (Note that *Sie* cannot be the subject because the verb *hat* is singular.)
- 12. I have now, alas/ thoroughly studied, with ardent effort/ philosophy, law and medicine/ and unfortunately even theology./ Thus stand I now, I poor fool/ and am none the wiser...

14.21. State the infinitives of the following strong verbs:

bleiben, fliegen, lesen, stehlen, versprechen, nehmen, erfinden, trinken, tragen, beschreiben, fallen, erscheinen, fliegen, essen, kommen, mißverstehen.

Chapter 15—Verb tenses (part II)

15.5. Give the infinitive of the following separable verbs:

ausholen (weak), aufstehen (strong), absteigen (strong), zumachen (weak), aufbauen (weak), niederschreiben (strong), einbrechen (strong), umdeuten (weak), umbringen (irr. weak), mitgehen (strong), vorweisen (strong), ausflippen (weak), ausdeutschen (weak).

15.6. Translate these sentences:

- 2. Thankfulness has climbed (steigen) to heaven and has taken the ladder with it (mitnehmen).
- 3. When the day broke (anbrechen), still before the sun had risen (aufgehen), the mailman wrote (schreiben) a long, romantic poem.
- 4. A wolf in sleep never captured (fangen) a sheep.
- 6. A sweet song has deceived (betrügen) many a bird.
- 8. No fool (mas. nom.) has invented learning. (If "fool" had been accusative, the form would have been: keinen Narren.)

9. When he became angry, the father of the mailman presented an image of strong wrath (mas. gen.), and he frightened Fräulein Meier.

15.9. Translate these sentences:

- 2. A tamed tongue is a rare bird.
- 5. With each newly learned language, you gain a new soul.

15.10 Verb practice:

- 9. Did she say the truth?
- 10. She did not say the truth.
- 16. Why didn't she go there?
- 19. He has often been here.
- 20. He will be here.
- 21. He needed (brauchen) his laptop.
- 22. He broke (brechen) the vase.
- 23. She brought (brachte) him a glass of water.
- 25. The poem pleased (gefallen) her.

Chapter 16—The plurals

16.4. Translate these sentences:

- 3. The dumbest farmers have/harvest the largest potatoes.
- 4. Dogs, farmers, and nobles close no doors.
- 6. The errors of others (pl. gen.) are good teachers.
- 9. The worm sees the most beautiful apples first.
- 15. Fleas get even into the fur of an aristocrat's dog.

Chapter 17—How to use a German dictionary

17.4. Adjectives and adverbs

- 1. The student was *just* here.
- 2. Half a loaf is better than no bread at all.
- 3. Fräulein Meier nevertheless looks happily at the mailman.
- 4. The *gentle* breezes are agreeable *to her.* (angenehm cannot be a participle because it doesn't end in either *-en* or *-t*)

17.6. Nouns

- I. Fräulein Meier has problems with her *Venetian blinds*. (Be wary of false cognates!)
- 2. A large tree grows from a small twig.
- 3. The book consists of three volumes.
- 4. By no means will Fräulein Meier give up her cats.
- 5. Idleness is the beginning of all vices. (Laster is vice, while Last is burden, load.)
- 6. The early bird gets the worm. (literally: The morning hour has gold in its mouth.)

17.8. Compound nouns

die Unabhängigkeit/s/erklärung—Declaration of Independence; die Erd/entstehung/s/lehre—doctrine of the origin of the earth; die Sein/s/erfahrung—experience of being; die Form/veränderung—change of form; die Wasser/versorgung/s/gesellschaft—the society for the procurement of water; der Leben/s/erhaltung/s/trieb—the drive for the preservation of life (or: survival instinct); das Liebling/s/tier—favorite animal; der Liebling/s/stier—favorite bull; die Einwanderung/s/politik—immigration policy; der Ausdruck/s/tanz—dance of expression; die Automobil/s/eile—haste of an automobile; die Sättigung/s/punkt/s/bestimmung—designation of the saturation point.

17.11. Prepositions

- 1. During the tug of war three children died.
- 2. The mailman insists on the truth.
- 3. Kant had an important influence on Kleist.
- 4. Nicholas brought Recha tea in an aluminum cup and looked at her hair while she drank.

17.13. Verbs

- 1. Last night, the sensitive professor gave a speech about the origin of pacifism.
- 2. Suddenly it occurred to the soldier that he didn't have any money.
- 3. It was a matter of the honor of the famous professor. (gehen with the preposition um means to be a matter of, to concern. Although it is hard to find in dictionaries, it is often used in scholarly writings.)
- 4. Blessed are the peaceful, for they will be called the children of God.

Chapter 18—Common suffixes

18.2. Translate these sentences:

- I. Everything is fleeting, only the eternal is important.
- 2. Money comes in (eingehen) limping and goes away (fortgehen) dancing.
- 3. Build a golden bridge for the fleeing enemy.
- 6. If one bends justice (then) it (nom.) breaks. If sie had been accusative, the clause would have been: so bricht man sie—then one breaks it.
- 10. Poets are *shameless* with regard to their experiences; they exploit (*ausbeuten*) them. (*Schamlos* cannot modify *Erlebnisse* because it is not right in front of the noun, but rather at the end of the sentence.

Chapter 19—The modal auxiliaries

19.10. Translate these sentences:

- I. One must believe the old *ones* (pl. dat.).
- 5. On account of alone rotten branch, one must not cut down the tree.
- 6. One man who wants to (do something) can do more than ten who have to.
- 8. Need teaches the ape (masc. acc.: Affe is a weak noun—see Chapter 8) to fiddle.
- 12. A critic pointed out to H that the historical facts did not correspond with his philosophy. H is reputed to have said: "All the worse for the facts."
- 14. The mailman had to help Fräulein Meier with her homework.
- 16. Do you want to roam farther and farther?

See, the good lies so near.

Only learn to grasp fortune.

For fortune is always there.

19.11. A nursery rhyme:

"Should I or shouldn't I?" the boy asks the girl.

"What do you or don't you want?" the girl asks the boy.

"Now, however, stop,"

says the boy to the girl.

"Now, you will get a kiss." (It is all right to omit doch.)

Reading Selection: November

Paragraph 1: He was afraid, and when he said to someone: "It has become colder" he expected comfort.

Paragraph 7: One does not notice how the trees let the leaves fall. Suddenly they have no more. In April, they will have leaves again, perhaps already in March. One will see how they get leaves.

Paragraph 9: There will be no snow, there is no longer snow.

Paragraph 11: "One must accustom oneself to the snow," he said, "one must breathe more deeply and go more quickly."—"What should I buy the children for Christmas?" he asked.

Chapter 20—The zu-construction

20.10. Translate these sentences:

- I. In the house of a thief it is difficult to steal.
- 3. No prophet can look at the other without laughing (Do not translate the "pay attention" es.)
- 4. The wolf pressed on the latch, the door (fem. nom.) opened (*aufgehen* is intransitive), and without speaking a word, he went straight to the bed of the grandmother and swallowed her.
- 6. Things which have happened *can not be changed*. (This *must* be translated passively.)
- 8. Three things cannot be stopped: water, fire, the crowd.
- 9. The origin of music cannot be separated from the origin of humanity.
- 11. The journalist loved to caricature the weaknesses of others maliciously and accurately.
- 14. Curt put out his cigarette, and Nikolaus used the moment to get on (the bus) before him and to give Recha his hand, and without insistent haste to take the seat next to her.
- 15. Not when it is dangerous to speak the truth does it find adherents most rarely, but when it is boring.

Chapter 21—Co-ordinating conjunctions

21.6. Translate these sentences:

- 3. Hear and be not deaf, but believe slowly.
- 4. After his release, the student had lost 45 pounds and several political illusions.
- 7. An old god must be able to help and harm.
- 9. The life story of Immanuel Kant is difficult to describe. For he had neither life, nor story.
- 10. Psychology had discovered unknown depths and abysses of the soul, but had also dissolved the firm, unerring self-awareness.
- 13. The golden hair of the grandmother perhaps had not always been so golden, but the blue eyes were definitely genuine.
- 14. The King of France is a king of donkeys; for his subjects must do what he imposes on them; the King in England is a king of the people; for they consent to *that which* he imposes to them; but the Kaiser is a king of princes, for they do what pleases them.

Chapter 22—Basic verb placement (part II)

22.5. Translate these sentences:

- I. But it takes (dazugehören) more courage to make an end than (to make) a new verse: all doctors and poets know that.
- 7. Like no other artist of his epoch, Paul Klee dealt with a harsh intimacy of our interior and outer world.
- 8. Only God sees the *most secret* thoughts, but why should these be so important? Some are important, not all. And must all people consider them important?
- 9. In this respect, the Dionysian man has a similarity to Hamlet: both have at one point taken a true look into the essence of things, they have recognized [what the essence of these things is], and it disgusts them to act; for their action can change *nothing* of the eternal essence of things, they consider it laughable or humiliating that it is expected of them to set right again the world that is out of joint. Recognition kills action (for) the veil by means of illusion belongs to action—that is the lesson of Hamlet.

22.6. Verb placement practice

- I. In a park a friend of the woman with many cats heard the beautiful songs of the birds.
- 2. In a park a friend heard the beautiful songs of the woman with many cats.

- 3. In a park a friend of the woman gave a bon bon to the child.
- 4. In a park a friend gave a woman some bon bons.
- 8. In a park a woman gave a child one of her sweets.
- 9. In a park a woman gave a bon bon to one of her friends.
- 13. In a park, only two women can be seen. (Review 20.9 if you have problems with this sentence.)
- 16. For three years, a student with many books lived in a large city.

Chapter 23—Dependent clauses (part I)

23.7. Translate these sentences:

- I. Of what use is it if the cow gives a lot of milk if she knocks over the milk jug afterwards?
- 4. If/when force comes, then justice goes on crutches.
- 5. Do not throw away the old shoes before you have new ones.
- 6. After the father of the mailman had known Fräulein Meier for an entire year, he *had to* admit (*gestehen*) that she was at least amusing and good-natured.
- 10. For it was Rilke's painful experience, that in this present reality *the powers of* the heart (nom.) no longer animate the things, that world and life become more and more negligible.
- II. Wittgenstein used the term, "That is terrible" when he was in [the state of] greatest excitement, [when he] buried his fingernails into his forehead, or bit his handkerchief

Chapter 24—Dependent clauses (part II), wer, was, wie, wo warum

24.6. Translate these sentences:

- 4. The healthy one does not know how rich he is.
- 8. Everything that is against the conscience has hard thorns.
- 9. One retains that which one has learned in youth the longest.
- 15. Wisdom is better than pearls, and everything that one may wish can not compare with it.
- 16. Whoever digs a grave for others (dat. pl.) falls into it himself.
- 17. Whoever fights with monsters might see to it that in so doing he does not become a monster. And if you look into an abyss for a long time, the abyss also looks back into you.
- 18. Perhaps I know best why *man alone* laughs: he alone suffers so deeply that he *had to* invent laughter. (You know that it is *man alone laughing* rather than *man laughing alone* because of common sense. Also, the *er allein* in the

second clause lets you know that *allein* is connected with the *man* rather than the verb.

Chapter 25—Dependent clauses (part III), relative clauses

25.15. Translate, noting the gender and case of each relative pronoun:

- 2. They were friends to whom (dat. pl.) one could say the truth.
- 5. Honor follows the person (mas. dat.) who flees it, and flees him, who hunts it.
- 6. There are no more wicked deaf ones than those who do not want to hear.
- 7. The electric light illuminated the face of a woman whose broad features were covered with a layer of cheap make-up.
- 8. The first half of the 19th century stands strongly under the impression of the disappointment of the political independence movement since 1815, which (acc.) the unsuccessful revolutions of 1830 and 1848 (nom.) still intensified.
- 10. Woe to the country whose (neut. gen.) king (mas. nom.) is a child.
- 12. E. T. A. Hoffmann was an artiste of the uncanny, who consciously enjoyed his visions to the fullest and at the same time ironically reflected *them* (pl. acc.)
- 14. Nicholas experienced for the first time the reaction of a young artist who gives over his work to a critical public, and perhaps it was harder for him because this public consisted of three young workers who had never before gone through an art gallery.
- 15. Herzog Wilhelm von Breisach, who (mas. nom.) since his secret alliance with a countess named Katharina von Heersbruck from the house of Alt-Hüningen—who (fem. nom.) seemed to be beneath his rank—lived in animosity with his half-brother, the count Jacob the Redbeard, returned (zurück-kommen) from a meeting towards the end of the 14th century when the night of Saint Remigius began to grow dark.

25.16. More verb placement practice:

- 1. When the cat who is now sleeping becomes hungry, she will perhaps go to the kirchen.
- 3. In a park, a mailman, who had a loved one, gave an little piece of bread to a bird.
- 4. In a park, a man who had many bon bons gave his beloved one of his sweets.
- 5. In a park, in which many children played, there were beautiful flowers and trees.
- 9. In a room, a cat can be seen who is sleeping happily on a sofa.

Reading Selection: Aus dem Erdbeben in Chili

- I. It was at the Corpus Christi Festival, and the solemn procession of nuns, which the novices followed, had just begun, when the unfortunate Josephe, at the time of the ringing of the bells, collapsed in birth-pangs on the steps of the cathedral.
- II. In order to translate this sentence, place the main verb (*stand*) immediately *after* the subject (ein junger Spanier namens Jeronimo Rugera). Otherwise, keep the word order essentially as it is.
- III. Jeronimo stood by a pilaster and fortified the rope that was to tear him/from this sorrowful world (fem. dat.) onto an iron clamp, when suddenly the largest part of the city sank with a crash and *buried everything* that breathed under its ruins.

Chapter 26—The reflexive

26.6. Translate these sentences:

- 2. Even an expert has his master.
- 5. Luck fell into his lap.
- 6. Whoever robs the other *person* of his good name makes *him* poor and *himself* not rich (or: does not enrich himself).
- 7. Whoever wants to warm himself at the house of a miser must bring the fire with him.
- 9. The last straw breaks the camel's back.

26.10. Translate these sentences:

- 1. When an earthworm and a hedgehog mate, what do you get? Answer: Ten meters of barbed wire.
- 3. Be on guard against those whom God has marked.
- 4. Since mankind has existed, man has rejoiced *too little:* that alone is our original sin.
- 5. Nietzsche's writings *appeared* (sich darstellen) as a powerful collection of boldest aphorisms, which through a unique artistic use of words maintain(a) fascinating precision.
- 6. Misfortunes occur, even in the most organized families.
- 8. God spoils this life for us so that we long for the holy quitting time (i.e., death).

26.12. Translate this joke (common mistakes are indicated by italics):

An old inhabitant of Munich gets into a conversation at the marketplace with a nice pigeon. Both get along excellently and would like to continue the acquaintance, and so the old man *invites* (einladen) the pigeon for the next afternoon for coffee at his place. The hour has arrived, he has set the table nicely and specially gotten a few flowers, but the one who does not appear is the pigeon (or: but the pigeon does not appear). Have I so erred in my pigeon-knowledge? the old man asks himself, while he sits with his coffee, which slowly grows cold. Restlessly he looks at his watch more and more frequently—finally, an hour later, the doorbell rings. The pigeon [a young chick!] stands in front of the door and says with a charmingly embarrassed smile: "I beg you, excuse me that I have come so late. But it was such a glorious afternoon, and so I decided to walk!"

Reading Selection: The Frog King

Finally, the frog spoke: "I have eaten and am tired; now carry me into your little room and make up your silk little bed, than we can lie [down] to sleep." The king's daughter/princess began to cry and was afraid of the cold frog, whom she dared not to touch and who now was to sleep in her beautiful, pure little bed. The King grew angry, however, and spoke: "Whoever has helped you when you were in need you should not despise afterwards." Then she took him with two fingers, picked him up and placed him into a corner. When she lay in bed, however, he came crawling and spoke: "I am tired, I want to sleep, just like [as well as] you—lift me up, or I'll tell your father." Then she became bitterly angry, picked him up and with all her strength she threw him against the wall. "Now you will have peace, you nasty frog!"

But when he fell down, he was not a frog, but rather a prince with beautiful and friendly eyes.

Chapter 27—The overloaded adjective construction

27.14. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Josephe found her loved one in a dark (1) valley (2) shaded (3) by pines (4).
- 3. An old (1) castle (2) belonging to (3) a marquis (4) was located at the foot of the alps, near Locarno, in upper Italy.
- 6. Secretly, she looked at the (1) woman (2) sitting (3) opposite her (4).
- 8. Such (1) thoughts (2) which were quite useless (3) in his current situation(4) went through his head. (Note that *nutzlose* modifies "in his current situation" rather than "thoughts.")

- 11. In spite of *its* pessimism, the novel became an agreeable (1) book (2) depicting (3) the charm of the old middle-class way of life with love and humor, patient prolixity and exquisite detail (4).
- 12. The fat child went to the library on a Friday or a Saturday, in any case, not on the (1) day (2) designated (3) for lending. (4)
- 13. E. T. A. Hoffmann was a (1) sketcher (2) feared (3) because of his malicious caricatures (4) and a writer who was not able to work without many drinks.
- 16. Opposite the door, a large (1) chalk drawing (2) executed (3) in bold strokes (4) was shown in the candlelight, which represented Napoleon, as he, in an awkward and despotic demeanor warmed by a fireplace his (1) feet (2) clad (3) in gun-boots (4). (Note: in order to avoid a misplaced modifier, you may put the verb elsewhere in the sentence.)
- 17. The beautiful LP sat by the narrow bay window of a cell that looked out towards the gray (1) castle tower of Riedberg (2) illuminated (3) now by morning light. (4)

Reading Selection: The Wolf and the Seven Little Goats

(Paragraph 3) Then the (1) wolf (2) living (3) entirely alone in the woods (4) went away and bought a piece of chalk; he ate it and made his voice fine (high) with that. He returned, knocked at the door of the little house and called, "Open up, dear children, your mother is here!" But the wolf had placed his black *foot (singular!)* in the window; the children saw it and called, "We won't open up, our mother does not have a black foot, as you do; you are the wolf." So the wolf went to the (1) miller (2) living (3) in the vicinity of the forest (4) and asked him if he would sprinkle some flour on his foot. The miller thought, "The wolf wants to deceive someone," and did not want to do it. But the wolf said, "If you don't do it, I'll eat you." So the miller was afraid and made the wolf's foot white. Indeed, people are like that.

Now the (1) wolf (2) feared (3) by all creatures of the world (4) went to the door again, knocked Then he placed the [his] (1) foot (2) covered (3) with flour (4) in the window, and when they saw that it was white, they believed that everything he said was true

After the wolf had eaten the six, he went away, lay outside under one of the many trees in front of the (1) house (2) shaded (3) by pines (4) and began to sleep. So *you* can imagine how she wept for her poor (1) children (2) eaten (3) by the wolf (4).

Chapter 28—The passive

28.11. Translate these sentences:

- 1. The tree *is recognized* by its fruit.
- 3. Donkeys are invited to the wedding only in order to carry water.

- 4. Innocence is murdered at the dance; on the way home, it (or she) is buried.
- 7. No murder is committed among thieves.
- 8. Whoever does not sow in the spring will reap nothing in the fall.
- 10. A (1) justice (2) driven (3) to the extreme (4) can under some circumstances become (do not translate the zu) a great injustice.
- When the stone is out of the hand and the word is out of the mouth, they can no longer be brought back.
- The door was opened and a stout man who had a long beard appeared in the doorway.
- 14. Memory is the only paradise from which we can not be driven out.
- 15. Revenge is a dish [food] that should be eaten cold.
- 16. But the German revolutionaries (around 1830), who were erroneously and involuntarily combined under the collective name "young Germany" were more strongly bound up with the past (dat.) than they themselves suspected and ever wanted to admit.
- 17. The ones dancing are considered mad by those who do not hear the music.
- 18. W was once sick. Because a specific medicine wasn't in the medicine cabinet, my father, who was a merchant, was requested to bring the medicine from N. I, myself, was commissioned to deliver the little package to W. At that time, he lived in a small room at the R's. When I came in, W was lying in bed. He thanked me repeatedly and said, "I can't give you anything now, but I will play for you something on my clarinet." It was rather embarrassing for me.

28.12. Practice with forms of werden

- 10. It is promised.
- She will understand the problem.
- The problem is not understood by her.
- The problem was understood. 13.
- The students are expected.
- The students can be helped.
- Eight years ago, the critic was often read.
- Is the song ever sung?
- A man living with many dogs will meet a woman living with many cats.

28.13. Only the following are infinitives: gehen, sehen, machen

Chapter 29—Constructions to be translated passively in English

29.7. Translate these sentences:

- 1. Whoever is afraid sees ghosts.
- 4. Fish are caught with the hook, people are caught with words.
- 5. Loving and praying cannot be forced.
- 7. Expressionism cannot be understood without Nietzsche's precedence.
- 8. Whatever is of straw must be on guard against the fire.
- 9. A cranky wife and a dripping roof when it rains a lot can be compared with one another.
- 10. Old trees cannot be bent.
- II. Leopards break into the temple and drink the sacrificial vessels (*plural*) empty. This is repeated again and again. Finally, it can be calculated in advance, and it becomes part of the ceremony.

29.8. Translate these sentences (the fake passive):

- 1. Engaged is not yet married.
- 3. After the cow is stolen the stable is locked.
- 4. As long as one nourishes, he is honored, and as long as one gives, he is loved.
- 5. Power is given to death over everything finite. . . . But it is given no power over love.

Reading Selection: Zwei Chassidische Geschichten

I. A poor lady apple dealer, whose stand was near the house of Rabbi *Chaim* of Zans, once came complaining to him: "Our Rabbi, I still have no money in order to buy for the Sabbath." "And your apple stand?" asked the Zaddik. "The people say," she answered, "my apples are bad, and they don't want to buy any." Immediately, the Rabbi ran to the street and called: "Who wants to buy good apples?" Immediately the crowd was gathered around him, the coins flew past (herbeifliegen) unseen and uncounted, and soon all the fruits were sold at double and triple the price. "Just see," he said to the woman when he turned to go, "your apples were good, the people just didn't know it."

Chapter 30—The subjunctive I

30.11. Translate these sentences (subjunctive I):

- 2. The fox believes that everyone (mas. nom.) steals hens (pl. acc.) as he does.
- 4. When everyone says to you, you are drunk, go to sleep.
- 5. Children *believe*, when it rains in the village, it is raining in the whole world. (*Meinen* can *not* be an adjective because it does not precede *Kinder*, it *must* be a verb, because otherwise the clause would be without one and because it has a plural verb ending.)
- 6. The prophets remind us: Let us not forget the future.
- 7. A thirsty one believes that he is drinking, but when he wakes up, his tongue is still dry.
- 9. [May] God protect me from my friends!
- 11. The mailman believed he had learned a lot from Fräulein Meier.
- 12. The scholars are good clocks: only *let one take care* to wind *them* correctly! Then they indicate *(anzeigen)* the hour without error and in so doing make a modest noise.

Chapter 31—The subjunctive II:

31.7. Translate these sentences (subjunctive II):

- 2. A donkey remains a donkey, even if he came (or: were to come) to Rome.
- 4. If truth were a brook, people would have hydrophobia.
- 5. When he thinks about Fräulein Meier's former sweetheart, the mailman looks as if he had eaten a crabapple.
- 6. If it had a mouth, it would bite you.
- 8. I would not know how to live, were I not still a seer of that (dessen) which must come.
- 10. Snow White told the seven dwarfs that her stepmother had wanted to have her killed, [that] the hunter had saved her life [literally: had given her life to her], than then she had gone the entire day until she finally had found their little house.
- II. No one except for the mailman *would have expected* that the insightful (1) essay (2) treating (3) the future of the earth (4) *had been written* by Fräulein Meier.
- 12. Why can the dog experience fear, but not repentance? Would it be correct to say, "Because he cannot speak?"
- 13. Jeronimo was rigid *with* horror; and immediately, as if his entire consciousness *had been shattered*, he now held onto the column on which he had wanted to die. in order not to fall off.

14. Had he only remained in the desert and far from the good and the just! Perhaps he would have learned to live and would have learned to love the earth—and laughter besides. He died too early: he himself would have renounced his teaching, had he reached my age.

31.8. Subjunctive practice:

- 1. If he were here, he would go with us.
- 2. If he had been here, he would have gone with us.
- 6. She believes she is friendly.
- 7. She believed she was friendly.
- 8. She should be friendly.
- 16. That can be said. (This is not subjunctive because the verb ends in -t)
- 17. That could be said if it were true.
- 19. It would be nice to be able to read German.
- 20. According to police reports, the robbers had committed the murder.
- 22. If the youngest little goat had not hidden so well, it would have been found and eaten by the wolf.

Chapter 32—Other subjunctive forms

32.6. Translate these sentences (modals):

- 1. If all liars ate (or: were to eat) oats, the horses would have to starve.
- 2. The historian reports what has happened; the poet [reports] what could happen.
- 5. The lazy one says: There is a lion outside; I could be killed on the street.
- 6. The German language has a great wealth of proverbs. Nevertheless, it might not be bad to borrow proverbs from other languages as well, which can be translated briefly and emphatically (i.e. which prove a point).

32.9. Translate these sentences (conditional):

- 1. Zarathustra said, "I would only believe in a God who knew how to dance."
- 3. If God wanted to punish a country, he would take the wisdom from the rulers.
- 5. If it were not for the sake of [or: because of] hope, one's heart would break.
- 6. If wishes were horses, beggars would ride.
- 7. A Hasidic Tale: Rabbi Chaim of Krosno, a disciple of the Baalschem, once watched (zusehen) a tightrope-walker with his disciples. He was so deeply absorbed in the spectacle that they asked him, what it was that attracted his eyes (acc.) to the foolish exhibition. "This man," he answered, "gambles with his life, I could not say on what account. But certainly, while he goes on the rope, he cannot think about

the fact that he is earning a hundred guilders with his action, for as soon as he thought this, he would fall off."

Reading Selection: The Swan

Paragraph 3: This one was an old (1) man (2) who had been lonely (3) for years (4). When he took his position, it already began to become cold in the evenings. No one else came to the park. The old man went around the park, paid attention to the swan and sometimes looked at the stars. He was freezing. He wanted to just go to the small inn in the vicinity of the park. He was just ready to go when he remembered the swan. He was afraid it could be stolen during his absence. Then he would lose his job. Therefore he gave up his plan.

Paragraph 4: But the cold tormented him more and more and deepened his loneliness. Finally he decided to go to the inn together with the swan. Even if someone came to the park in order to enjoy the beautiful nature, he would not immediately notice the absence of the swan. "The night is starlit, but without moonlight, and we will return immediately," he thought and took the swan with him.

Paragraph 5: When he consumed his mutton with pleasure and contentment, it occurred to him that the swan looked at him quite strangely. He was sorry for the bird. As long as the latter reproachful glance rested on him, he couldn't eat. He called the waiter and ordered for the swan a (1) roll (2) dipped (3) in warm, sugared strong beer (4). The swan became joyous, and after they had ended their meal, both returned to their post (sing.) cheerful and satisfied.

Paragraph 8: With the thought of what a shudder must penetrate each one who in such a night came into contact with water, the old man became quite (emotionally) moved. Should the poor swan have nothing at all of life? Certainly he would rather sit in a warm corner and eat something.

Paragraph 11: When he sat by the shore and looked at the sky or at the empty, bitingly cold park, he suddenly felt a timid tug on his trouser leg. The swan had swum to the shore in order to remind him of something. So they went.

Chapter 33—When the sentence starts with a verb

33.4. Translate these sentences:

- 1. If an old man dances, he makes a lot of dust.
- 2. If the cat does not want to mouse, let her out.

- 4. If the bread falls, then it falls on the buttered side. (Fällt is not subjunctive because it ends in a -t.)
- 5. If a blind man leads the other, both will not wander far.
- 8. If you lack wine, then drink beer.
- 10. If I have no cows, then I have no effort.
- II. If there were no fools, then there would be no wise ones.
- 12. The world is a drunken farmer; if one helps him into the saddle on the right, he falls off on the left.
- 13. If the poor person gets a piece of bread, then the dog tears it from his hand.
- 15. If your enemy is even only like an ant, then consider (or rank) him among the elephants, nevertheless.
- 16. T K went the way that he had to go, a little carelessly and irregularly, and if he went astray it happened because for many there is absolutely no right way. If one asked him what in all the world he intended to become, then he imparted changing information, for he was in the habit of saying that he carried within himself the possibilities for a thousand forms of existence, together with the secret awareness, that fundamentally they were nothing but impossibilities.

Chapter 34—Other pronouns

34.7. Translate these sentences:

- I. Whoever in his thirtieth year knows nothing, at forty is nothing, at fifty has nothing, learns nothing, becomes nothing, and comes to nothing.
- 3. Whoever wants to go further than his horse can [go] should dismount and go on foot.
- 7. Everything is possible to the one who wants.
- 8. Many would be cowards if they had enough courage.
- 9. No crow pecks out the eyes of the other.
- II. When Hegel explained everything real as reasonable, he supported a realism that (mas. nom.) no longer perceived literature, philosophy and religion as first life's works, but pushed political, economic and scientific interests (acc.) into the foreground.
- 12. Everything could be performed excellently, if one could do things twice.

Reading Selection: Nietzsche

Passage II: Assuming that we say yes to a single moment, then we have with that said yes not only to ourselves but to all existence. For nothing stands for itself alone, neither in ourselves nor in things: and if only a single time our soul has trembled and

sounded with joy like a lyre, then all *eternities* (pl.) were necessary in order to bring about this One occurrence—and in this single moment of our affirmation (or: saying yes) all eternity was redeemed, justified and affirmed. (So if you have had even *one* good moment while reading *German Quickly*, all your hard work was worth it!)

Chapter 35—Placement of Commas

- I. School tears children during their most precious time of development from the circle of the family, robs them of the joy of freedom and makes out of the child a worn out, oppressed creature to whom (dat.) an expression of exhaustion, fear and boredom clings while he repeats with his lips foreign words in a foreign language.
- 2. In the higher Parisian circles it was considered an exclusive pleasure to attend the performances of the M d S in the "hiding place for the moral scum of bourgeois society."
- 3. If one at one point believes to have found a rule that offers firm ground to rest for a moment in the general confusion and tumult of the ten parts of speech, then one perceives in the grammar: The student should pay attention to the following exceptions.
- 4. The scholar was a small, shabbily clothed man whose eyes constantly looked around in the classroom, but never looked at the student with whom he spoke.
- 5. The opening of space could overcome our provincialism that makes the earth the standard and [it could] give us a new vision of the greatness of creation, namely the insight that earth and humanity, their space and time are only a part of the whole.
- 6. Moral judgment, like the religious, belongs (note: *zugehören*) to a stage of uncertainty to which even the concept of the real, the differentiation of the real and the imaginary is still missing, so that "truth" at such a stage designates nothing but things that we today call "illusions."

Chapter 36—Troublesome words

36.29. Translate these sentences:

- 2. If luck comes once, then five ill winds come after it.
- 4. A dog bites whomever has bad luck even if he is riding a camel.
- 5. On a (1) note (2) written (3) by the mailman to Fräulein Meier (4) is written,"I love you."
- 7. It is better to ask twice than to go astray once.
- 8. One values health only after one has lost it.

- 9. Under the bridge, the weather-browned, white-bearded head of an oarsman had appeared, who—to infer from his awkward movements—was not familiar with the lagoon.
- 10. And in fact, in the middle of these horrible moments in which all earthly goods of people perished and all of nature threatened to be buried, the human spirit itself (nom.) seemed to rise (schien . . . aufzugehen) like a beautiful flower.

36.30. Final sentences:

- 1. Is each end as hard as every beginning?
- 3. At the wedding celebration, much champagne is drunk.
- 4. In my experience, one needs 30 hours for the learning of English, 30 days for French, 30 years for German. Either one should therefore reform this language, or one should place it among the dead languages, for nowadays only the dead have time enough to learn it. (But if you have gotten this far, you have obviously learned German. *Congratulations!!!*)



General and Humanities Vocabulary

The General and Humanities Vocabulary consists of about 3,325 entries, excluding the abbreviations following the vocabulary. In addition to the vocabulary words found in the exercise sentences and reading selections it includes several words you are likely to encounter in scholarly readings as well as the definitions most appropriate for such readings. Many of the words (especially those marked **) have been chosen because (1) they have a wide range of radically different meanings (absetzen, zugehen), (2) they are easily confused with other words (fordern, fördern), or (3) they are false cognates (konkurrieren, Prägnanz, sensibel). While it is not necessary to memorize such words, you may wish to mark them in your dictionary. Also, take special note of words (bringen, gehen, stellen, Zeit) that you know already, but which have a variety of idioms associated with them. Words marked * are on my important word list. The post 1996 orthography is often noted in parentheses.

Note the following abbreviations:

```
adj. — adjectiveprep. — prepositionadv. — adverbsuff. — suffixaux.s. — auxiliary is seinv.i. — verb, intransitiveconj. — conjunctionv.r. — verb, reflexivepref. — prefixv.t. — verb, transitive
```

For most nouns, the genitive and the plural endings are given in parentheses. When verbs are separable, the prefix is hyphenated. Strong verbs are conjugated. Note that all verbs with *sein* as an auxiliary are intransitive.

ab (adv.)—off, down, from; (sep. prefix)—downward motion, attrition, etc.

- * der **Abend** (-s, -e)—evening
- * aber (conj.)—but, however, yet; (emphasis)—indeed ab-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to depart, leave; deviate, diverge der Abgrund (-s, =e)—abyss ab-halten—to hold (a meeting)
- ** **ab-hängen (von)**—(irr. v.i.)—to depend on

abhetzen—to wear out

- ** ab-laufen (irr. v.i.)—to elapse, lapse, expire; flow or run off, ebb ab-lehnen (v.t.)—to decline, refuse; reject remove, take off; (v.i.)—to decrease
 - **ab-nehmen** (irr. v.t.)—to diminish, decline
- ** der Absatz (-es, "e) pause, paragraph ab-schließen (irr. v.t.) — to conclude, to settle
- ** der **Abschnitt** (-s, -e) paragraph
- ** ab-setzen (v.t.)—to put down; to dismiss; to delete; (v.i.)—to pause, stop; (v.r.)—to settle, contrast die Absicht (-en)—intention, purpose; mit Absicht—on purpose, deliberately ab-sitzen—to get down, dismount ab-sondern (v.t.)—to separate,

ab-stürzen (i.) - to fall off

isolate

ab-weichen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to deviate, digress, depart die Abwesenheit—absence ab-ziehen (irr. v.t.)—to take off, remove; (v.i.)—to go away, leave, depart ach—alas acht geben—to take care, heed achten (v.t.)—to consider; respect; (v.i.) (auf)—to pay attention or regard or heed to, take notice of der Advokat (-en, -en)—lawyer der Affe (-n, -n)—ape ähneln (v.i.) (dat.)—to resemble ahnen (v.t.)—to suspect, surmise

- ähnlich (adj.)—alikeaktuell (adj.)—relevant, up-to-date
- * **all**—all, every
- * **alle** (pn.)—everyone
- * allein (indecl. pred. adj.)—alone; (adv.)—only, merely, solely; (conj.)—but, however, nevertheless allerdings (adv.)—to be sure
- * alles—everything allgemein (adj.)—general allzu—all too die Alpen—alps
 - als (conj.)—than; when; as;
- * **als ob**—as if
- * **also**—so, thus
- * alt—old das Alter (-s, -)—age das Altertum (-s, -er)—antiquity die Ameise (-n)—ant amüsant—amusing
- * **an** (prep.)—with dat. or acc. (dat.)

- am 4. Juli—on the 4th of July; an sich—in itself; (acc.)—on, onto an-beten—to worship an-bieten—to offer der Anblick (-s, -e)—sight, view an-brechen—to begin, start
- * ander (adj., pron.)—other; am anderen Morgen - on the next morning;
- nichts anderes als-nothing else but ändern—to alter, change anders (adv.)—differently
- der Anfang (-s, -e)—beginning an-fangen (irr. v.t.)—to begin, to
 - do der Angeklagte (-n, -n)—accused die Angel (-n)—fishhook
 - angenehm—agreeable das Angesicht-face, countenance
- ** an-führen (v.t.)—to lead, to quote; deceive
- ** an-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) to commence; (v.t.)—to concern an-greifen (irr. v.t. & i.)—to seize,

grasp; undertake; attack die Angst (-e) - fear, anxiety an-haben—to have on

anhaften—to cling

der Anhang (-s, -e)—appendix, addendum; supporters

an-klopfen (i.) — to knock ** an-kommen (irr. v.i. aux.s.)—to

- arrive; (auf)—to depend on, be a matter of; come upon die Anlage (-n)—structure; outline; predisposition
 - der Anlaß (or Anlass) (-sses, -sse)—
 - an-legen (irr. v.t.)—to apply; to invest; to use; to arrange, establish

- ** an-nehmen (irr. v.t.)—to adopt; to take; to assume, suppose die Anrede (-n)—speech, form of address
- ** der Anschlag (-es, -e)—stroke; plan; estimate der Anschluß (-sses, -sse)—connection, contact
- * an-sehen—to look at an-setzen (v.t.)—to attach. estimate; (v.i.) — to start der Anspruch (-s, -e)—claim, demand
- anständig-decent, respectable anstatt (prep., gen.)—instead of an-stecken—to contaminate, be catching
 - die Antike-antiquity der Antrag (-s,-e) —proposition, proposal, petition
- der Antrieb (-s, -e) impulse, drive die Antwort (-en) - answer
 - **antworten** (tr. & i.)—to answer an-wenden—to use
 - die **Anzeige** (-n)—notice; announcement; review
 - an-zeigen—to show
 - an-ziehen-to pull; to attract
- der Apfel (-s, -)-apple die Arbeit (-en)-work
- der Arbeiter (-s, -) --- worker
 - arg-wicked
 - der Arm (-es, -"e)—arm *arm — poor
 - die Armut—poverty
- die Art (-en)—species; class, type, kind: behavior
- ** -artig (suff.)—like, sembling
- der Arzt (-es, -e) doctor, physician der Ast (-es, -e) - branch

der Atem (-s, -) - breath atmen—to breathe *auch (adv.)—also, too; (emph.); even; auch wenn-even if

- * auf (prep.) with dat. or acc—on, onto, on top of; auf diese Weisein this way; auf jeden Fall—in any event auf (pref.)—up, upward, opening; end something; sudden or brief action auf-bauen (v.i.)—to erect,
 - construct; (v.r.)—to be based on auf-bewahren—to protect auf-blasen—to inflate auf-brechen—(i., aux.s.)—to leave
- ** auf-bringen (irr. v.t.)—to raise, bring up; procure, summon; enrage auf-erlegen (i.) - to impose
- ** auf-fallen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to attract notice or attention; to strike auf-fassen (v.t.)—grasp, view, comprehend, regard, interpret
- ** auf-führen (v.t.)—present, perform; quote die Aufgabe (-n)—task; giving up auf-geben (irr. v.t.)—to give; to give up, surrender
 - auf-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to rise; to open; to become apparent auf-halten—to delay, to stop
- ** auf-heben (irr. v.t.)—to lift or raise up; to terminate, to repeal auf-hören (v.i.) — to stop die Aufklärung-the Enlightenment
 - die Auflage (-n)-edition auf-lösen (v.t.) - to dissolve, resolve; (v.r.)—to disperse
- auf-machen to open

- die Aufnahme (-n)-adoption, acceptance; inclusion auf-passen (v.i.)—to pay attention to auf-prägen (v.t.)—to impress auf-räumen (v.t.)—to do away with
- ** der Aufriß (-sses, -sse)—outline, summary der Aufsatz (-es, -e) - essay, article, treatise auf-schauen (i.)—to look up auf-schieben (irr. v.t.)—to delay
- * auf-stehen (i., aux.s.)—to get up auf-stellen (v.t.)—to erect, assemble; (v.r.) - place or position oneself; to nominate

der Aufstand (-es, -e) - revolt, re-

bellion

- ** auf-treten (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to tread; to appear; to occur auf-tun-to open auf-wärmen—to warm up auf-wecken—to wake up auf-weichen—to soften auf-ziehen—to wind aufs Spiel setzen—to gamble das Auge (-s, -n)—eye
 - der Augenblick (-es, -e) moment
- aus (prep.) with dat. out of, from; aus Berlin kommen-to come from Berlin; aus Erfahrung lernen—to learn by or from experience: aus verschiedenen Gründen—for various reasons; von

Grund aus—thoroughly aus (pref.) - movement away from; movement forward; completion; choice from several possibilities aus-beuten—to exploit

aus-breiten—to stretch (v.r.)—to extend

- **aus-drücken** (v.r.) to express oneself
- ** auseinander-setzen (v.t.)—to explain; (v.r.)—to come to terms with; to argue
- ** der Ausfall—result, outcome; attack aus-führen—to carry out, execute; to explain
 - ausführlich—detailed
- ** die **Ausgabe** (-n)—giving out, distribution; edition (of a book)
- ** aus-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to go out; to end;... auf—to aim at; ... von—to start with ausgezeichnet (adj.) - excellent aus-hacken-to peck out aus-kosten-to experience die Auskunft (-e)-information das Ausland (-s)—foreign countries aus-legen (v.t.)—to lay out; to explain, interpret aus-lernen (i.) - to finish learning aus-machen (v.t.) - to make up, form; decide, determine, agree on; to make a difference die Ausnahme (-n)—exception aus-reichen (i.)—to be enough aus-reißen-to pull out
- excerpt, detail (from an illustration)

ausruhen—to rest, relax

proclamation

der Ausruf (-s, -e)—exclamation;

der Ausschnitt (-s, -e) - extract,

- * aus-sehen (irr. v.i.)—to appear
- * außer (prep.) with dat.—out of, outside, except
- * außerdem (adv.)—besides, moreover das Äußere—outward appearance

äußern (v.t.)—to express; (v.r.) to express oneself äußerst (attrib., adj.) - farthest, utmost, extreme; (adv.) extremely aus-sprechen (irr. v.r.)—to speak one's mind; to grant aus-stehen (irr. v.t.)—to endure, bear; (v.i.)—to be overdue aus-strecken—to extend aus-teilen—to distribute, share der Austritt (-s, -e) - escape, resignation, withdrawal aus-üben (v.t.)—to practice, carry out: to exert der Ausweg (-s, -e)—way out, solution der Auswurf—scum

В

der Bach (-es, "e)—brook backen, bäckt, backte, hat gebacken—to bake das Bad (-es, "er)—bath die Bahn (-en)—path; arena; train, course

- * **bald** (adv.)—soon; almost
- ** der **Band** (es, -e)—volume das **Band** (-es, -e)—tie, bond
- ** bannen (v.t.)—to banish; to charm; to captivate; to excommunicate der Bär (-en, -en)—bear barfuß—barefoot der Bart (es, -e)—beard der Bauch (-es, -e)—stomach
- * bauen (v.t.)—to build, construct; (v.i.)—to build; to depend on der Bauer (-n or -s; -n)—farmer, peasant die Baukunst (-e)—architecture

- der Baum (-es, "e)—tree
 die Baumkrone (-n)—treetop
 be- (pref.)—turns v.i. into v.t.; completion; around, on all sides; supply
 beachten—to notice, regard, heed
 beanspruchen (v.t.)—to claim,
 have a claim to
 der Becher (-s, -)—cup, mug
 bedauerlich—deplorable
 bedenken (irr. v.t.)—to consider,
 remember (v.r.)—to reflect
- bedeuten (v.t.)—to mean, signify
 die Bedeutung (-en)—meaning, significance; importance
 bedingen (v.t.)—to cause, determine, condition; to demand
 bedürfen (v.i.)—to need, want, require (with gen.)
 beeilen (t. & r.)—to hurry
 beenden—to end
 befassen (v.r.)—to occupy or concern oneself with, engage in
 befehlen, befiehlt, befahl, hat befohlen—to command
- * befinden (irr. v.t.)—to find, deem, consider; (v.r.)—to be, to be situated befürchten—to fear begeben—to negotiate (v.r.)— to proceed; es begab sich, daß—it happened ... begegnen (v.i. aux.s.) with dat. —to meet; to occur; (v.r.)—to concur begleiten—to accompany begraben, begräbt, begrub, hat begraben—to bury
- * begreifen, begriff, hat begriffen (v.t.)—to understand, grasp der Begriff (-s, -e)—idea, notion; concept, understanding begründen (v.t.)—to found, establish; to substantiate

- behaglich—comfortable, cozy
 behalten, behält, behielt, hat behalten—to retain
 behandeln (v.t.)—to treat, deal with
 behaupten (v.t.)—to maintain, assert
 die Behauptung (-en)—assertion
 beherrschen (v.t.)—to rule over, to
 control, govern, dominate
 behindert—handicapped
- bei (prep.) with dat.—at, while, during
 bei (pref.)—beside, additional; nearness; tendency toward; add something in addition
- * beide—(adj. & pron.) both;
 die beiden—the two
 der Beifall (-s)—approval, applause
 bei-legen (v.t.)—to add, join; to
 attribute, ascribe, bestow
 beinah (e) (adv.)—almost
 beisammen—together
 beiseite (adv.)—aside
- * das Beispiel (-s, -e)—example; zum Beispiel (z.B.)—for example beißen, biss, hat gebissen—to bite der Beitrag (-s, -e)—contribution; article bejahen—to affirm

bekannt (adj.)—known, familiar **bekennen** (irr. v.t.)—to admit, confess

beklagen—to lament, complain about

* bekommen (irr. v.t.)—to receive, get
bekümmern (v.t.)—to worry;
(v.r.)—to concern oneself with
bekunden (v.t.)—to express, state;
(v.r.)—to become evident

belasten (v.t.)—to burden **beleben**—to animate

```
belegen (v.t.)—to occupy, impose;
to take, enroll in
beleuchten (v.t.)—to light; to illu-
minate, to elucidate
beliebt (-s, -e)—popular
bellen (i.)—to bark
bemächtigen (v.r.)—to seize
bemerken (v.t.)—to notice
bemühen (v.t.)—to trouble; (v.r.) to
concern oneself
benachbart—neighboring
benehmen (v.r.)—to behave
das Benehmen (-s)—conduct,
agreement
beneiden—to envy
benutzen (v.t.)—to use
beobachten (v.t.)—to observe; to
adhere to
die Beobachtung (-en)-observation
berechnen (v.t.)—to calculate: to
mean, intend
der Bereich (-s, -e)—district,
region; field, range, extent
bereit (adj.)—willing, prepared
bereiten (v.t.)—to make ready, to
prepare; to give, offer, cause
bereits—already
der Berg (-es, -e) - mountain
der Bericht (-es, -e)-report, sur-
vey, commentary
berücksichtigen (v.t.)—to consider,
take into account
der Beruf (-es, -e)-vocation, call-
ing, profession
beruhen (v.i.)—to be based or
founded on
berühmt (adj.)—famous
berühren (v.t.)—to touch, allude or
refer to; concern; (v.r.)—to touch;
to be in accord with
die Berührung (-en)—touch, contact
```

beschäftigen (v.t. or r.)—to occupy beschatten—to shade der Bescheid (-es, -e)information, answer bescheiden—modest beschließen (r.)—to conclude **beschreiben** (irr. v.t.)—to describe beschwerlich (adj.)—troublesome besinnen (irr. v.t.)—to think about. consider besitzen, besaß, hat besessen-to possess besonder—particular, special besonders (adv.)—especially besorgen—to procure besprechen (irr. v.t.)—to discuss; to review; (v.r.)—to confer bessern—to improve die Besserung (-en)-improvement beständig (adj.)—constant, invariable, lasting bestätigen (v.t.)—to confirm ** bestehen (irr. v.t.)—to encounter, undergo; overcome (v.i.) — to be, exist, continue: bestehen auf-to insist on: bestehen aus-to consist of

bestellen (v.t.)—to order; to arrange, prepare **bestimmen** (v.t.)—to determine; to grant; to designate; to allocate; to specify, define bestimmt—definitely besuchen—to visit betätigen (v.t.)—to operate, bring about

betäuben—to daze beten (i.)—to pray

men—to be possible;

betonen (v.t.)—to emphasize

** der Betracht—in Betracht kom-

außer Betracht lassen—to disregard;

in Betracht ziehen—to take into account betrachten (v.t.)—to look at; to examine betreffen (irr. v.t.)—to concern der Betrieb (-es, -e)—business, work, operation

betrügen, betrog, hat betrogento deceive

der **Bettler** (-s, -)—beggar beurteilen (v.t.)—to judge, assess

die Bevölkerung (-en)—population * **bevor** (conj.)—before bevorzugen (v.t.)—to prefer, to

favor

- ** bewahren (v.t.)—to guard; to preserve; to keep, to protect
- ** bewähren (v.r.)—to prove one's ability; to prove effective
- * die **Bewegung** (-en)—movement der Beweis (-es, -e) - proof bewilligen (v.t.)—to grant bewußt (adj. & adv.)—conscious, deliberate, aware das Bewußtsein (-s)—consciousness **bezahlen** (v.t.)—to pay bezeugen (v.t.)—to attest bezeichnen—to mark, describe, denote
- ** beziehen (irr. v.t.)—to enter, to adopt; to get; beziehen auf-to relate to

die Beziehung (-en)—relationship

** der Bezug (-es, -e) - reference die **Bibel** (-n)—Bible

der Bibelverkäufer (-s, -)-Bible salesman

bieder (adj.)—honest, conventional, conservative

biegen, bog, hat gebogen - to bend

bieten (irr. v.t.)—to offer; to present * das Bild (-es, -er)—picture, image; portrait; metaphor bilden (v.t.)—to form, shape; to educate, develop; (v.r.)—to arise, be created der Bildhauer (-s, -) - sculptor

* die Bildung (-en)—education, culture; form, organization; formation der Bildungsroman-novel of someone's growth from childhood to maturity

billig (adj.)—just, fair; cheap, reasonable

binden, band, hat gebunden—to bind

binnen (prep.) with gen. or dat. within

- ** der Biograph (-en, -en)—biographer die Biographie (-n)—biography
 - bis (prep.) with acc.—as far as; until; (conj.)—until bisher (adv.) — until now bisschen (adj.) - little bit
- * bitten (irr. v.t.)—to ask (um) for bitter—bitter
- ** blank (adj.)—shining, bright das Blatt (-s, -er) - page, leaf; newspaper
- * bleiben, blieb, ist geblieben (v.i.) to remain, stay, continue; to be left over

bleich—pale der Blick (-es, -e)—look, view, glance

- * blicken (v.i.) to view blind-blind der Blitz (-es, -e) - lightning
- ** bloß (adj.)—bare; (adv.)—merely, only, solely, simply blühen (v.i.) — to blossom

die Blume (-n)—flower
das Blut (-es)—blood
bluten (v. i.)—to bleed
der Boden (-s, -)—ground,
foundation; zu Boden schlagen—
to strike down, to shatter
der Bogen (-s, -or ")—sheet of
paper; curve; arch
boggen—to borrow

- borgen—to borrow

 * böse (adj.)—bad, evil, wicked, angry
 boshaft—malicious
 botanisch—botanic
 der Bote (-n, -n)—messenger
 die Botschaft (-en)—message;
 news
 das Brandopfer—burnt offering,
 sacrifice
- die **Bratwurst** ("e)—sausage

 * **brauchen** (v.t.)—to need, want, require; **brauchen nicht zu**—to not have to
 der **Bräutigam** (-s, -e)—bridegroom

der Bratenduft-smell of cooking

- ** brav (adj.)—honest, good
- * brechen, brach, hat gebrochen to break; (v.r.) to refract
- * breit (adj.)—broad, wide die Breite—width, expanse brennen, brannte, hat gebrannt to burn
- * der Brief (-es, -e)—letter, epistle, document der Briefträger (-s, -)—mailman die Brille (-n)—eyeglasses
- * bringen, brachte, hat gebracht
 (v.t.)—to bring, to take; to
 produce; an den Tag bringen—to
 expose; in Gang bringen—to start;
 in Verdacht bringen—to cast
 suspicion on; ihn um etwas
 bringen—to deprive him of some-

thing; zu Ende bringen—to finish; etwas zustande bringen—to get something done das Brot (-es, -e)—bread die Brücke (-n)—bridge **brüllen** (i.)—to roar der Brunnen (-s, -)—spring, well das Buch (-es, -er)—book die Bühne (-n)—stage, scene, arena der **Bund** (-es, -e)—agreement, bond, alliance Bundes- (in compounds)—federal der Bürger (-s, -)—citizen, bourgeois bügerlich (adj.)—civic, civil; middle class die Bürgerlichkeit—conventionality, plainness

C

der Bürgermeister (-s, -) - mayor

** der **Chef** (-s, -s)—boss, chief

der Busch (-es, -e)-bush

die Buße (-n)—penitence

** der **Christ** (-en, -en)—Christian das **Christentum** (-s)—Christianity

D

- * **da** (adv.)—there; here; then, in that, for that reason; (conj.)—since, because
- * dabei (adv.)—near it, at the same time; in addition, moreover; yet das Dach (-es, -er)—roof dafür (adv.)—for it or them; for that reason; in favor of
- dagegen (adv.)—against it or them;
 (conj.)—on the contrary
 daher (adv.)—from that place;
 therefore; that is why

dahin (adv. and pref.)—there, to that place dahinter-kommen (v.i., aux.s.)—to get at the truth of

- damalig (adj.)—of that time, then
 damals (adv.)—then;
 erst damals—only then;
 schon damals—even then
 die Dame (-n)—woman, lady
- * damit (adv.)—with it or them; thereupon; (conj.)—so that dämmern (i.)—to dawn; to grow dark die Dämmerung—twilight der Dämon (-s, -en)—demon danach (adv.)—after that, towards it; accordingly die Dankbarkeit—thankfulness
- * danken (v.i.)—to thank; (v.t.)—to owe
- * dann (adv.)—then, at that time, besides
 dar-stellen (v.t.)—to represent, depict; (v.r.)—to appear, to be apparent or obvious
 darum (adv.)—around it or them; (conj.)—therefore, on that account, that's why
- * das **Dasein** (-s)—existence, being die **Daseinsform** (-en)—form of existence
- * daß or dass (conj.)—that; so that dauern (v.i.)—to last;
 lange dauern—to take a long time
 dazu (adv.)—for it or them; besides, in addition
 dazu-gehören—to take
 decken (v.t.)—to cover
- * dein— your

- dementsprechend (adj.)—appropriate; (adv.) correspondingly demnach (adv., conj.)—accordingly, consequently; therefore
- * denken, dachte, hat gedacht (v.t. or i.)—to think; consider; imagine; mean; (v.r.)—to think, imagine, believe
- * denn (conj.)—for, because; es sei denn—unless, except dennoch (conj.)—yet, still, however, nevertheless
- * der, das, die -the derart (adv.)—in such a way or manner
- * derselbe (dieselbe, dasselbe, dieselben)—the same
- * deshalb (adv.)—on this account; (conj.)—therefore despotisch—despotic desto (adv.)—all the (more); je... desto—the ... the
- * deren—whose
- * dessen -whose deswegen—for that reason deuten (v.t.)—to explain, interpret; (v.i.)—to point, indicate, signify deutlich (adj.)—distinct, clear
- * deutsch (adj.)—German
 Deutschland—Germany
 dicht (adj.)—dense, compact;
 (adv.)—near, close
 der Dichter (-s, -)—poet, writer
- die **Dichtung** (-en)—poetry, literary works; fiction; imagination

dick — thick, fat der Dieb (-es, -e) — thief dienen (v.i.) — to serve

* dieser (m.), diese (f.), dieses (n.) (dem. adj.)—this;

- diese (pl.)—these
- ** die **Diktatur**—dictatorship
- * das Ding (-es, -e)—object, thing, matter der Direktor (-s, -en)-director

der Diskurs (-es, -e)—discourse

* doch (conj.)—but, though, nevertheless; (adv.)—of course; (part.) just; wenn doch-if only

der **Dom** (-s, -e)—cathedral, dome

der **Donner** (-s)—thunder das Donnerwetter—scene

doppelt (adj.)—double; (adv.)—

twice

das **Dorf** (-s, -er)—village

- der Dorn (-s, -en)—thorn
- * **dort** (adv.)—there, over there das Drama (-s, -men)—drama der Drang (-es, -e)-pressure; urge, craving draußen—outside drehen (v.t.)—to turn; (v.r.) es dreht sich um—it is a question of
- * drei three dreifach—threefold dreitägig-three day
- ** dringen, drang, ist gedrungen (v.i.) — to penetrate, enter; (aux.h.)—to beg, plead, insist on

drohen (i.)—to threaten drücken (v.t.)—to press; to push

stamp; (v.i.)—to be oppressive

der Druckfehler (-s, -) - misprint

* **du**— you (informal) der **Duft** (-es, -e)—scent, smell

dumm—dumb die Dummheit (-en)—stupidity dumpf (adj.)—dull; vague; stifling

dunkel (adj.)—dark, dim,gloomy, sinister; vague; dubious dünken (v.i.)—to seem, look, appear durch (prep.) - with acc. through, throughout, as a result of, by means of; (adv.) - thoroughly durch- (pref.) — through; across; thoroughness durchaus (adv.)—throughout, thoroughly, by all means; quite; durchaus nicht—by no means durch-dringen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to penetrate; win accceptance; (v.t. insep.)—to permeate, pervade durcheinander-at random; mixed

up durch-führen (v.t.) - accomplish, execute

durch-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to pass through;

durchgehen lassen—to let pass, to overlook; (v.t. sep.) - read over or through; to check

durchgehend (adj.)—continuous durch-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) to pass or get through; to appear, to reveal itself; to succeed

durch-lesen—to read through durch-machen (v.t.)—to finish, accomplish; undergo, suffer der Durchschnitt (-s, -e)—crosssection, profile

durchschnittlich - average

- ** durch-setzen (v.t.)—to accomplish; (insep.)—to permeate, pervade; (v.r. sep.)—to be successful durchsichtig (adj.)—clear
- dürfen (modal v.) may, might; be allowed or permitted to; dürfte (subj. II)—(conjecture) might, could

dürsten—to thirst; to be thirsty durstig—thirsty

tower

E

- die Ebbe (-n)—ebb

 * eben (adj.)—even, level; (adv.)—
 just, precisely, exactly;
 eben erst—only just, just now
 ebenso (adv.)—likewise, in the
 same way
 echt (adj.)—genuine, authentic
 die Ecke (-n)—corner
 edel (adj.)—noble
 die Edelleute—nobles, noblemen
 egal (adj.)—equal, alike, all the
 same
 die Egalität—equality
 der Elfenbeinturm (-s =e)—ivory
- * ehe (conj.)—before
 die Ehe—marriage
 ehemalig—former
 eher (adv.)—sooner; more likely;
 rather; eher als—rather than; more
 die Ehre (-n)—honor
 die Ehrfurcht—reverence
 ehrlich (adj.)—honest
 das Ei (-s, -er)—egg
 die Eiche (-n)—oak
 der Eid (-es, -e)—oath
 der Eifer (-s)—eagerness, zeal
 die Eifersucht—jealousy
 * eigen (adj.)—own; peculiar,
- * eigen (adj.)—own; peculiar, characteristic eigen (suff.)—property of, belonging to eigenartig—peculiar, odd die Eigenschaft (-en)—quality, attribute
- eigentlich (adj.)—actual; (adv.)—
 actually, really
 eigentümlich (adj.)—belonging to;
 peculiar to; strange

- eignen (v.r.)—to be suitable; (v.i.)—to be characteristic of ein- (pref.)—motion into
- * ein—a, an, one; ein so—such a einander—one another; each other

ein-bilden (v.t.)—to imagine; to be conceited

die Einbildung—illusion, deception, imagination
ein-brechen—to break in
einbüßen—to lose, forfeit

eindeutig (adj.)—clear, plain; definite; unequivocal
** ein-dringen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to

penetrate; to study closely; to attack; to entreat der **Eindruck** (-es "e)—impression

- * einfach (adj.)—simple; single der Einfall (-s, -e)—sudden idea
- ** ein-fallen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to occur to; to collapse, to invade ein-finden (r.)—to appear der Einfluß (or Einfluss) ("sses, "sse)—influence

ein-führen (v.t.)—to introduce; to insert in

die **Einführung**—introduction der **Eingang** (-s, "e)—entrance; introduction; beginning

** ein-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to understand; to arrive; to die; to be credible to; to consider carefully; (v.t.)—to enter into ein-greifen (irr. v.i.)—to influence; to interfere in; to intrude

die Einheit (-en)—unity
ein-holen—to catch up with; to
gather

einig (adj.)—united

- * einige (adj.)—some, a few
 ein-kaufen—to buy
 der Einklang—harmony,
 agreement
 ein-laden—to invite
 ein-lassen (irr. v.t.)—to let in;
- (v.r.)—to become involved with * einmal (adv.)—once; auf einmal at once: nicht einmal-not even: noch einmal-once again ein-nehmen, nahm ein, hat eingenommen (v.t.)—to take in; to seize, to take up ein-ordnen (v.t.)—to arrange; to classify, fit in ein-prägen (v.t.)—to imprint, to impress ein-reißen-to pull down ein-richten (v.t.) - to arrange, adjust; (v.r.)—to settle down, to establish oneself; to prepare for einsam—lonely
- ** ein-schließen, schloß ein, hat eingeschlossen (v.t.)—to lock up; to surround; to include, to contain ein-sehen (irr. v.t.)—to realize, see einsichtsvoll—insightful ein-sperren—to lock up

die Einsamkeit—loneliness ein-schlafen (i.)—to fall asleep

- **ein-setzen (v.t.)—to appoint; to use; (v.i.)—to start
- einst (adv.)—once; some day
- **ein-stellen (v.t.)—to stop, to discontinue; to adjust; (v.r.)—to appear; to adopt
 einstimmig (adj.)—unanimous
 ein-treten (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to
 occur, happen; to enter, step in;
 eintreten für to intercede for

der Einwand (-s, -e)—objection

- ein-wirken (v.i.) influence, affect
 ** der Einwurf (-s, "e) objection;
 insertion
 einzeln (adj.) single, individual;
 isolated; (adv.) separately, one at a
 time;
 - im einzelnen—in detail
- * einzig (adj.)—only, absolute; (adv.)—only das Eis (-es)—ice ekeln—to disgust der Elefant (-en, -en)—elephant elend—miserable die Eltern (pl.)—parents empfänglich (adj.)—susceptible,
 - receptive
 empfehlen, empfahl, hat
 empfohlen (v.t.)—to recommend;
 (v.r.) to recommend oneself
 - empfinden, empfand, hat empfunden (v.t.)—to feel, perceive
- * das Ende (-s, -n)—end, conclusion; letzten Endes—in the long run; Ende der zwanziger Jahre—in the late 20's
- endlich (adj.)—ultimate, final;
 (adv.)—finally
 eng—narrow
 engagiert (adj.)—committed,
 involved

der Engel (-s, -)—angel
ent- (pref.)—negation, re

ent- (pref.)—negation, reversal, removal; separation; emergence; initiation; intensification

entblößen (v.t.)—to uncover entdecken (v.t.)—to discover entfallen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to not apply; jemandem entfallen—to slip

one's mind entrailer—to si entrailer (v.t.)—to unfold; to

develop

entfernen (v.t.) — to move away; to remove: (v.r.)—to withdraw, to depart entfremden (v.t.)—to alienate entgegen (adv., prep.) with dat. towards; against entgegen- (pref.) - approach or opposition entgegen-setzen (v.t.)—to oppose entgegen-stellen (v.t.) — to contrast; (v.r.)—to oppose entgegen-treten (irr. v.i. aux.s.)—to oppose, to confront entgegnen (v.t. and v.i.)—to answer entgehen, entging, ist entgangen (v.i.)—to escape, avoid, elude enthalten (t.)—to contain: (r.) —to refrain (from) entlang (adv. prep) with acc. entlassen—to dismiss, fire entnehmen, entnahm, hat entnommen (v.t.)—to deduce. infer: to take from entreißen (with dat.)—to tear away entrinnen (i., aux.s.)—to escape entsagen (v.i.)—to renounce entscheiden (irr. v.t., i. & r.)—to decide entschließen (irr. v.r.)—to decide entschuldigen-to excuse das Entsetzen (-s)—horror, terror entsetzen (v.t.)—to horrify entsprechen, entsprach, hat entsprochen (v.i.) — to agree, to correspond

entstehen, entstand, ist entstanden (v.i.)—to originate; to result; to develop die Enttäuschung—disappointment entweder... oder—either ... or entwerten (v.t.)—to devalue entwickeln (v.t.)—to develop, to evolve entziehen, entzog, hat entzogen (v.t.)—to remove, withdraw, to deprive; (v.r.)—to elude der Epigone (-n, -n)—undistinguished descendent or follower er- (pref.)—to produce, bring about, die, kill

- * er—he, it
 erbauen—to build
 der Erbe (-n, -n)—heir, successor
 das Erbe (-s)—heritage, inheritance
 erbleichen (i., aux.s.)—to turn pale

 * die Erde (-n)—earth, ground,
- world
 das Ereignis (-sses, -sse)—event

 * erfahren, erfuhr, hat erfahren
 - (v.t.)—to experience, discover, undergo, learn die Erfahrung (-en)—experience; empirical knowledge erfassen (v.t.)—to seize, grasp; to understand; to include erfinden, erfand, hat erfunden (v.t.)—to invent der Erfolg (-es, -e)—success, result, outcome, effect erforderlich—necessary

erforschen (v.t.)—to investigate erfreuen—to delight, (r) (with gen.) to enjoy

erfüllen (v.t.)—to fill; to fulfill (v.r.)—to come true

ergänzen (v.t.)—to complete, supplement

** ergeben, ergab, hat ergeben
(v.t.)—to produce, yield; (v.r.)—to
be result of, ensue; to surrender

- das **Ergebnis** (-ses, -se)—result, outcome
- ergreifen—to seize, to grasp erhaben (adj.)—elevated, lofty
- * erhalten, erhielt, erhalten—to preserve; to receive erheben (irr. v.t.)—to raise, ascertain; (v.r.)—to rise up, revolt
 - erhöhen—to elevate erholen (r)—recover, relax
- * erinnern (v.t.)—to remind; (v.r.)—
 to remember
 die Erinnerung—memory
- erkaufen—to buy

 erkennen, erkannte, hat erkannt
 (v.t.)—to recognize; erkennen
 lassen—to make clear; es läßt
 sich nicht erkennen—one cannot
 tell
 - die **Erkenntnis** (-se)—knowledge; perception, realization
 - **erklären** (v.t.)—to explain, interpret; to declare, state
 - **erkundigen** (v.r.)—to inquire **erlauben** (v.t.)—to permit
 - erläutern (v.t.)—to permit erläutern (v.t.)—to explain,
 - comment
 - **erleben** (v.t.)—to experience
 - das Erlebnis (-sses, -sse)—occurrence, experience
 - erledigen (v.t.)—to deal with; settle
 - erlösen (v.t.)—to save, free, redeem; liberate
 - erniedrigen—to lower, humble ernst (adj.)—earnest, serious
 - **eröffnen** (v.t.)—to open, to start; to disclose or make known
 - erregen (v.t.)—to excite, provoke erreichen (v.t.)—to reach, attain
 - der **Ersatz** (-es)—substitute **ersaufen** (i., aux.s.)—to drown

- * erscheinen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to seem, appear die Erscheinung (-en)—phenome
 - erschlagen (past participle)—slain erschließen (irr. v.i.)—to develop, infer
 - erschrecken (t. & i.)—to frighten
- * erst (adj.)—first; (adv.)—not until, only; eben erst—just now erstaunlich—astonishing erstechen, erstach, hat erstochen
 - —to stab
 - erstehen, erstand, ist erstanden
 - (v.i.)—to arise, to result
 - erteilen (v.t.)—to give; impart erwachsen, erwuchs, ist erwachsen
 - (v.i.)—to grow up; to develop; to result; to arise
 - erwähnen (v.t.)—to mention
 - * **erwarten** (v.t.)—to expect, anticipate; await
 - erwecken—to wake
 - erweisen, erwies, hat erwiesen
 - (v.t.)—to prove, establish; to show **erwerben**, **erwarb**, **erworben**—to
 - acquire **erwidern** (v.t.)—to answer
 - erzählen (v.t.)—to tell, narrate
 - die **Erzählung** (-en)—story, tale **erzeugen** (v.t.)—produce, beget
 - erziehen, erzog, hat erzogen (v.t.)—to bring up, educate
 - * es—it; es gibt—there is, there are der Esel (-s, -)—donkey
 - essen, ist, as, hat gegessen—to eat
 - die **Ethik** (-en)—ethics, moral philosophy
 - etlicher (m), etliche (f), etliches (n)—quite a few

- * etwa (adv.)—approximately, perhaps; for instance
- * etwas (pron.)—something; (adv.)—
 somewhat, a little
 euer—your
 das Europa (-s)—Europe

das Europa (-s, -)—udder das Evangelium (-s)—gospel

- ** eventuell (adj.)—possible
 ewig (adj.)—eternal; (adv.)—
 always
 - die Ewigkeit—eternity
 das Exemplar (-s, -e)—copy (of a
 book), sample
 existieren (i.)—to exist
 - der **Experte** (-n, -n)—expert der **Expressionismus**—Expressionism
- ** extra (adj.)—extra; (adv.)—
 specially
 die Extrapost—special delivery

F

- ** das Fach (-es, "er)—field, subject; division
 -fach (suff.)—fold
 das Fachgebiet (-s, -e)—specialty das Fachwort (-s, "er)—technical term
 die Fachzeitschrift (-en)—trade Journal
 fähig (adj.)—able, capable die Fähigkeit (-en)—ability
 - * fahren, fährt, fuhr, ist gefahren to ride, drive, go
 - * der Fall (-es, -e)—case, instance, matter, affair; auf jeden Fall—in any case; fall, decline, ruin
- * fallen, fällt, fiel, ist gefallen—to

- fällen—to fell, chop down das Falsch—error fangen, fing, hat gefangen (v.t.) to capture; (v.r.)—to get caught, to
 - take hold
 die Farbe (-n)—color
 fassen (v.t.)—to grasp, seize, appre-
- hend; include; understand

 ** die **Fassung** (-en)—draft, formulation; setting, frame; composure
- fast—almost, nearly
- * faul (adj.)—lazy; rotten die Faulheit—laziness die Feder (-n)—feather, quill
- fehlen (v.i.)—to be missing or wanting; to be absent; es fehlt ihm an—he lacks
- * der Fehler (-s, -)—fault, error der Feierabend (-s, -e)—quitting
 - time feierlich—solemn, festive der Feiertag (-s, -e)—holiday fein (adj.)—fine, precise; acute
- die Feindschaft—animosity das Feld (-es, -er)—field, area felsig—rocky

der Feind (-es, -e)—enemy

- das Fenster (-s, -)—window

 * fern (adj.)—far, distant
 fertig (adj.)—ready, finished
 fest (adj. and adv.)—firm, solid;
 - **fest-stellen** (v.t.)—to establish; to discover, to stress
 - fett—fat

feucht—damp

- das **Feuer** (-s, -)—fire der **Film** (-s, -e)—film, movie
- * finden, fand, hat gefunden (v.t.)
 —to find; to think, to consider
 finster (adj.)—dark, sinister; grim

der Fisch (-es, -e)—fish der Fischer (-s, -) - fisherman fix (adj.)—fixed, firm; quick die Fläche (-n)—surface, area flechten, flocht, hat geflochten to weave der Fleck (-es, -e and -en)-spot das Fleisch (-es)—flesh, meat der Fleiß (-sses)—diligence; mit Fleiß—intentionally fleißig-diligent die Fliege (-n)—fly fliegen, flog, ist geflogen—to fly fliehen, floh, ist geflohen-to flee fließen, floß, ist geflossen (v.i.) to flow; fließen aus-to proceed or result from fließend—flowing; fluent der Floh (-es, -e)—flea der Fluch (-es, -e)—curse die Flucht (-en)—flight, escape flüchtig-fleeting flüssig (adj.)—flowing, fluid die Flut (-en)—flood, flow die Folge (-n)—sequence, series; consequence; zur Folge haben -to lead to

- * folgen (v.i., aux.s.)—to follow, ensue; (aux.h.)—to obey, to listen to folgend—following folgerichtig (adj.)—consistent der Folgeschluß (-sses, =sse)—logical consequence
- ** fordern (v.t.)—to demand, challenge
- ** fördern (v.t.)—to further, promote die Formel (-n)—formula forschen (v.i.)—search, investigate, do research on der Forscher—research worker, scholar

- fort (adv.)—away, gone, forth
 ** fort-fahren, fort-führen—to go
 away; to continue
 fort-gehen (i., aux.s.)—to go away
 der Fortschritt (-s, -e)—progress
 fort-setzen—to continue; Fortset zung folgt—to be continued
 fort-werfen—to throw away
- die Frage (-n)—question, problem, issue;
 fragen (nach)—to ask about
- die Fraktur—Gothic print

 * Frankreich—France
- der Franzose (-n, -n)—Frenchmandie Frau (-en)—woman, Mrs.
- * das Fräulein (-s, -s)—young woman, Miss frei (adj.)—free, independent; die freien Künste—the liberal arts
- * die Freiheit (-en)—freedom
 die Freiheitsbewegung (-en)—freedom movement
 freilich (adv.)—to be sure; indeed
 fremd (adj.)—someone else's;
 strange; foreign
 die Fremde—foreign country; in
 der Fremde—abroad
 die Fremdsprache (-n)—foreign
 language
- fressen—to eat like an animal

 * die Freude (-n)—joy
 - freuen (r)—to be pleased der Freund (-es, -e)—friend die Freundschaft (-en)—friendship freveln (i.)—to violate, blaspheme der Friede (-ns, -n)—peace friedfertig—peaceable friedlich—peaceful frieren, fror, hat gefroren (i.)—to freeze

frisch (adj.)—fresh, bright

die Frist (-en)—period, deadline; extension

fröhlich — joyous

- * die Frucht (-e)—fruit fruchtbar (adj.)—fruitful, prolific
- früh (adj.)—early;
 früher—former
 der Frühling—spring
 das Frühstück (-s)—breakfast
- ** **fügen** (v.t.)—to ordain; formulate; to add; (v.r.)—to comply; to be proper, to come to pass
- * **fühlen** (v.t. & r.)—to perceive
- * führen (v.t.)—to lead, direct die Fülle—abundance, wealth füllen—to fill der Fund (-es, -e)—finding fünf—five
- * für (prep.) with acc.—for die Furcht—fear (vor)—of fürchten (v.t.)—to fear; (v.r.) —to be afraid der Fürst (-en, -en)—prince; ruler der Fuß (-es, -e)—foot, base die Fußspur (-en)—footprint die Fußnote—footnote

G

die Gabe (-n)—gift gackern (i.)—to cackle der Galgen (-s, -)—gallows

- ** der Gang (-es, -e) motion; im Gang bleiben — to keep going; in Gang setzen or bringen — to set in motion; path, aisle, passage die Gans (-e) — goose
- * ganz (adj.)—whole, entire, complete; (adv.)—very, quite, entirely; ganz anders—quite different gar (adv.)—entirely; even

gar nicht—not at all der Garten (-s, ")—garden die Gasse (-n)—side street der Gast (-es, "e)—guest der Gaul (-s, -e)—horse, nag gebären, gebar, geboren (v.t.) —to bear, bring forth das Gebäude (-s, -)—building, structure, framework geben, gab, hat gegeben (v.t.)— to

- give, impart, grant; es gibt—there is, there are; (v.r.)—to submit, yield, abate, to pass oneself off as das Gebet (-s, -e)—prayer das Gebiet (-es, -e)—district, territory, area; field gebieten (irr. v.t.)—to demand (v.i.)—to govern, rule over geboren (adj.)—born das Gebot (-es, -e)—command der Gebrauch (-es, -e)—use; custom
- die Geburt (-en)—birth
 das Gedächtnis (-ses, -se)—memory
 der Gedanke (-ns, -n)—thought,

gebrauchen—to use

conception, idea, notion
gedeihen, gedieh, ist gediehen
(v.i.)—to develop; prosper
gedenken, gedachte, hat gedacht
(v.i.)—to bear in mind; recall (with

gen.)
das Gedicht (-es, -e)—poem
die Geduld—patience
geeignet (adj.)—suitable
die Gefahr (-en)—danger risk

die Gefahr (-en)—danger, risk gefährlich—dangerous

gefallen, gefiel, hat gefallen (v.i.) to please; es hat ihm gefallen—it pleases him or he likes it

** **gefallen** (adj.)—killed in action das **Gefängnis** (-sses, -sse)—prison

- das **Gefühl** (-es, -e)—feeling, touch, instinct, intuitive grasp
- * gegen (prep.) with acc.—towards; against; gegen fünf Uhr—around five o'clock die Gegend (-en)—region, area, neighborhood gegeneinander-stellen (v.t.)—to compare der Gegensatz (-es, -e)—antithesis;

der Gegenstand (s. "e) — antithesis

der **Gegenstand** (-s, -e)—object, thing; subject (matter)

- * **gegenüber** (prep.) with dat.—opposite, vis-à-vis; with regard to
- * die **Gegenwart**—presence; the present (time);

gegenwärtig—present day der **Gegner** (-s, -)—opponent der **Gehalt** (-s, -e)—contents, capacity

geheim (adj.)—secret, confidential der **Geheimrat** (-s, -e)—confident

- * gehen, ging, ist gegangen (v.i.)—to go, walk, proceed; in sich gehen to take stock of one's position; es geht—it is possible; es geht um—it is a matter of
- * gehören (v.i.)—to belong to gehörig (adj.)—belonging to; proper, requisite gehorsam—obedient die Geiß—goat
- * der Geist (-es, -er)—spirit, wit, intellect, genius, essence, ghost die Geistesgeschichte—history of ideas

geistig—spiritual, intellectual geizig—avaricious, stingy das Gelände (-s, no pl.)—tract of land, area, region

- **gelangen** (v.i.)—to gain, acquire, reach, arrive at
- * das **Geld** (es, -er) money, capital
- ** gelegen (adj.)—situated, located; convenient, opportune die Gelegenheit (-en)—opportunity

gelehrt—educated, scholarly

- * gelingen, gelang, ist gelungen (v.i.)—to succeed, to be successful; es gelingt ihr —she succeeds
- * gelten, galt, hat gegolten (v.i.)—to mean; be valid; count; gelten für or als—to be considered as; das gilt nicht—that is not allowed; (v.t.)—to be worth

gemäß (adj.)—appropriate; (prep.) with dat. according to

gemein (adj.)—common, general; low, vulgar, mean

die **Gemeinde** (-n)—community; municipality

gemeinhin (adv.)—generally **gemeinsam** (adj.)—common die **Gemeinschaft** (-en)—community

das **Gemüt** (-s, -er)—disposition, soul

gemütlich (adj.)—good-natured; agreeable; cosy, comfortable genannt (adj.)—called *genau (adj.)—exact, precise, in

detail; (adv.) — just, exactly, precisely; quite

genehmigen (v.t.)—to approve, to grant, authorize

- geneigt (adj.)—inclined; willing

 ** genial (adj.)—gifted; brilliant
 genießen, genoß, hat genossen
- (v.t.)—to enjoy

 * genug (adv.)—enough

- gerade (adj.)—straight, direct, sincere; (adv.)—just, exactly, precisely
 geradeaus (adv.)—straight ahead
 geradezu (adv.)—immediately; virtually; frankly
 das Gerät (-es, -e)—implement
 geraten, geriet, ist geraten (v.i.)—
 to get, fall, land
 gerecht (adj.)—just, fair
- * die Gerechtigkeit—justice das Gericht (-es, -e)—court of justice; law-court, judgement gering (adj.)—small, petty
- * gern (adv.)—with pleasure; gern haben—to like to das Gerücht (-es, -e)—rumor gesamt (adj.)—whole, entire der Gesang (-s, -e)—song das Geschäft (-es, -e)—business, trade, transaction; duty die Geschäftigkeit—activity, industriousness
- * geschehen, geschah, ist geschehen (v.i.)—to take place, happen, to occur; es ist um uns geschehen—we are doomed
- das Geschenk (-s, -e)—gift

 * die Geschichte (-en)—history, story
 geschickt (adj.)—skillful
 das Geschlecht (-es, -er)—sex,
 species, race, generation
 geschlossen (adj.)—closed, united;
 unified
 der Geschmack (-es, -er)—taste
 das Geschöpf (-s, -e)—creature
 das Geschrei (-s)—cry, scream
- ** geschweige (denn)—not to mention
 gesegnet—blessed

das Geschwätz (-es) - chatter

- gesellen (v.t.)—to join, ally die Gesellschaft (-en)—society, community das Gesetz (-es, -e)—law, act, decree, principle
- (conj.)—granted, supposing
 das Gesicht (-s, -er)—face, countenance, appearance
 der Gesichtspunkt (-en)—

viewpoint

gesetzt (adj.) - fixed, established

- die Gesinnung (-en)—disposition gespannt (adj.)—strained; tense; gespannt sein—to be in suspense das Gespenst (-es, -er)—ghost das Gespräch (-es, -e)—conversation, discourse; discussion die Gestalt (-en)—form, shape, figure; manner; character das Geständnis (-ses, -se)—admission, confession
- gestatten (v.t.)—to permit, allow gestehen, gestand, hat gestanden (v.t.)—to confess
- **gestern** (adv.)—yesterday **gestohlen**—stolen
- die Gesund (adj.)—healthy
 die Gesundheit—health
 das Getränk (-es, -e)—drink
 gewähren (v.t.)—to grant, give
 die Gewalt (-en)—power, authority,
 control, violence; force
 das Gewerbe (-s, -)—trade, profession
- **gewesen**—been (see **sein**)
 das **Gewicht** (-es, -e)—weight; gravity, importance
 - gewinnen, gewann, hat gewonnen (v.t.)—to win, gain, get
- * gewiß (or gewiss) (adj.)—sure, certain; (adv.)—certainly, to be sure das Gewissen (-s, -)—conscience

grau-grey

```
gewissermaßen (adv.)—to some extent
```

gewöhnen (v.t.)—to accustom; (v.r.)—to become accustomed (an) to die **Gewohnheit** (-en)—habit, custom

- * gewöhnlich usual (adj.); usually (adv.)
 das Gift (-es, -e) poison, toxin glänzen (v.t.) to glisten, shine, to excel, to be outstanding gläsern—glass glatt (adj.) smooth, even, flat; plain, clear; (adv.) quite der Glaube (-ns, -n)—faith, belief
- * glauben (t. & i.)—to believe
- * **gleich** (adj.)—same, like, equal; (adv.)—just; immediately, at once
- das Gleichgewicht (-s, -e)—balance gleichgültig—indifferent das Gleichnis (-ses, -se)—image, simile, allegory, parable, metaphor gleichviel (adv.)—nonetheless gleichwohl (adv.)—nevertheless, yet

gleichzeitig (adj.)—simultaneous die Glocke (-n)—bell, chime das Glück (-es)—happiness, fortune, luck

glücken (v.i., aux.s.)—to succeed

- * glücklich—happy, lucky die Gnade—grace, mercy gönnen (v.t.)—to grant die Gotik—Gothic
- * der Gott (-es, =er)—God, god das Götterbild (-s, -er)—idol die Gottheit—divinity; godhead göttlich (adj.)—divine gottlos—godless der Götze (-n, -n)—idol

das Grab (-es, -er)—grave, tomb; end graben, grub, hat gegraben (v.t.) to dig, excavate der Grad (-es, -e)—degree; extent der Graf (-en, -en)—count

grausam (adj.)—cruel; dreadful **greifbar** (adj.)—ready, on hand; tangible, obvious

greifen, griff, hat gegriffen (v.t.) to seize, grasp; (v.i.)—to touch; be effective

die **Grenze** (-n)—boundary, limit, border

der Grieche (-n, -n)—Greek das Griechentum (-s) —Hellenism griechisch—Greek

grob (adj.)—rough, crude, coarsegroß (adj.)—tall, high; large, great, immense; eminent

großartig (adj.)—great, grand, splendid die Größe—height; stature großenteils (adv.)—mainly, mostly

größtenteils (adv.) — mostly der Großvater (-s, =) — grandfather die Grünanlage (-n) — green area

der Grund (-es, -e)—foundation, basis; ground, earth; land im Grunde—fundamentally; reason, cause; aus diesem Grunde—for this reason;

der **Grundbegriff** (-s, -e)—fundamental concept

gründen (v.t.)—to establish, set up; base; (v.r.)—rest, rely, be based on die Grundlage (-n)—foundation der Grundsatz (-es, =e)—principle der Grundzug (-s, =e)—essential

feature or characteristic

die **Gruppe** (-n)—group, category der **Gruß** (-es, -e)—greeting **grüßen** (v.t.) —to greet **gültig** (adj.)—valid, effective der **Gummi** (-s)—rubber die **Gunst**—favor; advantage

* gut (adj.—good; (adv.)—well
das Gut (-es, -er)—property, possession, estate; good thing
die Güte—kindness, goodness
das Gute—good (thing or part)
die Gutheißung—approval
gutherzig—good-natured

Н

das **Haar** (-s, -e)—hair die **Habe**—property, goods

- * haben, hatte, hat gehabt (v.t.)—to have der Hafen (-s, -)—harbor; haven
- * haft (suff.)—designates a type or quality; wesenhaft—essential der Hahn (-s, -e)—rooster halb (adj.)—half; (adv.)—by halves -halber (suff.)—on account of halbstark—rowdy die Hälfte—half der Hals (-es, -e)—neck, throat
- * halten, hielt, hat gehalten (v.t.)—
 to hold, keep, retain; to think,
 deem, consider; (v.i.)—to stop, hold
 out; (v.r.)—to hold out, last; behave;
 follow; adhere to
 die Haltung—bearing, attitude;
 behavior; position
 das Hammelfleisch—mutton
 die Hand ("e)—hand; handwriting;
 side; source; mit der Hand—by
 hand

- der **Handel** (-s, -)—trade, transaction; deal; action
- * handeln (v.i.)—to act; to bargain (um) for; (v.r.)—es handelt sich um—it is a question or matter of die Handlung—action, deed; plot hängen—to hang; caught hart (adj.)—hard, difficult, troublesome; (adv.)—hard; (an)—close by die Härte—harshness, severity
- hartnäckig—stubborn; persistent der Hase (-n, -n)—rabbit * der Hass (or Hass) (-sses)—hatred;
- hassen—to hate
 häßlich (adj.)—ugly, hideous, repulsive; nasty
 die Haßliebe—love-hate relationship
 die Hast—haste, hurry
 der Hauch (-es, -e)—breath; tinge,
 trace; aura

häufig (adj.)—frequent; (adv.)—frequently, often

- * das Haupt (-es, =er)—head, leader, chief, principal die Hauptabsicht (-en)—main object die Hauptfigur (-en)—main or cen
 - tral figure die **Hauptsache** (-en)—main point or issue

die Hauptstadt (-e)—capital
das Haus (-es, -er)—house
häuslich (adj.)—domestic
die Hausmacht (-e)—power base
die Haut—skin

heben, hob, hat gehoben (v.t.) — to lift; accentuate; (v.r.) — to improve

der **Hebräer**—Hebrew das **Heer** (-es, -e)—army

- ** das Heft (-es, -e) paperback book, pamphlet, brochure; handle heftig (adj.) violent, severe heil (adj.) whole, uninjured das Heil well-being, welfare, salvation
 - heilen—to heal
 heilig (adj.)—holy, sacred
 heim—home
 die Heimat (-en)—home, native
 - country

 heimlich (adj.)—secret, hidden
 heim-suchen (v.t.)—to afflict
 der Heimweg (-s, -e)—way home
 die Heirat (-en)—marriage
- * heiß (adj.)—hot, ardent
- * heißen, hieß, hat geheißen (v.t.)
 —to name, call; to command;
 (v.i.)—to be called; es heißt, daß—
 it is said that
 heiter (adj.)—cheerful, clear
 heizen (v.t.)—to heat
 das Heizöl—heating oil
 der Held (-en, -en)—hero
 die Heldendichtung—heroic or
 epic poetry
- helfen, half, hat geholfen (v.i.) —
 to help, aid, support
 hell (adj.) clear, bright; light;
 hellichter Tag broad daylight
 henken—to hang
- * her (adv.)—here, this way; hin und her—to and fro; von weit her—from afar; (time)—since, ago; wie lange ist es her—how long ago is it herab (pref.)—movement downwards herab-fallen (i., aux.s.)—to fall down herab-schreien—to call down herab-setzen (v.t.)—to lower, to reduce

- herab-steigen (i., aux.s.)—to climb down, dismount heran (adv. and pref.)—movement into the proximity of the speaker; near
- **heran-kommen** (v.i.)—to draw or come near
- ** heran-ziehen (v.t.)—to draw near; to procure; to quote; to enlist; to attract; to raise, bring up; (v.i.) to approach, draw near heraus (adv. and pref.)—movement from inside a place as seen by the person outside; out; forth
 - heraus-finden (v.t.)—to find out, to discover; (v.r.)—to extricate one-self
 - die **Herausforderung**—challenge, provocation
 - der **Herausgeber** (-s, -)—editor **heraus-holen** (v.t.)—to get or take or draw out, to extract; to elicit; to gain
 - heraus-nehmen (v.t.)—to take out, to remove; (v.r.)—to presume
 - heraus-stellen (v.t.)—to expose, to set forth; (v.r.)—to appear, to turn out herbei (adv., sep. pref.)—indicates a movement from a remoter place to a
 - nearer one; near, here
 - **herbei-führen** (v.t.)—to bring about or produce
 - der Herbst (-es, -e)—autumn
 - die **Herde** (-n)—flock, herd; crowd **herein** (adv. and pref.)—indicates
 - movement into a place as seen by a person inside; in, in here
 - **her-kommen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to come here, to approach
 - das **Herkommen** (-s)—origin, extraction

die **Herkunft** (-e)—origin or descent; derivation (of a word)

- * der Herr (-n, -en) master, lord, God, ruler, gentleman, Mr. der **Herrenhund** (-s, -e)—aristocrat's dog herrlich (adj.) - magnificent die Herrschaft (-en) - dominion, power; command, domination; manor; master and mistress herrschen (v. & i.)—to rule, reign, prevail, be in vogue; dominate der Herrscher (-s, -)-ruler, governor her-stellen (v.t.)—to set up, establish, create; place here herum (adv. and pref.)—indicates a movement around, or an approximate time or amount herum-gehen (i. aux.s.)—to go around, associate herunter-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to deteriorate, decay; to come down(stairs); to get over hervor-bringen (irr. v.t.)—to bring forth, produce; utter hervorragend (adj.)—prominent, protruding, outstanding **hervor-treten** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to come forward; stand out; to become evident; emerge from
- * das Herz (-ens, -en)—heart, feeling, soul das Herzeleid—suffering herzlich (adj.)—hearty, cordial der Herzog (-es, -e or -e)—duke die Heuchelei (-en)—hypocrisy
- * heute (adv.)—today; heute abend—this evening; heute früh this morning

- hier (adv.)—here, present; on this occasion; now
 hierher—to this place; bis hierher—up to now, so far
- * der Himmel (-s, -)—heaven, sky das Himmelreich—kingdom of heaven
- * hin (adv.)—expresses motion away from the speaker; expresses duration of time into the future; hin und her —to and fro; hin und wieder now and then hinab (adv. and pref.)—down hinab-fallen (i., aux.s.)—to fall off hinan-steigen (i., aux.s.)—to climb (up)

hinauf (adv. and pref.)—up hinaus (adv. and pref.)—outside, forth

hinaus-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to surpass; to go out; hinaus-gehen auf—to aim at hinaus-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to come out; to go beyond; hinauskommen auf (acc.)—to come or amount to hindern—to hinder hinein (adv. and pref.)—into hinein-passen (v. i.)—to fit in hin-geben (irr. v.t.)—to give up,

hin-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to go to that place; to elapse, to pass hinken (v. i.)—to limp hinsichtlich (prep.)—with regard

to, concerning **hinten** (adv.)—behind

the other, in succession

surrender, sacrifice

 hinter (prep, and pref.) with dat. or acc.—behind; after
 hintereinander (adv.)—one after der Hintergrund (-s, -e) —background; (pl.) hidden difficulties hinterlassen (irr. v.t.)—to leave, to leave behind, to bequeath hinüber (adv., pref.)—over there, across, beyond hinüber-laufen (i., aux.s.)—to walk hinweg (adv., pref.) — away, off hin-weisen (irr. v.i.)—to point to, indicate; point out, allude to hinzu (adv., pref.)—to, towards, besides, in addition hinzu-fügen (v.t.)—to add, append; to enclose der Historiker (-s, -) - historian die Hitze (-n)—heat, ardor hoch (adj.)—high, tall, lofty, sublime; hoher Genuß-great enjoyment; (adv.)—highly die Hochachtung-high esteem, admiration; deep respect hochachtungsvoll—respectfully hochgestellt (adj.)—high-ranking der Hochmut-pride, arrogance höchst (sup. adj.)—highest, utmost; (adv.)—extremely die Hochzeit (-en)-wedding hoffen (v.i.)—to hope (auf) for die Hoffnung (-en)-hope, anticipation höflich (adj.)—polite die Höhe-height, loftiness, summit, level or price or volume, musical pitch der Höhepunkt (-s, -e)—highest or culminating point, peak, climax holen (v.t.)—to get, fetch; holen lassen—to send for

die Hölle—hell

- das Holz (-es, =er)—wood der Holzapfel (-s, =)—crab apple horchen (v.i.)—to listen (auf) to
- * hören (v.t., v.i.)—to hear, to listen;
 hören auf— to listen to, heed, obey
 das Hörensagen—hearsay
 das Horn (-s, -e)—hörn
 das Hosenbein (-s, -e)—pant leg
 das Hufeisen (-s, -e)—horse shoe
 das Huhn (-s, -er)—hen, fowl
 huldigen (v.i.)—to do homage
- ** human (adj.)—humane
 der Humanismus—Humanism
 der Hund (-es, -e)—dog
 hundertjährig (adj.)—centenary
 hundertprozentig (adj. and adv.)—
 hundred per cent; completely
 der Hunger—hunger
 das Husten (-s, -)—coughing
- ** der **Hut** (-es, -e)—hat, cover, lid
- ** die Hut—protection, shelter; auf der Hut sein—to be on guard hüten (v.t.)—to guard, take care of; (v.r.)—to watch out (vor) for die Hütte (-n)—hut, cottage die Hypothese (-n)—hypothesis

I

- * ich—I; Ich—self, ego
 die Idee (-n)—idea, notion; fixe
 Idee—obsession
 die Iden—Ides
 der Ideologe (-n, -n)—ideologist
- * **ihr**—you, to her, her, their (its, when referring to a feminine noun)
- * immer (adv.)—always, constantly; noch immer—even now; immer wieder—again and again; immer & comparative is an intensifier—

immer mehr—more and more; immer höher—higher and higher; (part.) in any case, after all; er ist doch immerhin dein Bruder after all, he is your brother imponieren (v.i.)—to be impressive or imposing imstande (pred. adj.)—capable of

- * in (prep.)—with dat. or acc. —in, into
 - der Inbegriff—perfect example
- * indem (conj.)—as, while; by der Inder (-s, -)—Hindu, Indian indessen—meanwhile das Indien—India infolge (prep.) with gen.—as a result of; owing to
- * der Inhalt (-s, -e)—contents, capacity, volume; subject, substance, gist das Inhaltsverzeichnis—index das Inland (-s)—inland; native

country
inne (adv. pref.)—within
innehalten (tr. v.i.)—to pause; to

stop
innen (within)—within
inner (adj.)—inner, ulterior,
domestic, spiritual
innerhalb (adv., prep.)—within

innerhalb (adv., prep.)—within innerlich (adj.)—mental, spiritual innig (adj.)—hearty der Insasse (-n, -n)—inmate insbesondere (adv.)—in particular

die Insel (-n)—island

insofern (adv. and conj.)—(in) so far as; if

** die Instanz (-en)—authority das Interesse (-s, -n)—interest interessieren (v.t.)—to interest (für)—in; (v.r.)—to be interested intim (adj.)—intimate inzwischen (adv.)—meanwhile der Ire (-n, -n)—Irishman

irgend (adv.)—any, some;
irgendein—someone, anyone;
irgendwann—at some point;
irgendwo—somewhere or another
ironisch—ironic
irr(e) (adj.)—in error; crazy
irre-gehen (i., aux.s.)—to go astray
irren (v.i.)—to go astray, to err,
(v.r.)—to be mistaken
der Irrtum (-s, =er)—error
das Italien—Italy

J

- ja (adv., part.) yes; indeed, certainly, of course, after all ja sagen—to affirm, say yes jagen (v.t.)—to hunt, chase, pursue
- * das Jahr (-es, -e)—year; nach Jahren—after many years; seit Jahren—for years; vor einem Jahr—a year ago der Jahrgang—age-group, year of publication
- * das Jahrhundert (-es, -e)—century der Jammer (-s)—misery
- * je (adv., conj.)—ever, at any time; je nach — according to; je ... desto the ... the
- * jede (adj.)—each, every; (pron.) each, everyone jedenfalls (adv.)—in any case jedesmal (adv.)—each or every time

jedoch (adv.)—however, still

* jemand (pron.)—someone jene (adj.)—that, those; (pron.) that one, those people jener—that, that one, the former

- **jenseits** (prep.) with gen.—on the other side of
- * jetzt (adv.)—now, at present; für jetzt—for the present jeweilig (adj.)—at the moment, respective; or jeweils (adv.)—at times, from time to time der Jude (-n, -n)—Jew die Jugend—youth, young people
- * jung (adj.)—young, new, recent der Junge (-n, -n)—boy, youth der Jünger (-s, -)—disciple, follower die Jungfrau (-en)—virgin, maiden
- ** jüngst (sup. adj.)—youngest, latest, (adv.) recently, lately

 Jura (no article)—law

K

kahl (adj.)—bald; bare, naked, empty; bleak der Kaiser (-s, -) - emperor kaiserlich (adj.)—imperial das Kalb (-es, -er)—calf der Kalender (-s, -) - calender kalt -cold das Kamel (-s, -e)—camel der Kamerad (-en, -en)—companion, colleague, comrade der Kamin (-s, -e)-fireplace der Kampf (-es, -e) - battle, fight, struggle, contest kämpfen (t. & i.)—to fight die Kanone (-n)—cannon die Kanzlei (-en)-chancellery die Kapelle (-n)—chapel das Kapitel (-s, -)—chapter; topic; period die Kappe (-n)—cap

- karg (adj.)—scanty, stingy, sparse die Karikatur (-en)—caricature Karl der Große—Charlemagne die Karriere (-n)—career die **Karte** (-n)—card, map, chart, ticket die Kartoffel (-n)-potato der Kasten (-s, -)-box, chest die Kathedrale (-n)—cathedral die Katze (-n)—cat der Kauf (-s, -e) — purchase kaufen (v.t.) - to buy, purchase **kaum** (adv.)—hardly, scarcely **kehren** (v.t.)—to turn (over); (v.r.)—to heed; (v.i.)—in sich kehren—to be lost in thought, meditate der Keim (-es, -e)—germ, seed, origin
- * kein (adj.)—no, not a; (pron.) keiner—no one keinesfalls, keineswegs (adv.)—by no means; under no circumstances keinmal—no time der Kellner (-s, -)—waiter
- * kennen, kannte, hat gekannt
 (v.t.)—to know, be acquainted with,
 to understand
 kennen-lernen (v.t.)—to become
 acquainted with
 die Kenntnis (-se)—knowledge,
 cognizance, awareness
 das Kennzeichen (-s)—distinguishing marks or features

der Kern (-es, -e)—kernel, core die Kernforschung—nuclear science die Kernfrage—central issue

die **Kette** (-n)—chain, series der **Ketzer** (-s, -)—heretic der **Kieselstein** (-s, -e)—pebble das Kind (-es, -er)—child kindisch (adj.)—childish kindlich (adj.)—child-like die Kirche (-n)—church die Kirchenglocke (-n)—church die Kirchenlehre (-n)—church doctrine die Kirchenmaus (-e) - church mouse der Kirchhof (-e)—churchyard, graveyard kirchlich (adj.) - ecclesiastical, relidie Klage (-n)—complaint,lament; action, suit klagen—to complain; to sue; to wail der Klang (-es, -e)—sound klar-self-evident die Klassenlage-class position

- * klar (adj.)—clear, plain; an sich die Klassik-classical period die Klaue (-n)—claw das **Kleid** (-es, -er)—dress, clothes
- * klein (adj.)—little, small, tiny, short (size), insignificant, petty; exact; die kleinen Leute — the lower middleclass, the common people; (adv.) klein denken —to have narrow views: im Kleinen-on a small scale, in detail der Kleriker (-s, -) —cleric, priest, clergyman klingeln (i.)—to ring, chime die Klinke (-n)—latch die Kluft (-e)—crevice, crack, chasm klug (adj.)—clever, intelligent der Knabe (-n, -n)—lad, boy **knapp** (adj.)—narrow; scant(y),

scarce; accurate; (adv.) - barely, only

just

- knirschen (i.) gnash der Koch (-es, -e) — cook kochen—to cook der Kohl-cabbage
- ** die Kombination—surmise, inference; combination; scheme komisch—funny
- * kommen, kam, ist gekommen (v.i.)—to come, arrive, approach, occur, happen, arise; mir kam der Gedanke—it occured to me: hinter die Wahrheit kommen-to discover the truth: kommen über (acc)—to fall upon, to befall; ums Leben kommen—to die; zu sich kommen—to recover one's senses die Komödie—comedy komponieren (v.t.)—to compose der König (-s, -e)—king das Königreich-kingdom
- ** die Konjunktur (-en)—economy
- ** der Konkurrent (-en, -en) —competitor, rival
- ** konkurrieren (v.i.)—to compete
- können (modal)—to be able to; to be allowed to: er kann nichts dafür—he can't help it
- ** konsequent (adj.)—consistent
- ** konstatieren (v.t.)—to see, notice konstruieren (v.t.)—to construct. design; der konstruierte Fall-hypothetical case
- ** der Konvent (-es, -e)—gathering, convention
- ** das Konzept (-es, -e)—draft; (pl.) notes
- der Kopf (-es, "e)—head; top; heading; ability, sense das Kopfweh (-s)—headache der Körper (-s, -)—body; bulk; substance

- kosten (v.t.)—to taste, enjoy; (v.i.)—to cost; require köstlich (adj.) - exquisite, wonder-
- ful; priceless * die Kraft (-e)—strength, power, force; energy, validity; außer Kraft setzen-to annul: in Kraft treten—to become effective kraft (prep.) with gen. - by virtue of, on the strength of die **Krähe** (-n)—crow der Krämer (-s, -) - merchant **krank** (adj.)—ill, sick, ailing kränken (v.t.)—to offend der Kreis (-es, -e)—circle, district, sphere das Kreuz (-es, -e)—cross, crucifix, burden
- der Krieg (-es, -e)—war, warfare kriegen - to get die Krankheit (-en)—illness der Kranz (-es, -e)—wreath die Krise (-n)—crisis, turningpoint die Kritik (-en)—criticism, review, critique der Kritiker (-s, -) - critic die Krone (-n)—crown die Krücke (-n)—crutch der **Krug** (-es, -e)—jug **krumm** (adj.)—crooked die Küche (-n)-kitchen die **Kuh** ("e)—cow kühl— cool kühn (adj.)—bold, brave, daring die Kultur (-en)—culture, civilization

der Kulturfilm—documentary kulturgeschichtlich (adj.) - refer-

ring to the history of civilization

kümmern (v.t.)—trouble; concern,

- worry; (v.r.)—to mind, to take care of, to worry (um) about
- ** die Kunde (-n)—information, news
- ** der Kunde (-n, -n)—customer, client kundig (adj.)—versed, skilled, ex-

künftig (adj.)—future, next

- * die Kunst (-e)—art, skill; die schönen Künste—the fine arts künstlerisch (adj.) - artistic künstlich-artificial, synthetic der **Kurs** (-es, -e)—course; exchange rate
- * kurz (adj., adv.)—short, brief, curt; kurz und bündig—briefly, concisely; in kurzem—soon, shortly; seit kurzem—lately, of late kürzen (v.t.)—to shorten, condense die Kurzgeschichte (-n)—short story kürzlich (adv.)—lately, recently

küssen—to kiss die **Küste** (-n)—coast, seashore

L

- lächeln (v.i.)—to smile (über) at * lachen (v.i.)—to laugh (über) at lächerlich (adj.)—laughable, ridiculous, absurd laden, lud, hat geladen (v.t.)—to load; to invite die Lage (-n)—situation, position, site; outlook, circumstances; covering der Laib (-es, -e) —loaf der Laie (-n, -n)—layman, novice * das Land (-es, -er)—land, country,
- region, territory die Landschaft (-en)—landscape, scenery, countryside

- * lang (adj.)—long, tall, high; (adv.)—for, during; vier Jahre lang—for 4 years; sein Leben lang—all his life
- * lange (adv.)—for a long time die Länge—length; size; height langen (v.i.)—to be sufficient; langen nach—to reach for die Langeweile—boredom
- * langsam (adj.)—slow
 längst (adv.)—long ago; längst
 nichts—not by a long way
 der Lärm (-s)—noise, din, uproar
- * lassen, ließ, hat gelassen (v.t.)—to leave; let go; let (do), allow, permit; make (do), cause (to do), have (done); sich lassen—can be; das läßt sich sagen—that can be said die Last (-en)—load, burden das Laster (-s, -)—vice das Latein—Latin lauern (v.i.)—to lurk der Lauf (-es, -e)—run, circulation;
- * laufen, lief, ist gelaufen (v.i.) to run, walk, work, extend, elapse; be in progress laufend (adj.)—current, running, steady, consecutive die Laune—mood; whim die Laus ("e)—louse laut (adj.)—loud; (adv.)—aloud; laut werden—to become public

course

- laut werden—to become public
 ** laut (prep.)—with gen. or dat. —
 according to
 lauten (v.i.)—to sound; to be; to
 read; to go
- * lauter (adj.)—clear, pure; (adv.) nothing but
- * **leben** (v.t.)—to live, exist, dwell, stay

das Leben (-s, -)—life, existence lebendig (adj.)—living, animate, alive, lively die Lebensaufgabe (-n)—life's task die Lebensgeschichte—life history, story der Lebenslauf—career, vitae

das Lebensmittel—food lebhaft—lively, vivacious; vivid leer (adj.)—empty, vacant

- * legen (v.t.)—to lay, put, place; (v.r.)—to lie down, cease, die legitim (adj.)—legitimate die Lehre (-n)—doctrine, teaching lehren—to teach
 - der **Lehrer** (-s, -)—teacher der **Lehrsatz** (-es, =e)—thesis, doctrine
- der Leib (-es, -er) body

 * leicht (adj.) easy, effortless; light;
 insignificant; (adv.) easily; lightly
 leichtfertig (adj.) careless, irresponsible
 leid es tut mir leid I am sorry

das Leid (-es)—suffering leiden, litt, hat gelitten (v.t.) —to suffer, bear, tolerate; to allow, admit;

ich kann sie nicht leiden —I can't stand her; (v.i.)

—leiden (unter)—to be afflicted
(with)

die Leidenschaft (-en)—passion leider (adv.)—unfortunately leise (adj.)—low, soft, gentle leisten (v.t.)—to do; accomplish

die Leistung (-en)—achievement leiten (v.t.)—to lead

der **Leiter** (-s, -)—leader, conductor die **Leiter** (-n) —ladder

lenken (v.t.)—to turn, guide, direct

- * lernen (v.t.)—to learn, study
- * lesen, las, hat gelesen (v.t. & v.i.) to read: to lecture
- * letzt (adj.)—last, final, extreme letztens (adv.)—recently leuchten (v.i.)—to shine, illuminate
- * die Leute (pl.)—people, folk, public das Licht (-es, -er)—light; genius lieb (adj.)—dear; (when used as a pred.)—agreeable; es ist ihr lieb—she is glad ...; der liebe Gott—God (Almighty) die Liebe (-n)—love, fondness
- * lieben—to love
- * lieber (adv. comp. of gern) rather, preferably; sooner; better liebevoll—affectionate die Lieblingsmeinung (-en) favorite opinion das Lied (-es, -er)—song, poem, tune liefern (v.t.)—to deliver; to supply; to yield
- * liegen, lag, hat gelegen (v.i.)—to lie, be located, to be; liegen (an) to be due to, to depend on liieren (v.t.)—to bring together lind—gentle lindern (v.t.)—to mitigate, soften die Linie (-n)—line; in erster Linie—in the first place
- * links (adv.)—to the left; linksgerichtet (adj.)—leftist
- ** die List (-en)—cunning, craft
 die Liste (-n)—list, catalogue
 die Literatur (-en)—literature, bibliography
 das Lob (-es)—praise
 loben (v.t.)—to praise

das Loch (-es, -er) - hole, gap

locken (v.t.)—to entice der Logiker (-s, -)—logician lohnen (v.t. & v.i.)—to reward, to be worth los (pred. adj., adv.)—loose, free, disengaged; was ist los—what's the matter?

los- (pref.)—separation; commencement, violence

- -los (suff.)—less; hilflos—helpless löschen—to extinguish
- ** lösen (v.t.)—to release; to solve, answer; to loosen; to cancel los-lassen (irr. v.t.)—to set free
- ** die Lösung (-en)—solution; denouement; cancellation der Löwe (-n, -n)—lion die Lücke (-n)—gap
- * die Luft (-e)—air, breeze die Lüge (-n)—lie, fib
- * lügen, log, hat gelogen (v.i.)—to lie, to fib der Lügner (-s, -)—liar lukullisch (adj.)—epicurean die Lust—pleasure, desire die Lyrik—lyric poetry

M

- * machen (v.t.)—to make, do; produce, form; cause; das macht nichts—that's all right; (v.r.)—to come about, happen; es läßt sich nichts machen—it cannot be done; sich auf den Weg machen—to set out
- * die Macht ("e)—might, authority mächtig—powerful die Machtpolitik—power politics das Mädchen (-s, -)—girl Magen (-s, -, or ")—stomach

mager—thin, lean der Magistrat (-es, -e)—town or city or municipal council das Mahl (-s, -er)—meal mahnen (v.t.)—to remind, warn, admonish, urge

- * das Mal (-es, -e)—time, occasion; zum ersten Mal—for the first time
- * -mal (suf.)—einmal—once; dreimal—three times; manchmal—sometimes malen (v.t.)—to paint, portray
- * man (pron., always nom.)—one, someone
 - manch (adj.)—many a;
- * manche—some
- * manchmal (adv.)—sometimes der Mangel (-s, ")—lack, need mangeln (v.t.)—to want, to be deficient
- der Mann (-es, =er)—man, husband mannigfach or mannigfaltig (adj.)—diverse, manifold der Mantel (-s, =)—coat die Mappe (-n)—briefcase, file der Markt (-s, =e)—market März—March das Maß (-es, -e)—measure, extent; in hohem Maße— in a high degree die Masse (-n)—mass, heap; the masses, the people; substance die Massenbeeinflussung—propaganda maßgebend (adj.)—decisive, authoritative

mäßig (adj.) - moderate; mediocre

die Maßnahme (-n) - measure, ac-

-mäßig (suff.)—like (having the

quality of); -wise

tion

- der Maßstab ("e)—standard; measure; scale
 der Mast (-es, -e & -en)—mast
 matt (adj.)—faint, weak, dull
 die Mauer (-n)—wall
 die Maus ("e)—mouse
 die Medien—media
 die Medizin (-en)—medicine
 das Meer (-es, -e)—ocean
- * mehr (adv.) more; nicht mehr no longer; nichts mehr nothing more
- mehrere (adj., pron.)—several mehrfach (adj.)—multiple, numerous

meiden—to avoid

- * mein—my
 meinen (v.i.)—to believe, think
- * die **Meinung** (-en)—opinion, view
- * meist (sup. adj.)—most; die meisten the majority of them;
- * meistens (adv.)—mostly, generally der Meister (-s, -)—master das Meisterstück (-es, -e) —masterpiece

melden (v.t., v.i.)—to announce; to recount, to tell; (v.r.)—to announce oneself, to register die Menge (-n)—quantity, multitude, crowd

der **Mensch** (-en, -en)—person, human being; (pl.)—people,

mankind

das Menschenalter—generation der Menschenfreund—philanthropist

die Menschenkunde—anthropology die Menschenmenge—crowd die Menschheit—humanity

- menschlich (adj.)—human, humane
- merken (v.t.)—to observe, realize, feel, perceive; (v.i.) - merken (auf)—to pay attention (to) das Merkmal (-s, -e)—sign, characteristic: indication merkwürdig (adj.) — odd, curious messen, maß, hat gemessen (v.t.)—to measure die Miene-countenance, expression das Messer (-s, -) - knife mildern (v.t.)—to soften, ease minder (adj. & adv.)—less mindern (v.t. & v.r.)—to diminish mindest (adj. & adv.)—least; mindestens—at least (adv.) mischen (v.t., v.r.)—to mix, mingle die Mischung-mixture die Misere (-n) - plight, misery miß- (or miss) (pref.)—mis, dis, bad der Mißbrauch (-s, -e) - misuse; abuse der Mißerfolg (-s, -e)—failure das Mißgeschick (-es, -e) - misfortune mißglücken (v.i.)—to fail das Mißverständnis (-ses, -se)discrepancy
 - mißlungen—unsuccessful mißverständlich—misleading mißverstehen (i.)—to misunder-

stand

* mit (prep.) with dat.—with, along with, by means of; (adv.)—together with mit- (pref.)—fellow, joint, codie Mitarbeit (-en)—collaboration mit-bringen—to bring with one miteinander—with one another

- mit-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to accompany
 das Mitglied (-s, -er)—member
 das Mitleid pirs compassion
- das **Mitleid**—pity, compassion **mit-nehmen** (irr. v.t.)—to take along with; to affect; to wear out der **Mittag** (-es, -e)—noon
- * die Mitte—middle, center, midst mit-teilen (v.t., v.r.)—to communicate
 - das Mittel (-s, -)—means, measures; (pl.)—means, resources, funds das Mittelalter—Middle Ages mittels (prep.) with gen.—by means of
 - die Mitternacht—midnight mit-wirken (v.i.)—to collaborate die Mode—fashion, vogue die Moderne—modern age
- mögen (modal)—want, wish, be inclined; das mag sein—that may be
- möglich (adj.)—possible
 die Möglichkeit (-en)—possibility
- * der Monat (-s, -e) month der Mond (-es, -e) — moon der Mondschein — moonlight das Moos — moss die Moral — morals, morality, ethics der Mord (-s, -e) — murder
 - der **Morgen** (-s, -)—morning; dawn
 - morgen (adv.)—tomorrow das Morgenland (-s)—Orient die Morgenröte—sunrise das Motiv (-s, -e)—motive; subject; motif die Möwe (-n)—sea gull
 - die Mücke (-n)—gnat müde (adj.)—weary, tired
 - die **Mühe** (-n)—trouble, effort, difficulty

ture

der **Mund** (-es, -e or -er) —mouth, opening mündig-mündig sein-to be of age die Münze (-n)—coin, coinage mürbe (adj.) — mellow; weary die Musik-music der Muskel (-s, -n)-muscle müssen (sie muß or sie muss)—to have to, must: muste or musstehad to müßig (adj.)—idle, vain das Muster (-s, -) — model, ideal, example der Mut (-s)—courage, spirit mutig-courageous mutmaßen (v.t. & v.i.)—to conjec-

N

die **Mutter** (=) - mother

- * nach (prep.)—with dat.—according to, after, following, towards; nach wie vor—as usual nach-ahmen (v.t.)—to imitate der Nachbar (-s, -n)—neighbor nach-bilden (v.t.)—to reproduce, copy
- * nachdem (conj.)—after, when; (adv.)—afterwards, subsequently nach-denken (irr. v.i.)—to ponder der Nachdruck (-s, "e)—emphasis; reprint nachdrücklich—emphatic, firm die Nachfolge (-n)—sequence; succession nach-forschen (v.t.)—to investigate nach-geben (irr. v.i.)—to yield nachgelassen (adj.)—posthumous

nachher (adv.) — afterwards: later

der Nachkomme (-n, -n)—descendent nach-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) —to come after; to comply with der Nachlaß (-sses, :-sse)—legacy; posthumous works; rebate nachlässig (adj.)—careless der Nachmittag (-s, -e)—afternoon nach-rennen (i., aux.s.)—to chase, pursue nach-prüfen (v.t.)—to check, verify die Nachricht (-en)-news, mesnach-sagen (v.i.) - to credit with nach-schlagen (irr. v.t.)—to refer to, to look up nach-schleichen (i., aux.s.)—to creep after die Nachschrift-copy; postscript nach-sehen (irr. v.t.)—to examine, inspect; to overlook, pardon nach-sinnen (irr. v.i.) — to reflect nächst (adj.) - next, nearest; (prep.) - next to or after; aside from nächstens (adv.)—very soon, shortly die Nacht (-e) - night der Nachteil (-s, -e)—disadvantage die Nachtigall (-n) - nightingale das Nachtlied (-es, -er) - night song der Nachtrag (-es, -e)-supplement der Nachweis (-es, -e)-proof die Nachwelt-posterity nach-wirken (v.i.)—to be felt afterwards das Nachwort (-s, -er)—epilogue nach-zählen-to check, count again nach-ziehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to follow nackt (adj.)—naked die Nadel (-n)-needle

der Nagel (-s, ")—nail
nah (adj.)—near, forthcoming,
close on, impending
die Nähe—nearness; vicinity
nahe-liegen (irr. v.i.)—to be obvious
nähern (v.r.)—to approach
nahezu (adv.)—nearly, almost, virtually
nähren (v.t.)—to feed, nourish
der Name (-ns, -n)—name
namenlos (adj.)—nameless; inde-

- * namens (adv.)—called; (prep.)—on behalf of
- ** namentlich (adv.)—especially

scribable; unspeakable

- * nämlich (adv.)—namely
 der Narr (-en, -en)—fool
 die Narrheit (-en)—foolishness
 die Nase –nose
 die Nationalökonomie—political
 economy
 die Natur (-en)—nature; character,
 disposition; von Natur aus—by
 nature
 naturgetreu (adj.)—true to nature
 die Naturlehre—natural philosophy, (physical) science
 natürlich (adj.)—natural, innate;
- * neben (prep.) with dat. or acc.—
 beside, next to
 die Nebenabsicht (-en)—secondary
 objective
 die Nebenbedeutung—secondary
 meaning

(adv.) — of course, naturally

der Nebel-fog; veil

naturwidrig (adj.)—unnatural

nebeneinander (adv.)—side by side **nebeneinander-stellen** (v.t.)—to compare

- * nehmen, nahm, hat genommen
 (v.i.)—to take (from); auf sich
 nehmen—to assume (a burden)
 der Neid—envy, jealousy
 neigen (v.i.)—to lean or incline (zu)
 to; (v.t.) to bend; (v.r.)—to slant, bow
 die Neigung—inclination;
 tendency; fondness
- * nein (adv.)—no
- * nennen, nannte, hat genannt (v.t.)—to name, mention die Nessel (-n)—nettle nett (adj.)—nice, neat
- * neu (adj.)—new, recent, latest, novel; neuere Sprachen—modern languages; in neuerer Zeit—in recent times die Neuerung—innovation die Neufassung (-en)—revised text neugierig (adj.)—curious neulich (adv.)—recently
- * nicht (adv.)—not; nicht besser
 als—no better than; nicht mehr—
 no longer
 - das Nichts—nothingness
 nichts (pron.)—nothing
 - nie (adv.)—never nieder (adj.)—inferior; lower; (adv.)—down low nieder-drücken (v.t.)—to depress; to press or weigh down nieder-gehen (i., aux.s.)—to descend, set die Niederlage—defeat; failure

nieder-legen—to lay down; to give up der Niederschlag (-s, =e) outcome, result

nieder-werfen—to throw down niedrig (adj.)—low, inferior niemals (adj.)—never

- niemand (pron.)—no one nimmer (adv.)—never nirgendwo (adv.)—nowhere
- * noch (adj.)—still, yet; in addition; noch einer—one more; noch einmal—once again; noch nicht—not yet die Nonne (-n)—nun

nördlich (adj.)—northern, northerly (adv.)—to the north nordöstlich (adj.)—north-east(ern) die Not (-e)—need; aus Not—from

necessity; **not**- (pred. adj.)—necessary

nötig (adj.)—necessary nötigen (v.t.)—to force die Notlage—predicament der Notstand (-es, =e)—state of distress

notwendig (adj.)—necessary

die **Novelle** (-n)—short story, short novel **nüchtern** (adj.)—sober; temperate **null** (adj.)—nil, zero

die **Nummer** (-n)—number, issue (of a journal)

nun (adv.)—now, at present;
(part.)—now, well
nur (adv., part.)—only, alone; just;

simply; wenn nur—if only nutzen or nützen (v.i.)—to be of use; es nützt nichts—it is no use nützlich (adj.)—useful

O

- * **ob** (conj.)—whether, if
- * oben (adv.)—above, on the surface oben-erwähnt or -genannt or -gesagt (adv.)—aforesaid ober—upper

- der **Oberbau**—superstructure **obere** (adj.)—situated above, supreme **oberflächlich** (adj.)—superficial
- oberst (adj.)—uppermost; supreme obgleich (conj.)—although das Obst (-es -arten)—fruit (mainly central-European fruit such as ap-
- ples and plums, but not oranges and bananas)

 * obwohl—although
- öde (adj.)—empty, desolate; dull

 * oder—or: entweder... oder—ei-

* oder—or; entweder... oder—either... or der Ofen (-s, -)—oven

offen (adj.)—open, frank, outspoken offenbar (adj.)—apparent, evident; obvious

offenbaren (v.t.)—to reveal offenkundig (adj.)—clear, overt offensichtlich (adj.)—obvious

öffentlich (adj.)—public die Öffentlichkeit—public

offnen (v.t. & v.r.)—to open
* oft (adv.)—often
oftmals—often

* ohne—without; ohne ... zu — without... -ing die Ohnmacht—impotence, faint das Ohr (-s, -en)—ear die Ökonomie (-s, -)—economy, economics

das Öl (-s, -e)—oil der **Opferkrug** (-es, -e) —sacrificial

vessel

opfern—to sacrifice

ordentlich (adj.)—orderly

ordnen (v.t.)—to arrange, classify die Ordnung—classification, order,

* der Ort (-es, -e)—place, site

örtlich (adj.)—local, endemic
der Osten (-s)—east; Orient; East Germany (prior to 1989)
das Ostern (-)—Easter, Passover das Österreich—Austria
östlich (adj.)—eastern, easterly die Ostsee—Baltic Sea der Ozean (-s, -e)—ocean

P

- das Paar (-es, -e) pair

 * paar (indecl. adj.) couple; a few; some; ein paar Blumen a few flowers

 paaren (t. & r.) to mate
- paaren (t. & r.)—to mate

 ** der Pair (-s, -s)—peer
 der Pakt (-s, -e)—pact
 das Papier (-s, -e)—paper,
 document
 der Papst (-es, -e)—pope
 das Paradies (-es, -e)—paradise
 der Park (-es, -e)—park
 die Partei (-en)—faction, party;
 Partei ergreifen or nehmen für—
 to side with someone
- ** parteiisch, parteilich (adj.) partial

 passen (v.i.)—to be suited to;

 (v.r.)—to be proper

 passieren (v.t.)—to pass; (v.i.,

 aux.s.)—to happen
- ** pathetisch (adj.)—lofty, solemn, expressive, overemotional das Pech (-es)—Pech haben—to have bad luck die Pein—pain peinlich (adj.)—painful, embarrassing; meticulous der Pelz (-es, -e)—fur, pelt der or das Pendel (-s, -)—pendulum

- die Perle (-n)—pearl
- ** das **Personal** (-s)—personnel **persönlich** (adj.)—personal die **Personifizierung**—personification
- ** die Pest—plague
 der Pfarrer (-s, -)—minister
 die Pfefferminze—peppermint
 das Pferd (-es, -e)—horse
 das Pfingsten—Pentecost
 die Pflanze (-n)—plant
 die Pflanzenkunde—botany
 pflegen (v.i.)—to be in the habit of
 (v.t.)—to care for; cultivate
 die Pflicht (-en)—duty, obligation
- * das **Pfund** (-es, -e)—pound, half a kilogram die **Phantasie**—imagination der **Philosoph** (-en, -en)—philosopher

die **Philosophie**—philosophy

** der Photograph (-en, -en)—photographer
der Pilger (-s, -)—pilgrim
die Pinie (-n)—pine
die Plage (-n)—nuisance; plague
das Plakat (-s, -e)—sign, placard
der Plan (-es, "e)—scheme, plan;
chart, diagram
platt (adj.)—flat, dull, trite
der Platz (-es, "e)—place, site,

locality; Platz nehmen-to sit

* plötzlich (adv.)—suddenly

down

** plump (adj.)—clumsy, awkward der Pöbel (-s)—mob, rabble das Polen—Poland die Politik—politics, policy der Posten (-s, -)—post, position prächtig (adj.)—magnificent, splendid

prägen (v.t.)—to stamp, emboss, impress; mold; shape, form, imprint

- ** die Prägnanz—precision, terseness
 prahlen (i.)—to brag
 die Praktik (-en)—practice
 predigen (v.t.)—to preach
 die Predigt (-en)—sermon
 der Preis (-es, -e)—price; prize
- ** **preis-geben** (irr. v.t.)—to surrender; to reveal; to expose; to abandon der Priester (-s, -)-priest der Prinz (-en, -en)-prince das Prinzip (-s, pl. -e or -pien) principle die Probe (-n)—trial, test; sample probieren (v.t.)—to test; to try der Prophet (-en, -en)-prophet die Prosa-prose das Prozent (-s, -e) - per cent der Prozeß (-sses, -sse)—legal proceedings, procedure, process die Prozession (-en) - procession prüfen (v.t.)—to examine, investigate, scrutinize; consider das Publikum (-s, no pl.)—public der Pudel (-s, -)—poodle das Pult (-es, -e)—desk, lectern der Punkt (-es, -"e)—point, place, item, subject

pünktlich (adj.)—punctual
** punktuell (adj.)—selective

Q

die **Qual** (-en)—torment **quälen** (v.t.)—to torture, torment; (v.r.)—to toil, struggle das **Quartal** (-s, -e)—quarter of a year or of a day die **Quelle** (-n)—source; origin; **aus** guter Quelle—from a reliable source quellen, quoll, gequollen—to originate quer (adj.)—diagonal; (adv.)—crosswise der Querschnitt (-s, -e)—cross-section; profile die Quittung—receipt

die Quittung-receipt R rächen (v.t.)—avenge; (v.r.)—to take revenge der Rahmen (-s, -)-background, setting, framework, scope ** die Rakete (-n)-rocket, missile der Rand (-es, -er)-edge, border ** der Rang (-es, -e)—rank, degree, quality; ersten Ranges—first-class ** der Rapport (-s, -e)—report rar (adj.) — rare rasch (adj.) - quick; fast rasen (v.i.)—to rage die Rasse (-n)-race der Rat (-es, pl. Ratschläge) - advice raten, riet, hat geraten (v.i. & v.t.)—to advise; to guess, to conjecture: to solve das Rätsel (-s, -) - riddle, mystery, enigma die Ratte (-n)-rat rauben (v.t.)—to steal, rob der **Räuber** (-s, -)—robber der Rauch (-es)—smoke rauh (adj.) - rough, uneven, coarse

der Raum (-es, -e)-room, space;

räumen (v.t.)—to remove; to clean

scope, sphere

der Rausch (-es, -e)—intoxication, frenzy; ecstasy der Realismus—Realism rechnen (v.t. & v.i.)—to count, calculate; estimate; rank

- * recht (adj.)—right-(hand); right, proper, fitting; (adv.)—well, rightly, rather, quite, very
- das Recht (-es, -e)-right; law; privilege; justice; mit Recht-with good reason rechtfertigen (v.t.)—to justify rechts (adv. prep.)—on the right, to the right rechtsradikal (adj.)—extreme rightwing rechtzeitig (adj.)—timely der Redakteur (-s, -e) - editor die Redaktion-editing die Rede (-n)-speech, conversation; eine Rede halten-to make a speech; der in Rede stehende Gegenstand—the subject under discussion
- * reden (v.t. & v.i.)—to speak, talk, converse das Redeteil—part of speech redlich (adj.)—honest das Referat (-es, -e)—lecture, report, review
- * die Regel (-n)—rule, principle; in der Regel—as a rule regeln (v.t.)—to regulate, control der Regen (-s, -)—rain regieren (v.t. & i.)—to rule, govern die Regierung (-en)—government regnen (v.i.)—to rain
- * reich (adj.)—rich, abundant, copious
- * das **Reich** (-es, -e)—empire, realm, kingdom

reichen (v.t.)—to reach; give; (v.i.)—to reach, extend, suffice der Reichtum—wealth reif (adj.)—ripe, mature, ready die Reihe—row; rank; series rein (adj.)—pure, sheer, clean die Reise (-n)—journey, trip reißen, riß (or riss), hat gerissen (v.t.)—to rip, tear; snatch, seize reiten, ritt, ist geritten—to ride der Reiter (-s, -)—rider der Reiz (-s, -e)—attraction, incentive, stimulous

- ** reizen (v.t.)—to stimulate; to charm, appeal to; to irritate reizend—charming
- ** rentieren (v.i. & r.)—to be worthwhile
- ** der Rest (-es, -e)—remains; rest
 retten (v.t.)—to save; (v.r.)—to escape
 die Reve—repensance, remorse

die **Reue**—repentance, remorse der **Revolutionär** (-s, -e) —revolutionary

richten (v.t.)—to set right; to prepare; to direct; (v.i.)—to judge; to execute; pass sentence on der Richter (-s, -)—judge richtig (adj.)—right, correct, real; (adv.)—duly, properly

(adv.)—duly, properly die **Richtung** (-en)—direction

riesig (adj.)—gigantic, enormous ringen, rang, hat gerungen (v.i.) to struggle (for)

rings (adv.)—all around

** der Riß (or Riss) (-sses, -sse)—gap, split; plan, sketch, outline der Ritter (-s, -)—knight roh (adj.)—raw, unrefined, rough die Rolle (-n)—role, roll, part das Rom—Rome

S

*der Roman (-s, -e)—novel die Romantik—Romanticism römisch (adi.) — Roman die **Rose** (-n)—rose das Roß (or Ross) (-sses, -sse) horse, steed rot—red der **Rowdy** (-s, -s)—scoundrel die **Rubrik** (-en)—category; column, rubric rücken (v.t.)—to move, shift; (v.i., aux.s.)—to move die Rückkehr—return die Rücksicht (-en) - respect, regard der Rücktritt (-s, -e)-resignation, withdrawal, retirement rückwärts (adv.) - backwards der **Ruf** (-es, -e)—call; repute, reputation, name * rufen, rief, hat gerufen (v.t.) —to call; to send for die Ruhe-rest, peace, calm ruhen (i.)—to rest, sleep der Ruhetag (-es, -e)—day of rest der Ruhm-fame, glory rühmen (v.t.)—to praise; (v.r.)—to boast rühren (v.i.)—to touch, to come into contact with; (v.t. & r.) —to stir, move; to touch, set in motion **rund** (adj.)—round; circular; (adv.)

rund heraussagen—to say straight out der Rundfunk (-s)-radio, broadcasting das **Russland**—Russia die Rüstung-armaments, equipment, preparations rutschen (v.i., aux.s.)—to slide, to move

die Saat (-en)-seed der Sabbat—Sabbath die Sache (-n)—thing, matter, cause, subject; business sachlich (adj.)—factual, objective der Sack (-es, -e)—sack sagen—to say, tell die Saite (-n)—lyre; string sammeln (v.t.)—to gather, collect; (v.r.)—to assemble: to concentrate der Sammelname (-ns, -n)—collective name die Sammlung (-en)—collection; composure samt (prep.)—with dat. —together with, including sämtlich (e) Werke-complete works die Sanduhr—hourglass sanft (adj.)—gentle, soft satt (adj.)—full, satiated der Sattel (-s, =)—saddle der Satz (-es, -e)—sentence, clause, proposition die Sau ("e or -en) - sow sauber (adj.)—clean, honest sauer (adj.) - acrid, tart saufen—to drink; to drink to excess die Säule (-n)—column, pillar säuseln (v.i.)—to rustle, whisper die Schablone (-s)—stencil; routine: cliche schade (pred. adj.)—pity schaden (v.i.)—to harm; damage das **Schaf** (-es, -e)—sheep schaffen, schuf, hat geschaffen (v.t. & i.)—to create, to procure; to do, accomplish, provide

schämen (v.r.)—to be ashamed of schamlos—shameless die Schande—disgrace die Schar (-en)—crowd scharf (adj.)—sharp, biting, caustic, precise, exact der Schatten—shadow, shade der Schatz (-es, -e)—treasure; love schätzen (v.t.)—to value, assess die Schau (-en)—sight, view, show

- * schauen (v.t.)—to see, perceive; (v.i.)—to look, gaze das Schauspiel (-s, -e)—spectacle, drama der Schauspieler (-s, -)—actor; die Schauspielerin (-nen)—actress
 - scheiden, schied, ist geschieden (v.i.)—to separate, depart der Schein (-es, -e)—appearance, shine, pretense
 - scheinbar (adj.) —apparent scheinen, schien, ist or hat geschienen (v.t. & i.)—to appear,

scheitern (v.i., aux.s.)—to fail, break down

das **Schema** (-s, -s or -ta)—scheme, model, pattern, diagram

schenken (v.t.)—to give, present

die **Scherbe** (-n)—fragment **scherzen** (v. i.)—to joke, kid

scheu (adj.)—shy

to shine

die Scheu—shyness; awe, dread scheuen—to shun, avoid

die **Schicht** (-en)—layer; shift, division

- schicken (v.t.)—to send, dispatch; (v.r.)—to happen, to be fitting
- * das Schicksal (-s, -e)—destiny, fate schieben, schob, hat geschoben (v.t., r. & i.) to push, shove, delay

schief (adj.)—oblique; inappropriate; (adv.)—aslant, askew schießen, schoß (or schoss), hat geschossen (v.i.)—shoot; burst forth das Schiff (-es, -e)—ship

das Schiff (-es, -e)—snip der Schild (-es, -e)—shield,emblem schildern (v.t.)—to portray,

describe
schimpfen (v.t.)—to insult, scold
die Schlacht (-en)—battle
schlachten (v.t. & i.)—to slay
der Schlaf (-es)—sleep
schlafen, schlief, hat geschlafen
(v.i.)—to sleep

der **Schlag** (-es, "e)—blow, stroke **schlagen, schlug, hat geschlagen** (v.t.)—to hit; (v.t. & i.)—to beat, strike

das Schlagwort (-s, -e or =er)—slogan die Schlange (-n)—line; snake schlank (adj.)—slim, slender schlau (adj.)—sly, clever

- * schlecht (adj. & adv.)—bad, wicked schleichen, schlich, ist geschlichen—to creep der Schleier (-s, -)—veil, haze schleudern—to fling schlicht (adj.)—plain, simple
- * schließen, schloß, hat geschlossen (v.t.)—to close, end; conclude; to strike a bargain schließlich (adj. & adv.)—final, finally; after all das Schloß (or Schloss) (-sses, "sse)

schlichten-to arrange, adjust

—lock; castle

der **Schlupfwinkel**—hiding place der **Schluß** (or **Schluss**) (-sses, "sse)—end, conclusion; closing der **Schlüssel** (-s, -)—key schmachvoll—disgraceful schmählich (adj.)—ignominious

- ** schmal (adj.)—narrow, slim schmecken (v.i.)—to taste schmeicheln (v.i.)—to flatter der Schmerz (-es, -en)—pain schmerzlich—painful der Schmutz (-es)—dirt, filth
 - der Schneeball—snowball
 schneiden, schnitt, hat geschnitten (v.t. & i.)—to cut
- ** schnell (adj. & adv.)—fast, quick
 ** der Schnitt (-es, -e)—cut, section;
 - style; editing
- * **schon** (adv.)—already; even; before; certainly; really; just; as early as
- * schön (adj.)—beautiful; good (adv.)—beautifully, very der Schöpfer (-s, -)—creator die Schöpfung—creation der Schoß (-es, -e)—lap schräg (adj.)—slanting; suspicious schrecken—to frighten, scare schrecklich (adj.)—frightful der Schrei (-es, -e)—cry, shout
 - * schreiben, schrieb, hat
 geschrieben (v.t. & i.)—to write
 schreien, schrie, hat geschrien (v.t. & i.)—to cry, shout
 schreiten, schritt, ist geschritten—
 to stride, to proceed (zu) to; to march
 die Schrift (-en)—writing, script,
 publication;
 die Heilige Schrift—the Holy
 Scriptures
 der Schriftsteller (-s, -)—author,
 writer
 der Schritt (-es, -e)—step, pace;
 den ersten Schritt tun—to make
 the first move

schroff (adj.) - rough, abrupt; curt

- schrumpfen (v.i., aux.s.)—to shrink, depreciate, decline der Schuh (-es, -e)—shoe die Schularbeit (-en)—school work das Schulbeispiel (-s, -e)—classic example die Schuld (-en)—debt, obligation; guilt, sin; blame, responsibility schulden (v.t.)—to owe, be indebted to
- schuldig—guilty
 die Schule (-n)—school, college,
 school of thought
 der Schüler (-s, -)—schoolboy; dis-
- ciple, follower

 ** der Schuß (or Schuss) (-sses,

 "sse)—shot; in Schuß kommen —

 to get going; im Schuß sein—to be
 in full swing
 der Schuster (-s, -)—cobbler
 der Schutz (-es, no pl.)—shelter,
 refuge; in Schutz nehmen—to
 defend
 - schützen (v.t.)—to protect (vor)
 (from)
 - schwach (adj.)—weak, poor, sparse die Schwäche (-n)—weakness, shortcoming

schwanken (v.t.)—to sway, waver;

- oscillate; hesitate der **Schwärmer** (-s, -)—dreamer, visionary; fanatic, zealot
- schwarz (adj.) black, gloomy; illicit; der schwarze Markt the black market
 - schweben (v.i.)—to soar; hang (in the air); be pending schweigen, schwieg, hat
 - **geschwiegen** (v.i.)—to be silent das **Schwein** (-s, -e)—swine;
 - Schwein haben-to be quite lucky

- * die Schweiz—Switzerland die Schwelle (-n)—threshold; brink schwellen, schwoll, ist geschwollen (v.i.)—to swell, expand
 - schwer (adj.) heavy, serious; difficult: severe schwerlich (adj.)—hardly die Schwermut-melancholy der Schwerpunkt (-s, -e)—center of gravity; main focus die Schwester (-n)—sister schwierig (adj.)—difficult; die Schwierigkeit (-en)—difficulty schwimmen, schwamm, ist or hat geschwommen—to swim der Schwindel (-s)—dizziness: fraud schwinden, schwand, ist geschwunden (v.i.)—to shrink, dwindle; to disappear; fade schwingen, schwang, hat geschwungen (v.t.)—to swing, wave; (v.r.)—to leap, soar; (v.i.)—to swing; linger

schwören, schwor, hat geschworen (v.t. & i.)—to swear

Schwung (-s, -e)—verve, momentum

sechs—six

- ** der **See** (-s, -n)—lake, pond
- ** die See (-n)—sea, ocean die Seele (-n)—soul, spirit, heart; human being seelisch (adj.)—spiritual, emotional, mental der Segen (-s, -)—blessing; prosperity
- * sehen, sah, hat gesehen (v.t.)—to see, perceive, watch; sehen lassen to show; sich sehen lassen—to appear; sehen auf (acc.)—to look over; to pay attention to

- sehnen (v.r.)—to long, yearn (nach)—for die Sehnsucht ("e)—yearning
- sehr (adv.)—very, most; very much
- * **sei** (imperative)—be
- * sein (adj.)—his, its
- * sein, war, ist gewesen (v.i.)—to be, exist, occur, be alive; der Ansicht or der Meinung sein—to be of the opinion; es ist mir, als ob—I feel as if, it seems to me das Sein—being, existence seinesgleichen (indecl. adj., pron.)—people like him seinethalben, seinetwegen, seinetwillen (adv.)—on his account, for his sake
- * seit (prep.) with dat.—for; since seitdem (conj. and adv.)—since die Seite (-n)—side; page; feature seither (adv.)—since (then)
- * selber, selbst (indecl. adj.)—self; das versteht sich von selbst—that goes without saying; selbst (adv.) even
 - selbständig (adj.)—self-reliant, independent die Selbsterkenntnis—selfknowledge
 - selbstgefällig (adj.)—self-satisfied selbstsicher (adj.)—self-assured die Selbstsucht—egoism, selfishness die Selbstüberwindung—selfconquest; will-power
 - selbstvergessen (adj.)—absentminded
 - **selbstverständlich** (adj. & adv.)—obvious
- * selten (adj.)—rare, unusual;(adv.)—seldomselig— blissful

seltsam (adj. & adv.)—odd, peculiar die Semmel (-n)—roll die Sendepause—interval; deathly silence

senkrecht (adj.) — perpendicular

- ** sensibel (adj.)—sensitive
- ** sensitiv (adj.)—hypersensitive
- * setzen (v.t.)—to place, set; den Fall setzen—to suppose; Grenzen setzen—to set limits; gesetzt, es wäre so—supposing it were so; (v.r.)—to seat oneself; to settle
 - seufzen (v.i.)—to sigh
 sich (refl. pron.)—himself, herself,
 itself, themselves, yourself; es fragt
- sich—it is a question whether
 sicher (adj.)—secure, safe; sure; certain, confident
 sicherlich (adv.)—surely, certainly
 - sichern (v.t.)—to secure, make safe; (v.i.)—to be watchful die Sicht—sight, view
- sichtbar (adj.)—visible, evident
 sie—she, her; they, them; it (when referring to a feminine noun)
- * Sie —you der Sieg (-es, -e)—conquest, victory sinken, sank, ist gesunken (v.i.) to sink, subside; decline, decrease
- * der Sinn (-es, -e)—sense, tendency; meaning, significance das Sinnbild (-es, -er)—symbol sinnen, sann, ist (or hat) gesonnen—to think, brood, muse sinnlich (adj.)—sensual; sensuous, perceptible sinnlos (adj.)—senseless; futile die Sitte (-n)—custom, habit, tradi-

tion; practice

- die **Sittenlehre**—ethics, moral philosophy **sittlich** (adj.)—moral, ethical
- der **Sitz** (-es, -e)—seat; residence
- sitzen, saß (sass), hat gesessen (v.i.)—to sit; to be, to be situated die Sitzung (-en)—session, conference
- * so (adv.)—so, thus, in this or that way; ein so—such a; so etwas such a thing; so sehr—to such a degree; so ... wie —as ... as; (conj.)—therefore, consequently
 - sobald (conj.) as soon as
 sofern (conj.) inasmuch as; provided that
 sofort (adv.) immediately
- * sogar—even, in addition, besides sogenannt (adj.)—so-called sogleich—at once, immediately der Sohn (-es, -e)—son
- solang(e)—as long as
 solch (adj.)—such
 der Soldat (-en, -en)—soldier
- * sollen (modal)—to be obliged to; is to; to be said to; should; er soll es geschrieben haben—he is said to have written it; man sollte meinen—one would think; Jahre sollten vergehen, bevor—years were to pass before ...
 - somit (adv.)—consequently die Sonderausgabe (-n)—special
 - edition
 sonderbar (adj.)—singular, strange
- ** sondern (v.t.)—to separate; to distinguish
- * sondern (conj.)—on the contrary die Sonne (-n)—sun der Sonnenschein (-s)—sunshine

sonst (adv.)—else, otherwise, moreover die **Sorge** (-n)—concern, worry sorgen (i.)—to take care, attend to sorgfältig (adj.) — careful souverän (adj.)—sovereign soviel (conj.)—as far as; soviel ich weiß-as far as I know sowieso (adv.)—anyway der Sowjet (-s, -s)—Soviet sowohl (conj.) als—both ... and; as well as der Soziologe (-n, -n)—sociologist der Spalt (-es, -en)—cleft, fissure spannend (adj.)—exciting, tense die Spannung (-en)—suspense, tension; stretching, strain

- ** sparen—to save spärlich (adj.)—scanty, sparse sparsam (adj.)—economical der Spaß (-es, -e)—fun; es macht mir Spaß—I enjoy (it)
- * spät (adj. & adv.)—late spätestens (adv.)—at the latest spenden—to buy sperren (v.t.)—to barricade; to lock up; to spread or stretch out; to ban der Spiegel (-s, -)—mirror, reflector; das Spiegelbild (-es, -er)—reflection spiegeln (v.t.) —to reflect; (v.r.)—to be reflected das Spiel (-es, -e)—play, sport,

game; aufs Spiel setzen—to risk

das Spielkind (-es, -er) — playmate

der Spießbürger (-s, -) - narrow-

minded person, bourgeois

die Spinne (-n)—spider

spielen—to play

- der **Spion** (-s, -e)—spy die **Spitze** (-n)—point, peak; summit; **auf die Spitze treiben** —to carry to extremes
- ** splendid (adj.)—generous; handsome der Spott (-es)—mockery, scorn, sarcasm
- * die Sprache (-n)—language; speech der Sprachforscher (-s, -)—linguist, philologist sprachlos—speechless
- * sprechen, sprach, hat gesprochen (v.t & v.i.) to speak, talk (mit) to or with; (über, von)—about das Sprichwort (-es, "er)—proverb springen, sprang, ist (or hat) gesprungen—to spring, leap; to gush, burst der Spruch (-es, "e)—maxim;

verdict der **Sprung** (-es, -e)—jump, leap; **auf dem Sprung sein, etwas zu tun**—to be about to do something **spucken** (t. & i.)—to spit **spüren** (v.t.)—to feel, perceive, to experience

- der Staat (-es, -en)—state, nation; die Staatskunst—politics; Staatswissenschaft—political science der Staatsstreich (-s, -e)—coup d'état
 - der **Stabreim** (-s, -e)—alliteration der **Stachel** (-s, -n)—thorn, quill der **Stacheldraht**—barbed wire
- * die **Stadt** (-e)—city, town der **Stall** (-e)—stable
- ** der **Stamm** (-s, -e)—tribe, race, stem; core; regular customer

der Stand (-es, -e or no pl.)—
foothold; situation, condition, state;
gut im Stand sein—to be in good
condition; Leute von Stand—people of rank
das Standesbewußtsein—classconsciousness
ständig (adj. & adv.)—fixed, constant, permanent
der Standpunkt (-es, -e)—viewpoint

- * stark (adj.)—strong, thick, heavy (adv.)—greatly, very much die Stärke (-n)—strength, power; magnitude; greatness starr (adj.)—rigid, inflexible, stubborn
- * statt (prep.)—with gen.—instead of; (conj.)—instead of die Statt (-)—place, stead die Stätte (-n)—place, abode statt-finden (irr. v.i.)—to take place, happen der Staub (-es)—dust stechen, stach, hat gestochen (v.t. & i.)—to prick, pierce stecken (v.t.)—to put, place, insert; (v.r.)—sich hinter eine Sache stecken—to get behind something; (v.i.)—to be, stay, remain; to lie hidden
- stehen, stand, hat (ist) gestanden (v.i.)—to stand; to be situated; to be written; to stand still, to stop; auf einem Zettel stehen—to appear on a note; es steht bei ihnen—it is in their power; fest stehen—to be firm stehen-bleiben (irr. v.i., aux.s.) —to remain standing; to stand still; to stop stehen-lassen (irr. v.t.)—to ignore; to forget; overlook

stehlen, stahl, hat gestohlen (v.i. & t.)—to steal steif (adj.)—stiff, rigid (vor) with; clumsy, awkward steigen, stieg, ist gestiegen (v.i.) to climb; to increase; rise; to advance; to take place, be held steigern (v.t.)—to raise, increase; to heighten; (v.r.)—to become greater or intensified der Stein (-es, -e)-stone; Stein des Anstoßes—stumbling-block; Stein der Weisen—philosopher's stone der Stein(ab)druck—lithograph die Stelle (-n) - position, site; passage (in a book); auf der Stelle-on the spot

- stellen (v.t.)—to put, place, lay, set; impose (conditions on); einen Antrag stellen—to make a motion; Bedingungen stellen—to impose conditions; in Frage stellen-to call into question; zur Diskussion stellen —to throw open to discussion; (v.r.)—to place or post or position oneself; to appear; to surrender; to pretend to be; sich stellen gegen—to oppose; die Probleme, die sich allen Gelehrten stellenthe problems confronting all scholars die Stellung-position; attitude; post; situation; social position; supdie Stellungnahme (-n) - point of view
- sterben, starb, ist gestorben (v.i.)—to die sterblich (adj.)—mortal der Stern (-es, -e)—star das Sternchen—asterisk sternenklar—starlit

- stets (adv.)—constantly, always die Steuer (-n)—tax steuern (v.t.)—to steer; to drive; to control; (v.i., aux.s.)—to put a stop to; to head
- ** der Stich (-es, -e)—stab, prick; tinge; hint; suggestion der Stichel—style, graving tool stichhaltig (adj.)—sound, valid, lasting; conclusive das Stichwort (-es, -e)—key word, cue, party-cry (pol.) der Stier (-es, -e)—steer
 - stiften (v.t.)—to found, establish, endow: cause
 - der **Stifter** (-s, -)—donator; founder
 - der **Stil** (-es, -e)—style, manner
- * still (adj.)—silent, soft, still, calm; Stiller Freitag—Good Friday; Stiller Ozean—Pacific Ocean die Stille—quiet, silence, stillness stillos (adj.)—without style die Stimme (-n)—voice, vote, opinion
 - stimmen (v.i.)—to agree, be right die Stimmung—mood,

atmosphere; morale

stocken (v.i.)—to falter; to reach a deadlock; to break off

die **Stockung**—interruption, breakdown

der **Stoff** (-es, -e) — matter, material; subject

stolz (adj.)—proud, arrogant, conceited; majestic

stören (v.t.)—to interrupt, disturb, inconvenience; (v.i.)—to intrude

stoßen, stieß (or stiess), hat gestoßen (v.t.) —to push, thrust, shove, strike; to drive out; (v.r.) sich stoßen an—to take offence at; (v.i.) to border, touch, adjoin; (aux. s.) —swoop down, encounter die Strafe (-n)—punishment, penalty, retribution straff (adj.)—stretched, taut; aus-

straff (adj.)—stretched, taut; austere, stern

das **Strafrecht**—criminal law **strahlen** (v.i.)—to radiate, shine; glow

* die Straße (-n)—street, road, highway, route; auf der Straße liegen—to be there all around us sträuben (v.r.)—to struggle against streben (v.i.)—to strive, to struggle, to aspire

strecken (v.t.)—to stretch, extend, elongate, spread out der Streich (-es, -e)—stroke; prank

streichen, strich, hat gestrichen (v.t.)—to stroke, touch; (v.i., aux.s.)—to extend, stretch, roam; (v.t.) to strike, cut, erase, cancel; to

streiten, stritt, hat gestritten (v.i.)—to quarrel, argue; darüber läßt sich streiten —

that is a moot point

paint

die Streitschrift (-en)—polemic streng(e) (adj.)—severe, strict; (adv.)—sich streng halten an—to adhere strictly to

strenggläubig (adj.)—orthodox der Strich (-es, -e)—stroke, line, dash; sketch; region das Stroh (-es)—straw

der **Strom** (-es, -e)—stream, current, crowd

die **Strophe** (-n)—stanza, verse

das **Stück** (-es, -e)—piece, part; extract (from a book)

der Student (en, -en)—student die Studie (-n)—sketch, study studieren—to study die Stufe (-n)—stage, phase; degree; nuance stufenartig (adj.)—gradual der Stuhl (-es, =e)—chair stumm (adj.)—mute, silent, dumb stumpf (adj.)—blunt, obtuse; dull, indifferent der Strom (-es, =e)—stream, current

* die Stunde (-n)—hour; zu guter
Stunde—in good time
stundenlang (adj. & adv.)—lasting
for hours
der Sturm (-es, -e)—storm; tumult;
turmoil;

Sturm und Drang—Storm and Stress; emotion; movement in German literature from 1770 to 1784 emphasizing the subjectivity and unease of people in their society. stürzen (v.i., aux.s.)—to fall or tumble down, plunge; (v.t.)—to throw down, overturn, upset stützen (v.t.)—to support; (v.r.)—to rest, lean on; to rely, depend, be based on

* suchen (v.t. & i.)—to seek, desire, search (nach) for die Sucht (-e)—passion; obsession der Süden (-s)—South südlich (adj.)—south, southern, southerly; südöstlich (adj.)—southeasterly; südostwärts (adv.)—southeasterly südwestlich (adj.)—southwestern die Summa (pl. Summen)—in

summa—in short, to sum up

die Summe (-n)—sum; total

die Sünde (-n)—sin, transgression der Sündenbock (-s, "e)—scapegoat die Suppe (-n)—soup süß (adj.)—sweet, charming, dear der Symbolismus—Symbolism (in art) sympathisch (adj.)—congenial, likeable; pleasant die Szene (-n)—scene; in Szene

Т

setzen-to stage

der Tadel (-s, -)-reprimand, reproach; criticism, die Tafel (-n)—board, blackboard, tablet, table, chart, diagram der Tag (-es, -e)—day, daylight; alle Tage—every day; an den Tag bringen—to bring to light, to disclose; dieser Tage (past)—recently, (fut.) —one of these days; in acht Tagen—in a week; der Jüngste Tag -Doomsday; das Tagebuch (-s, -er)—diary, journal tagelang (adj. & adv.)—for days tagen (v.i.)—to hold a meeting; es tagt bei ihr-it dawns on her das Tageslicht (-s)—daylight; ans Tageslicht kommen—to become known die Tagesordnung-agenda täglich (adj.)—daily

** der Takt (-es, -e)—time (music), rhythm; tact das Tal (-es, -er)—valley der Tanz (-es, -e)—dance, ball tanzen (v.t. & v.i.)—to dance das Tapet—aufs Tapet bringen—to introduce (a subject)

tapfer (adj.)—brave, heroic

tarnen (v.t.)—to camouflage; disguise, mask die Tastatur (-en)—keyboard tasten (v.i.)—to touch, feel die Tat (-en)—deed, act; in der Tat—in fact tätig (adj.)—active, busy, engaged, effective die Tatsache (-n)—fact tatsächlich (adv.)—really; (adj.)—real taub (adj.)—deaf; oblivious der Taube—deaf one die Taube (-n)—pigeon tauchen—to immerse, dip

zu nichts taugen—to be worthless
** tauschen (v.t. & i.)—to exchange;
to swap

taugen (v.i.)—to be of use (zu) for;

- ** täuschen (v.t. & i.)—to deceive, betray; (v.r.)— to be mistaken tausend (adj.)—thousand
- * die Technik (-en)—technical or applied science, engineering; technology; technique der Teich (-es, -e)—pond
- * der or das Teil (-s, -e)—part, portion, share; zum Teil—to some extent, in part

 teilen (v.t.)—to divide, separate, share; (v.r.)—to participate in

 teil-haben (irr. v.i.)—participate

 teil-nehmen (irr. v.i.)—to participate, collaborate

 teils (adv.)—partly, part
 - der Tempelraub—sacrilege

der **Termin** (-s, -e)—appointed or fixed time or term of date or day; deadline

teuer (adj.)—dear, expensive,

der Teufel (-s, -) — devil der Teufelskreis-vicious circle die Textkritik-textual criticism das Thema (-s, pl. -ta or -men) theme, subject; topic der Theologe (-n, -n)—theologian der Theoretiker (-s, -)—theorist die These (-n)—thesis, postulate der Thron (-es, -e)—throne der Thronräuber-usurper tief (adj.)—deep, profound, low, innermost, utmost, extreme; (adv.)—deep, deeply; profoundly; tiefer begründen—to substantiate more fully die Tiefe (-n)—depth, profundity, abyss tiefgreifend (adj.) - far-reaching, through-going, fundamental der Tiefsinn-pensiveness; profun-

das Tier (-es, -e)—animal, beast der Tierkreis—zodiac die Tierkunde—zoology tilgen (v.i.)—to extinguish, to obliterate, cancel; to pay off der Tisch (-es, -e)—table der Titel (-s, -)—title, heading, claim; section die Tochter (=)—daughter

dity

der Tod (-es, most commonly with no pl.)—death, decease die Todesangst—mortal terror tödlich (adj.)—fatal, deadly, mortal das Tohuwabohu (-s, -s)—hullabaloo, chaos toll (adj.)—mad, wild, crazy (coll.)—terrific

(coll.)—terrific der **Ton** (-es, -e)—sound; note

(mus.); den Ton angeben—to give the note, to set the tone

das Tonband (-es, "er)—(recording) tape die Tondichtung—musical composition; symphonic poem tönen—to sound, to shade tonlos (adj.)—soundless, voiceless, toneless die Tönung (-en)—shade, tint, tone, shading der Topf (-es, "e)—pot

- ** der Tor (-en, -en)—fool
- ** das Tor (-en, -e)—gate, portal
 töricht (adj.)—foolish
 torkeln (i.)—to stagger
- * tot (adj.)—dead, defunct, extinct; das Tote Meer—the Dead Sea töten (v.t.)—to kill totgeboren (adj.)—stillborn, abortive trachten (v.i.)—to strive (nach) after or for
- träge (adj.)—sluggish

 * tragen, trug, hat getragen (v.t.) —
 to carry, bear, wear (clothes); to support, sustain, uphold, endure; (v.r.)
 sich tragen mit to have on one's mind
 die Tragik—tragedy
 die Tragödie (-n)—tragedy, calamity
 die Träne (-n)—tear (drop)
 die Traube (-n)—grape
 trauen (v.i.)—to trust; (v.r.) —to
 venture, dare; (v.t.)—to marry
 die Trauer—mourning, grief
 der Traum (-s, -e)—dream, vision
 das Traumbild (-es, -er)—vision
- * traurig (adj.)—sad, melancholy

 * treffen, traf, hat getroffen (v.t.)—
 to hit, strike, affect, concern,
 encounter; Maßnahmen treffen—

träumen (t. & i.)—to dream

to take action; das Unglück traf
ihn—he had the misfortune;
(v.r.)—to meet; es traf sich, daß
...—it so happened that...; treffen
auf (acc.)—to come upon
treffend (adj.)—appropriate
trefflich—excellent
treiben, trieb, hat getrieben (v.t.)
—to drive, set in motion, operate;
impel, induce; pursue, cultivate;
eine Politik treiben— to pursue a
policy; sich treiben lassen—to take
things as they come
trennen (v.t. & r.)—to separate,
divide, sever

treten, trat, ist (or hat) getreten (v.i.)—to step, stride; ans Licht treten—to come to light, appear; zur Seite treten—to step aside; zutage treten—to appear, become evident treu (adj.)—faithful, loyal der Trieb (-es, -e)—impulse, urge,

trinken, trank, hat getrunken (v.t.)—to drink, absorb das **Trinklied** (-es, -er)—drinking song

desire

trocken (adj.)—dry, dull, uninteresting, tedious der **Trost** (-es, no pl.)—comfort,

consolation, solace

trotz (prep.) with gen.—in spite of der Trotz (-es)—defiance

trotzdem (adv.)—nevertheless; (conj.)—even though, although trübe (adj.)—muddy, cloudy; gloomy, melancholy; bleak trüben—to pollute trügen, trog, hat getrogen (v.t.) to deceive, delude tüchtig (adj.)—fit, able; (adv.) well, thoroughly

die Tugend (-en)—virtue

tun, tat, hat getan (v.t.)—to do, perform, execute, make; es tut nichts—it does not matter; (v.i.) to act, do; er tut, als wäre er glücklich—he acts as if he were happy; das will getan sein—that needs to be done; das läßt sich tun-that may or can be done die Tür (-en)—door; vor der Tür stehen—to be forthcoming

U

der Turm (-es, -e)—tower, spire

typisch—typical

übel (adj.)—evil, bad, wrong, ill **üben** (v.t.)—to exercise, practice; **Geduld üben**—to have patience; Nachsicht üben-to show consideration; geübtes Auge-trained eye

* über (prep.)—with dat. or acc. over, above, about; (adv.) —over, above, too much **über**- (pref. to nouns and adjs.) over, super, hyper, etc. über- (verb pref.)—in intransitive verbs, the prefix is usually inseparable; with most compound transitive verbs, the prefix may be both separable and inseparable; when the verb is separable, the meaning is usually literal (übersetzen-sep. to set over); when the verb is inseparable, the meaning is usually figurative (übersetzen - insep. - to translate)

überall (adv.) - everywhere overflow

der Überbau (-es, -e)—superstructure der Überblick (-es, -e) - overview, survey, synopsis; perspective überdies (adv.)—besides, moreover überdrüssig—bored with der Überdruß (or Überdruss) (-sses)—boredom, ennui übereinander (adv.)—one upon the other, about each other überein-kommen (irr. v.i.) & überein-stimmen (v.i.)—to agree, to reach an agreement über-fallen-to come over der Überfluß (or Überfluss) (-sses)—abundance, plenty, wealth, superfluity überflüssig (adj.)—superfluous überfragen (v.t. & i.)—to overwhelm with questions; ich bin überfragt-I don't know der Übergang (-s, -e)—transition, conversion; crossing **übergeben** (irr. v.t. insep.)—to hand over; to entrust; to surrender

übergehen (kr. v.i., aux.s.)—to overflow, to merge; to change; (sep. v.t.)—to overlook

überhaupt (adv.)—on the whole, generally; überhaupt nicht-not at all

überhin (adv.)—superficially, sketchily

überholen (v.t.) - to overtake, to surpass

überholt-antiquated über-kochen (i.)—to boil over überlassen (irr. v.t., insep.)—to relinquish, abandon überlaufen (irr. v.t. insep.)—to

overrun, to seize; (sep. i., aux.s.)—to

- überleben (v.t., insep.) to survive, outlive
- ** **überlegen** (v.t. & i.)—to reflect on; think, consider
- ** überlegen (adj.)—superior to **überliefern** (v.t. insep.) — to deliver, hand over, hand down die Überlieferung-tradition übermäßig (adj.)—excessive der Übermut (-s)—high spirits; arrogance übernehmen (irr. v.t., insep.)—to accept, receive, to take charge of; (v.r., insep.) - to overexert, take on too much überparteilich (adj.)—non-partisan überraschen (v.t.)—to surprise überreden (v.t. insep.)—to persuade; sich überreden lassento let oneself be persuaded

überschätzen (v.t.) - to overestimate (insep.) der Überschlag (-s, -e)—(rough)

estimate

über-schreiten—to cross over ** **übersehen** (irr. v.t.)—to survey, glance over; to overlook, fail to notice

übersetzen (v.t.)—to translate die Übersicht-survey, review, outline, synopsis

überstehen (irr. v.t., insep.) & übersteigen (irr. v.t., insep.)—to

transcend; get through; survive ** die Übertragung—transference; translation; communication; broad-

cast **übertreiben** (irr. v.t., insep.)—to exaggerate

der Übertritt (-es, -e)-conversion **übervoll**—overflowing

überwältigen (v.t., insep.)—to defeat; overcome; overwhelm **überwinden** (irr. v.t., insep.)—to overcome, prevail over die Überwindung-overcoming, self-control **überzeugen** (v.t.)—to convince, persuade die Überzeugung (-en)—conviction üblich (adj.)—usual, customary übrig (adj.)—left over, remaining übrigens (adv.)—by the way, more-

die Übung (-en)—exercise, practice das Ufer (-s, -)-shore

- die Uhr (-en)—clock, watch, o'clock, hour; um fünf Uhr-at five o'clock das Uhrwerk (-es, -e)—clockwork;
- * um (prep.) with acc.—at (with time), around (with place); um ... willen (prep.) with gen.—for the sake of;

Zeit ist um—the time is up die Umarbeitung-adaptation umarmen—to embrace

um ... zu—in order to (conj.); die

um-bringen (irr. v.t.)—to kill um-deuten (v.t.)—to give a new meaning or interpretation to

um-drehen (v.t.)—to turn, rotate um-fallen (i., aux.s.)—to fall down

der Umfang (-es, -e)—circumference, extent, range, volume um-fassen (v.t.)—to enclose, to sur-

round; to include umfassend—complete, comprehen-

die Umfrage-survey der Umgang-contact;

acquaintances

die Umgebung-surroundings, environment, background um-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to circulate; umgehen (mit)—to deal with, associate with; mit etwas umgehen—to be occupied with; (v.t., insep.)—to evade, avoid umgekehrt (adj.)—opposite, reverse; (adv.)—on the contrary um-gestalten (v.t.)—to alter, transform; to reform; to reorganize umher (adv.)—about, around; all around um-hüllen (v.t., insep.)—to envelop, cover; to veil um-kehren (v.i., aux.s.)—to turn around, to reform; (v.t.)—to overturn **um-kommen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to perish der Umriß (or Umriss) (-sses, -sse)—sketch, outline ** der Umschlag (-s, -e)—sudden change; envelope um-schließen (irr. v.t.)—to enclose. surround; include **um-setzen** (v.t.)—to shift, transfer: translate ideas into action, convert die Umsicht-caution, prudence umsonst (adj.)—for nothing; in vain der Umstand (-es, -e)-circumstance; situation; (pl.)—particulars, details: unter Umständen—in certain cases: Umstände machen—to cause trouble umständlich (adj.) - circumstantial; complicated, intricate umwälzend (adj.)—involved; radical der Umweg (-es, -e) - roundabout way; auf Umwegen-indirectly die Umwelt-environment

um-werfen—to knock over um-werten (v.t.)—to revalue, reassess un- (neg. pref.)—un-, in-, non unabänderlich (adj.)—unalterable unabhängig (adj.)—independent (von)—of, or irrespective of unablässig (adj.)—incessant unbedacht (adj.)—inconsiderate, careless, indiscrete unbedingt (adj.)—unconditional, absolute; (adv.) - in any case, by all means das Unbehagen (-s)—discomfort, malaise unbeholfen (adj.)—clumsy unbekannt—unfamiliar unbesehen—indiscriminately und (conj.)—and; und zwar—that is; und so weiter (usw.)—and so on (etc.) unendlich (adj.)—infinite unersättlich—insatiable der **Unfall** (-es, -e)—accident unfreiwillig-involuntarily der Unfug (-es) - nonsense; mischief ungeachtet (prep.) with gen.—despite, notwithstanding ungefähr (adj.) - approximate, casual; (adv.) — about ungeheuer (adj.)—huge, immense, monstrous; outrageous ungelenk (adj.)—awkward ungemein (adj.)—immense ungern (adv.)—reluctantly unglaubwürdig (adj.) — implausible ungleichmäßig-irregular das Unglück (-es, -e) - misfortune, unhappiness unheimlich (adj.)—frightening,

eerie, sinister

- die **Universität** (-en) university

 * **unmittelbar** (adj.) immediate;
 - (adv.)—directly
 - unnütz (adj.)—useless, superfluous
- * unmöglich—impossible unruhig—restless
- * uns—us
 - unsäglich—unspeakable
- die Unschuld—innocence
 - unser—our
 - unten (adv.) below, underneath
- * unter (prep.) with acc. or dat. under, among; unter anderem —

among other things; unter diesem

Gesetz stehen—to be subject to the

law; unter diesem Gesichtspunkt—

from this point of view; unter vier

Augen — face-to-face

unter- (noun and verb pref.)—usu-

ally, when the verb has a literal

meaning, it is separable, and when it has a figurative meaning, it is insep-

arable

unterbrechen (irr. v.t.) — to inter-

rupt

unter-bringen (irr. v.t.)—to shelter

unterdrücken (v.t.)—to oppress;

suppress; repress

untereinander (adv.) — between or

with each other

der **Untergang** (-s, -e)—setting, sinking; ruin, decline, end

unterhalten (irr. v.t.)—to support;

(v.r.)—to converse

die Unterlage (-n)—support; proof,

evidence, voucher; document

unterlassen (irr. v.t.) — to discon-

tinue, refrain, neglect (to do something)

unternehmen (irr. v.t.)—to undertake

der Unterricht (-s, -e)—instruction unterscheiden (irr. v.t.)—to distinguish, differentiate der Unterschied (-s, -e)—difference die Unterschrift (-en)—signature, caption die Untersuchung—examination,

investigation; scrutiny
unterwegs (adv.)—on the way, en

route

die Unterwelt—underworld unterziehen (irr. v.t.)—to submit:

(v.r.)—to submit, undergo

unumgänglich (adj.)—essential

unverhofft (adj.)—unexpected

unverkennbar—undeniable

unvollkommen (adj.)—incomplete

unzählig—countless

die **Unze** (-n)—ounce

innia (adi) abundant

üppig (adj.)—abundant; opulent;

ur- (pref.)—indicates origin or
source or being primitive
uralt (adj.)—very old

die **Urkunde**—deed, document der **Urlaub** (-es, -e)—leave of

absence

die **Ursache** (-n)—cause, reason, origin, motive

origin, motive

die Ursächlichkeit—causality der Ursprung (-s, "e)—source, ori-

gin, beginning, cause

das **Urteil** (-s, -e)—judgement, decision, opinion, view, sentence, verdict

urweltlich (adj.)—primeval

ν

die **Variante**—variant reading der **Vater** (-s, =)—father das **Vaterland**—native country

```
das Venedig-Venice
  ver- (insep. pref. to some verbs, and
  pref. to some nouns)—removal,
  loss; reversal; expenditure;
  alteration; intensification; changing
  nouns or adj. into verbs
  verabreden (v.t.)—to agree upon,
  arrange; (v.r.)—to make an appoint-
  ment
  verabschieden (v.t.)—to dismiss
  verachten (v.t.)—to despise
  veralten (v.i., aux.s.)—to go out of
  date, become obsolete
  veranlassen (v.t.)—to cause, bring
  about, give rise to
  verändern—to change
  die Verantwortung-responsibility
  verärgern (v.t.) - to anger, vex
  der Verband (-es, -e)—association
  verbergen, verbirgt, verbarg, hat
  verborgen—to conceal
  verbessern—to improve
  verbieten, verbot, hat verboten-
  to forbid
  verbinden (irr. v.t.) - to unite, com-
  bine, connect
  verbindlich (adj.)—binding
  verblüffen (v.t.)—to amaze
  verblühen (i., aux.s.)—to wither
** verborgen (v.t.)—to lend out; ver-
  borgen (adj.)—hidden, concealed
  der Verbrauch (-s)—consumption,
  expenditure
  verbrechen (irr. v.t.)—to commit (a
  crime or an offence)
  verbreiten (v.t. & r.)—to spread,
  circulate, propagate; (v.r.)—to hold
  forth
  verbrennen—to burn
  die Verbundenheit-solidarity
  der Verdacht (-s)—suspicion, distrust
```

```
verderben, verdarb, hat verdorben
  (v.t.)—to spoil, corrupt, demoralize;
  (v.i., aux.s.)—to spoil, deteriorate,
  perish
  verdichten (v.t.)—to condense:
  concentrate; (v.r.)—to take shape
   (in one's mind)
  verdienen (v.t.)—to earn, gain, de-
  serve
  verdrängen (v.t.)—to drive out
  der Verdruß (or Verdruss) (-sses,
  -sse) - displeasure, frustration
  verdunkeln (v.t.)—to darken, to
  obscure; to grow dim
  verehren (v.t.)—to admire, to honor
  der Verein (-s, -e)—organization,
  society; union, club
  vereinbaren (v.t.)—to agree upon
  vereinigen (v.t.)—to unite, com-
  bine; die Vereinigten Staaten-the
   United States; sich vereinigen
  lassen—to be compatible
   vereinsamen (i., aux.s.)—to
   become isolated
  verewigen (v.t.)—to immortalize
  verfahren (irr. v.i.)—to act, behave,
  proceed; (v.t.)—to spend; (v.r.)—to
  lose one's way
  der Verfall (-es)—decay, decline
** verfallen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to deteri-
  orate; to expire; to come into the
   power or possession of
   die Verfassung (-en) — state or
   frame of mind; constitution
   verfechten (irr. v.t.)—to defend
  verfeinern (v.t.)—to refine, improve
   verfluchen—to curse
  verfolgen (v.t.)—to follow, persecute
   die Verfügung—disposal; decree;
   arrangement; ihr zur Verfügung
  stehen-to be at her disposal
```

verführen (v.t.)—to lead astray; to seduce; to prevail upon vergangen (adj.)—past, gone

- * die Vergangenheit—past ** vergeben (irr. v.t.)—to award; to
- give away; to forgive

 vergebens (adv.)—in vain
- ** vergehen (irr. v.i., aux.s)—to pass or fade away; to die off; (v.r.)—to err, offend, transgress
 vergelten—to repay, reward
- * vergessen, vergaß, hat vergessen (v.t.)—to forget; in Vergessenheit geraten—to fall into oblivion
- * vergleichen, verglich, hat
 verglichen (v.t.)—to compare;
 (v.r.)—to reach a settlement
 der Vergleich—comparison
 vergnügen (v.t.)—to amuse,
 delight; (v.r.)—to enjoy oneself
 vergönnen (v.t.)—to permit, allow,
 grant
 vergöttern (v.t.)—to deify, idolize
 vergrößern (v.t.)—to enlarge, mag-

nify; to exaggerate; (v.r.)—to grow larger, increase verhaften (v.t.)—to arrest; verhaftet—closely bound to,

dependent on

verhalten (irr. v.r.)—to behave, to

conduct oneself das **Verhältnis** (-sses, -sse)—relation, proportion; situation, financial

state; circumstances; condition verhältnismäßig (adj.)—relative

verhandeln (v.t.)—to negotiate; (v.i.)—to discuss, debate

verhängen (v.t.)—to impose, cover **verharren** (v.i., aux.s. & h.)—to continue; remain; persist

verheiraten (v.r.)—to marry

verheißen (irr. v.t.)—to promise; Land der Verheißung—Promised Land

verhetzen (v.t.)—to stir up das Verhör (-es, -e)—interrogation verhungern (v.i.)—to starve verirren (v.r.)—to lose one's way verjagen—to chase away

verkaufen—to sell

** der Verkehr—traffic; communication; sexual or social intercourse; trade

verkehrt (adj.)—wrong verkennen (irr. v.t.)—to misjudge

ify, represent

verkünd(ig)en (v.t.)—to announce,
publish, proclaim; to preach
der Verlag (-s, -e)—publishing

verkörpern (v.t.)—to embody, typ-

house

verlangen (v.t.)—to demand, claim,
call for

verlängern—to lengthen verlassen (irr. v.t.)—to leave, quit, abandon; (v.r.)—to rely upon, depend on

der **Verlauf** (-s, -e)—course; end; issue

- ** verlegen (v.t.)—to transfer; to misplace; to delay; (adj.) —embarrassed der Verleger (-s, -)—publisher verleiten (v.t.)—to lead astray verletzen (v.t.)—to hurt, injure verleugnen (v.t.)—to deny, disown, (v.r.)—sich nicht verleugnen—to become clear
- * verlieren, verlor, hat verloren (v.t. & i.)—to lose
 verlöschen (v.t.)—to extinguish
 der Verlust (-es, -e)—loss
 vermehren (v.t.)—to increase

vermeiden, vermied, hat vermieden (v.t.)—to avoid, shun, escape from vermitteln (v.i.)—to mediate; (v.t.)—to adjust, arrange, settle; to impart das Vermögen (-s, -)—ability; fortune; property vermögen (irr. v.t.)—to be able to; er vermag — he is able to vermutlich (adj. & adv.) — presumably, probably vernachlässigen (v.t.)—to neglect vernehmlich (adj.)—perceptible vernichten (v.t.)—to annihilate, eradicate; to destroy die Vernunft-reason, understanding; common-sense; vernünftigreasonable, sensible veröffentlichen (v.t.)—to publish die Verpflichtung-obligation verraten (irr. v.i.)—to betray, divulge verrichten—to execute, to do verrückt (adj.) — mad, crazy verrufen (adj.)—disreputable der Vers (-es, e)—verse, poetry, line versagen (v.t.)—to deny; (v.i.)—to fail versammeln (v.t.)—to assemble, to gather, collect; die Versammlungassembly, collection versäumen (v.t.) - to miss, omit das Versäumnis (-ses, -se) — failing, omission verschärfen (v.t.)—to heighten, to intensify verschellen—to shatter verschieben (irr. v.t.)—to move,

change (v.r.) - to shift

verschieden (adj.)—different verschließen—to close; lock up verschlingen (irr. v.t.)—to entwine; devour verschmähen (v.t.)—to disdain, to verschüttet-buried, submerged verschwinden (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to vanish, disappear **versehen (irr. v.t.)—to provide; (v.r.) — to make a mistake versetzen (v.t.)—to transfer. displace; to put, place; die Versetzung-mixing, transfer die Versicherung-insurance, assurance: affirmation versöhnen (v.t.)—to reconcile verspäten (v.r.)—to be delayed versprechen (irr. v.t.)—to promise der Verstand (-s) - mind, intellect; understanding, reason verstehen (irr. v.t.)—to understand, comprehend, grasp; (v.r.)—to be in agreement with; das versteht sich von selbst-that goes without saying verstellen (v.t.)—to adjust; to disguise, to block verstricken (v.t.)—to involve * versuchen (v.t.)—to attempt, try die Versuchung (-en) - temptation versunken—lost: sunk die Versunkenheit-engrossment verteidigen (v.t. & r.)—to justify, to defend vertiefen—to deepen; sich vertiefen in—to become absorbed in der Vertrag (-es, -e)-treaty, contract, covenant vertragen (irr. v.t.)—to endure, tolerate (v.r.) - to get on well

vertraut (adj.) - familiar

vertreiben (irr. v.t.)—to drive away; disperse, scatter; banish vertreten (irr. v.t.)—to replace, represent; to support der Vertreter (-s, -) - adherent, representative verurteilen (v.t.)—to condemn die Verwaltung-administration die Verwandlung-change, transformation; metamorphosis verwandt (adj.) - related; allied verweigern (v.t.)—to refuse verwenden (v.t.)—to use, employ **verwirren** (v.t.)—to confuse **verzehren** (v.t.)—to consume; (v.r.)—to languish das Verzeichnis (-ses, -se)—list, table, schedule, catalogue verzeihen (irr. v.t. & i.)—to forgive verzerren (v.t.) — to distort verzichten (v.i.) (auf)—to renounce, abandon verzögern (v.t.) — to defer, delay der Verzug (-es)—delay, postponement

- verzweifeln (v.i., aux.s.)—to despairviel (adj., adv.)—much, a great deal;
- viele (pl.)—many
 vgl. (vergleiche)—cf. (compare)
 vielfach (adj.)—multiple repeated;
 (adv.)—often
 - vielfältig (adj.)—varied
- * vielleicht (adv.)—perhaps, maybe, possibly; really
- * vielmehr (adv.)—rather das Viertel (-s, -)—quarter der Vogel (-s, ")—bird
- * das Volk (-es, "er)—people, nation; masses die Völkerkunde—ethnology

- Volks- (in compounds)—popular, national; public
- * voll (adj.)—sometimes with gen. or with von—full, filled, complete, whole

voll- (pref.)—signifying
completion, accomplishment
vollbringen (irr. v.t.)—to accom-

plish, achieve **vollenden** (v.t.)—to complete

völlig (adj.)—full, complete vollkommen (adj.)—perfect, complete

die **Vollmacht** (-en)—(legal) power of authority

vollziehen (irr. v.t.)—to carry out; accomplish, execute

- * **von** (prep.) with dat.—of; from; by
- * vor (prep.) with dat. or acc.—before, in front of, in the presence of; ago; in preference to; vor allem—above all; vor Angst—with fear; vor Freude—with joy; Achtung vor dem Gesetz—respect for the law; vor drei Jahren—three years ago; vor Hunger sterben—to die of hunger; vor Zeiten—formerly vor-arbeiten (v.t.)—to prepare; (v.i.)—to pave the way voraus (adv.)—in advance

voraus-berechnen—to calculate in advance

die Voraussage (-n)—prediction voraus-setzen (v.i.)—to

presuppose, to suppose, assume; die **Voraussetzung**—the presupposi-

tion; prerequisite

vorbei (adv.)—along, by, past, gone **vor-bereiten** (v.t.)—to prepare

der **Vorbericht** (-s, -e)—introduction, preface das Vorbild (-s, -er) — model, example vorder (adj.)—fore, forward der Vordergrund (-s, -e) foreground vorderhand (adv.)—for the present voreingenommen (adj.) prejudiced vor-fallen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to occur, happen vorfinden—to find: to discover der Vorgang (-s, -e) - proceedings vor-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to take precedence; to take action; to happen, occur vorgenannt (adj.) - aforementioned die Vorgeschichte-prehistory, past or previous history vor-haben (irr. v.t.)—to have in mind; to be engaged in; to intend vorhanden (adj.)—at hand; available **vorher** (adv.)—previously, before vorig (adj.) — former, previous vor-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to occur; to seem, appear die Vorlage-model, pattern, copy vorläufig (adj.) - preliminary; (adv.) —temporarily die Vorlesung-lecture, course vorn (adv.)—in the front vornehm (adj.)—distinguished; noble vor-nehmen (v.r.)—to resolve der Vorrang (-s)—preeminence, precedence der Vorschein—zum Vorschein

kommen—to appear, to turn up

der Vorschlag (-s, "e) — proposition, proposal, suggestion vor-schlagen—to suggest die Vorschrift (-en) — regulation vor-sehen (irr. v.t.) — to provide for; (v.r.) —to be careful die Vorsicht—caution, care, prudence

- * vorsichtig—careful, cautious vor-singen (i.)—to sing to der Vorstand (-es, -e)—committee vor-stecken—to poke out or forward
- * vor-stellen (v.r.)—to introduce; to imagine, to suppose die Vorstellung—representation; notion, conception; performance vor-täuschen—to feign der Vorteil (-es, -e)—advantage der Vortrag (-es, -e)—lecture vorüber (adv.)—along, by, past das Vorurteil (-s, -e)—prejudice vorwärts (adv.)—forward vor-weisen (irr. v.t.)—to show, display; possess vorwitzig—impertinent

das **Vorwurf** (-s, "er) — preface, introduction

der **Vorwurf** (-s, "e)—reproach, rebuke

vorwurfsvoll—reproachful die Vorzeit—antiquity, past ages vor-ziehen (irr. v.t.)—to prefer der Vorzug (-es, -e)—preference

W

die **Waage** (-n)—scales, balance **wachen** (i.)—to be awake **wachsam** (adj.)—vigilant

wachsen, wuchs, ist gewachsen (v.i.)—to grow, expand der Wächter (-s, -)—guard wacker (adj.)—valiant; honest die Waffe (-n)—weapon wagen (v.t.)—to venture, risk wählen (v.i.)—to choose, elect der Wahn—illusion, madness, mania

- wahnsinnig (adj.)—crazy, madwahr (adj.)—true, genuine, real
- * die Wahrheit (-en)—truth
- * während (prep.) with gen.—in the course of, during; (conj.) —while wahrlich (adj.)—truly; certainly wahr-nehmen (irr. v.t.)—to notice, perceive; distinguish der Wahrsager (-s, -)—prophet
- * wahrscheinlich (adj. & adv.) —
 probable; probably
 der Wald (-es, =er)—woods
 der Wall (-es, =e)—rampart, wall
 walten (v.i.)—to rule, govern; to
 carry out; prevail
 wälzen—to roll
 die Wand (=e)—wall
 wandeln (v.t. or r.)—to change
 wanken (v.i., aux.s. or h.)—to rock,
- * wann (adv. & conj. & interr.) when
 wärmen (v.t.) to warm
 die Warnung (-en) warning
 die Warte—viewpoint
- * warten (v.i.)—to wait (auf) —for; (v.t.)—to attend to
- * warum—why

sway, vacillate

* was (inter, pron.)—what, whatever; (rel. pron.)—what, that, which; alles (everything), etwas (something) and nichts (nothing), was—that waschen, wäscht, wusch, hat gewaschen (t. & r.)—to wash das Wasser (-s, -)—water die Wasserscheu—hydrophobia der Wechsel (-s, -)—change, alteration, variation wechseln—to change

- * weder... noch (conj.)—neither ...
- * der Weg (-es, -e)—way, road, path, course; den Weg bereiten—to pave the way; ihr im Wege stehen—to be or stand in her way
- weg (adv.)—away, gone
 weg- (pref.)—away, etc.
 weg-bleiben (i., aux.s.)—to stay
 away
 wegen (prep.) with gen. —because
 - of
 weg-werfen—to throw away
 weh—alas!; ihnen weh tun—to
 hurt them, to grieve or wound or
 offend them
 wehren (v.r.)—to defend oneself
 das Weib (-es, -er)—wife, woman,

spouse
weiblich (adj.)—female; feminine
weich (adj.)—soft, mild, yielding

die Weiche stellen—to set the course

weichen, wich, ist gewichen (v.i.)
—to move; to retreat

weigern (v.r.)—to refuse, decline weihen (v.t.)—to consecrate, inaugurate

die Weihnachten (literally: holy nights)—Christmas

* weil (conj.)—because, since die Weile (-n)—while der Wein (-s, -e)—wine weinen (v.i.)—to cry

- der **Weintrinker** (-s, -)—wine drinker
- * weise (adj.)—wise
- * die **Weise** (-n) manner, custom, way
- ** weise (adj. & n. & suff.) —denotes manner weisen, wies, hat gewiesen (v.t.) to show, point out, indicate; to refer
- * die Weisheit-wisdom
- * weiß (adj.)—white, clean, blank
- * weiß (v.)—er, sie, or es weiß—see wissen—to know
- weit (adj.)—wide, broad; (adv.) —
 far off, widely, by far; bei weitem—
 by far, much
- * weiter (comp. adj. and sep. pref.) farther, further; (adv.) farther; furthermore weiter-gehen (v.i., aux.s., irr.) to go on, continue weiterhin (adv.) furthermore, moreover weitgehend (adj.) far-reaching, extensive; (adv.) largely
- * welch (indecl. pron.)—welch eine Frau—what a woman!; (inter, adj.)
 —which (inter. pron.)—which, who; (rel. pron.)—which, what, who, whom; (rel. adj.)—which, whichever; whatever
- * die Welt (-en)-world
- * die Weltanschauung (-en)—philosophy of life, view; outlook, ideology der Weltkrieg (-s, -e)—world war der Weltraum- (in compounds)—space die Wende—change, turn wenden, wandte, hat gewandt (v, r,)—to turn

- der **Wendepunkt** (-s, -e)—turning point
- wenig (adj. & adv.)—little; ein wenig—a little; with pl. —few; die wenigen Male, daß—the few times that
- wenigstens (adv.)—at least
 wenn (conj.)—when, whenever; if; wenn with subjunctive is always if;
- * wer (pron.)—who, which; wen—whom; wem—whom, to whom; wessen—whose

wenn auch-even if

* werden, wurde, ist geworden (irr. v., aux.s.)—to become, to grow, to turn, to get; es wird dunkel—it is getting dark; es wurde dunkel—it grew dark; es ist dunkel
geworden—it has become dark; werden & an infinitive denotes the future—sie wird hier sein—she will be here; sie werden das tun können—they will be able to do that; werden & a participle is the passive—es wird oft gesagt—it is often said; es wurde oft getan—it was often done

werfen, warf, hat geworfen (v.t. & i.)—to throw, cast, fling; to overthrow, upset das Werk (-es, -e)—act, deed; un-

das **Werk** (-es, -e)—act, deed; undertaking; publication, book, work der **Werktag** (-s, -e)—workday

- wert (adj.)—valued, useful; with gen.—worth; nicht der Mühe wert—not worth the effort
- * der Wert (-es, -e)—value, worth, price; die Werte (usually)—the values das Wesen (-s, -e)—essence; nature, entity, being, creature; state, condition, nature, character; conduct

```
wesenhaft (adj.) - real; intrinsic;
essential
wesentlich (adj.)—essential, sub-
stantial, fundamental, intrinsic
weshalb (inter pron.)—why;
(conj.)—on account of which;
which is why
wessen—whose
der Westen (-s)—the west, the Oc-
```

cident weswegen-on what account

die Wette (-n)-wager das Wetter-weather; bad weather * wichtig (adj.)—important, serious

- wickeln (v.t.)—to wind; to wrap * wider (prep.) with acc. —against, in
- opposition to wider- (sep. and insep. verb pref., & noun pref.)—counter-, contra-, anti-, re-, with-

widerlegen (v.t.)—to refute widerlich (adj.)—loathsome, repugnant

widerrufen (irr. v.t.)—to revoke widersprechen (irr. v.i.)—to contradict

der Widerstand (-s, -e)—opposition, resistance

widerwärtig (adj.) — disagreeable, hateful, offensive

widmen (v.t.)—to dedicate; (v.r.) to devote oneself

- wie (adv.)—how?, to what extent?: however; wie dem auch sei-however that may be; (conj.)—as, like, such as; wie gesagt—as has been stated: wie oben-as above: how: ich weiß nicht, wie ich das tun kann—I don't know how I can do that
- wieder (adv.) again, once more;

immer wieder—again & again wieder- (noun and verb pref., usually sep.) - re-, back- (again), in return (for) wieder-aufbereiten (v.t.)—to recydie Wiederauferstehung -resurrection ** wieder-geben (irr. v.t.)—to return; (art) - to reproduce; to interpret; to quote (from a text) wiederholen (v.t.)—to repeat; (v.r.)—to be repeated, to recur die Wiederholung (-en)-repetition die Wiederkehr—the return, recurrence wieder-kehren (i., aux.s.)—to rewieder-kommen (i., aux.s.)—to wiegen, wog, hat gewogen (v.t.) to weigh; to carry weight wieviel-how much der Wille (-ns, no pl.)—will, volition; intent, wish; mit Willen-on purpose; willen (prep.)—with gen. -um ... willen-for the sake of; um seinetwillen—for his sake willkürlich (adj.) — arbitrary, despotic der Wind (-es, -e)—wind die Windmühle (-n)—windmill der Wink (-es, -e)—sign, wink,

hint, suggestion winken (v.i.) - to signal, wave; wink der Winter (-s)—winter

winzig (adj.)—tiny, minute * wir—we

wirken (v.t.)—to cause, to work; (v.i.) - to work, operate; have an effect; to appear

- * wirklich (adj.)—actual, real
- * die Wirklichkeit—reality wirksam (adj.)—effective die Wirkung (-en)—result, effect, consequence, impact der Wirrwar—confusion
- * die Wirtschaft (-en)—economic system, economy; state of affairs; freie Wirtschaft—free enterprise; inn wirtschaftlich—economic der Wirtschaftsplan (-s, -e) budget
- * wissen, wußte, hat gewußt (v.t.)
 —to know, be acquainted with, understand; er will davon nichts
 wissen—he'll have nothing to do
 with it; (v.i.)—to know (um) of or
 about; ich weiß nicht recht—I
 don't really know
 das Wissen—knowledge; learning,
 education; meines Wissens—as far
 as I know
- * die Wissenschaft (-en)—science; knowledge der Wissenschaftler (-s, -)—scientist, scholar wissenschaftlich—scientific wittern (v.t.)—to smell; to sense der Witz (-es, -e)—joke
- wo (inter.)—where; (rel.)—where, in which; (conj.)—where, when; es gab Zeiten, wo —there were times when...
 wobei (rel. adv.)—through which, whereby, in the course of which die Woche (-n)—week woher (rel. and inter, adv.)—from where; from what or which place

wohin (rel. and inter, adv.)—where

to; -(indef. adv.) somewhere

- * wohl (pred. adj. & adv.) well; indeed; possibly; presumably; das ist wohl möglich I suppose that is possible wohlbedacht (adj.) deliberate, well-considered
- * wohnen (v.i.)—to live, dwell die Wohnung (-en)—apartment der Wolf (-es, "e)—wolf die Wolke (-n)—cloud die Wolle (-n)—wool
- * wollen (modal)—to be willing; to wish, want, desire; to be about to do; to claim, require, demand; ich wollte, ich wäre—I wish I were worden (past. perf. of werden)—been

das Wort (-es, "er or -e) ("er with

- unconnected words, in all other cases, the pl. is -e)—word, term, expression; mit anderen Worten—in other words das Wörterbuch (-es, -er)—dictionary wörtlich (adj.)—literal das Wortspiel (-s, -e)—pun die Wortstammkunde—etymology die Wunde (-n)—wound wundern (v.r.)—to be surprised by der Wunsch (-es, -e)—wish, desire * wünschen (t. & i.)—to wish
 - wünschenswert—desirable
 die Würde—dignity, propriety;
 akademische Würde—academic
 degree; unter meiner Würde—beneath my dignity
 würdigen—to value
 der Wurm (-es, -er)—worm
 die Wurzel (-n)—root
 wüst (adj.)—desolate, wild
 die Wüste (-n)—desert

die Wut—rage, fury wütend—enraged

X

x-mal (adv.)—any number of times

Z

- z.B.—zum Beispiel—for example zaghaft—timid zäh(e) — tough, tenacious, stubborn die Zahl (-en)-number, figure zahlen (v.t. & i.)—to pay for zählen (v.t. & i.)—to count, reckon zahm (adj.) — tame, docile, cultivated zähmen—to tame der Zahn (-es, -e) - tooth der Zank (-es, no pl.)-quarrel zänkisch-quarrelsome, cranky der **Zar** (-en, -en)—tsar, czar zart (adj.)—delicate, soft, gentle der Zauber (-s, -)—spell, charm, magic
- * zehn—ten
 zehren (v.i.)—to live or exist; to
 draw on; to wear something out
 das Zeichen (-s, -)—sign, symbol;
 mark, reference
 zeichnen (v.t. & i.)—to draw,
 sketch, portray; depict
 der Zeichner (-s, -)—designer, portrayer
- * zeigen (v.t.)—to show, display, indicate; (v.r.)—to show oneself, to appear; es zeigt sich, daß—it appears that
- der Zeiger (-s, -) hand of a clock
 die Zeit (-en) time, epoch, age, era, period, season; es ist an der

Zeit—it is time; in früherer Zeit formerly; in jüngster or neuester Zeit—quite recently; in letzter Zeit-recently; mit der Zeit-in the course of time: vor der Zeitpremature; **zur Zeit**—at present der Zeitabschnitt (-s, -e)—period, epoch das Zeitalter (-s, -)—age, era; generation der Zeitgeist-spirit of the times der Zeitgenosse (-n, -n)-contemporary die Zeitgeschichte-contemporary history zeitig (adj.)—early; (adv.)—early, on time zeitlich (adj.)—temporal, transitory der **Zeitraum** (-s, -e)—interval; period, space of time die Zeitschrift (-en)—journal, magazine, periodical die Zeitung (-en) - newspaper zerbrechen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to break into pieces; to be destroyed, to collapse die Zeremonie-ceremony der Zerfall-ruin, decay, disintegration zerreißen-to rip into pieces zerschmettern—to smash zerschneiden—to cut into pieces die Zersetzungsliteratur-seditious or subversive literature zerstören (v.t.)—to destroy ** zerstreuen (v.t.)—to disperse, dissi-

pate, scatter, dispel; (v.r.) — to amuse oneself: **sich zerstreuen lassen**—to

zertreten-to crush, trample under

allow one's attention to wander

foot

der **Zettel** (-s, -)—note, slip of paper das **Zeug** (-es, -e)—stuff **zeugen** (v.i.)—to bear witness, to testify; (v.t.)—to procreate, beget; to create das **Zeugnis** (-ses, -se)—evidence die **Ziege** (-n)—goat

- * ziehen, zog, hat gezogen (v.t.)—to draw, pull; to cultivate, grow; to describe; an sich ziehen—to attract; (v.i.)—to prove attractive; (v.i., aux.s.)—to march, advance; (v.r.)—to stretch, extend; to distort das Ziel (-es, -e)—goal, aim; objective, destination
- * ziemlich (adj.)—considerable; (adv.)—rather, quite die Zierde (-n)—decoration zieren (v.t.)—to adorn; (v.r.) —to be affected; to make a fuss die Ziffer (-n)—figure; clause; item zirka (adv.)—approximately das Zitat (-es, -e)—quotation zittern (v.i.)—to tremble, shake (vor) with
- ** zivil (adj.)—civilian
 die Zivilisation—civilization (especially in its technological aspects)
 zögern (v.i.)—to hesitate; to delay;
 to defer
 der Zoo (-s, -s)—zoo
 der Zorn (-es, no pl.)—wrath, anger
- * zu (prep.) with dat.—towards, up to; zur Folge haben—to have as a result; at, on, in: zu Bonn—in Bonn; zur Hand at hand; zu Hause—at home; zum ersten—in the first place; zur Nacht—at or by night
- * zu (adv.)—too; closed
- * zu (part.)—um ... zu—in order to;

ohne zu—without-ing; anstatt
zu—instead of

zu (inf. used passively after sein) ihm ist zu trauen—he is to be (or can be) trusted; es ist zu sehen—it is to be seen

zu- (sep. pref.)—towards, closed die **Zucht** (-en)—education, training, discipline, decency, propriety, manners

der Zucker (-s)—sugar
zuckern—to sugar; to put sugar in
zudem (adv.)—besides, moreover
zudringlich (adj.)—intrusive
zu-eignen (v.t.)—to dedicate
zuerst (adv.)—first; at first; first
of all, especially

- der **Zufall** (-es, "e)—chance, accident

 ** **zu-fallen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to fall to
 (one's) lot; to close **zufällig** (adj.)—accidental; chance
 - zufolge (prep.)—preceded by dat. or followed by gen.—as a result of zufrieden (adj.)—contented, satisfied die Zufriedenheit—satisfaction
- * der Zug (-es, "e)—train; course; Zug der Ereignisse—course of events; outline; characteristic; trait der Zugang (-es, "e)—admittance, entry, access

zu-geben (irr. v.t.)—to grant, concede, admit, confess; to add

- ** zu-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to happen, come to pass; to go, move towards; to close; to reach
 - zu-gestehen (irr. v.t.)—to concede, acknowledge; admit zugleich (adv.)—at the same time
- * zugrunde (adv.)—zugrunde gehen—to perish, be ruined; zugrunde liegen—to take as a basis

zu-hören (i.)—to listen to

die **Zukunft**—future

** zu-lassen (irr. v.t.)—to grant, permit; to leave closed
zuletzt (adv.)—finally, ultimately, at

zu-machen—to close

zumal (adv.)—above all, especially,

especially since

zu-muten (v.t.)—to expect,

demand, ask

zunächst (adv.)—first of all; for the present

zu-nehmen (irr. v.i.)—to increase;

to thrive, prosper die **Zunge** (-n)— tongue

zupfen (i.)—to tug

zurecht-finden (r.)—to find one's

way

zu-reden (v.i.)—to encourage

zu-richten (v.t.)—to prepare
* zurück (adv. and prep.)—back,

backwards, behind

zurück-bringen—to bring back

** zurück-führen (v.t.)—to lead back; to trace back; to attribute to, to ex-

plain by

zurück-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) —to return; to diminish, decline, to be

cancelled; to go back

zurück-kehren (i., aux.s.)—to

return, come back **zurück-kommen** (i., aux.s.) —to

return, come back

zurück-legen—to set aside

zurück-stellen (v.t.) - to replace; to

postpone; to defer

die **Zurückweisung**—refusal, rejection, repudiation

zusammen (adv. and sep. pref.) together **zusammen-fassen**—to combine; to summarize

der Zusammenhang (-s, -e)—con-

nection, context die **Zusammenkunft** (-e)—

meeting

zusammen-setzen (v.t.)—to

compose

zusammen-stellen (v.t.)—to group,

classify, compile **zusammen-ziehen** (irr. v.t.)—to

draw together; to condense

der Zusatz (-es, -e)-additional re-

mark

der **Zuschauer** (-s, -)—spectator

(pl.)—audience

zu-sehen (i.)—to watch der Zustand (-es, -e)—state, con-

dition

zustande (adv.)—zustande

bringen—to accomplish, achieve;

zustande kommen —to happen

zuständig (adj.)—proper, appropri-

ate; responsible

zu-teilen—to allot; grant

zu-tragen—to carry, to report;

(r.)—to happen

zuverlässig (adj.)—reliable

die Zuversicht-confidence

zuvor (adv.)—before, previously

zuwider (prep.) with dat.—opposed

to; (adv.)—repugnant

der **Zwang** (-es, -e)—force, coercion

zwangsläufig (adj.)—inevitable; (adv.) —necessarily

' **zwar** (adv.)—indeed, certainly

der Zweck (-es, -e)—aim, goal

* **zwei**—two

zweierlei (indecl. adj.)—two sorts of; **zweierlei ist zu beachten**—two

things *are* to be noticed

der Zweifel (-s, -)—doubt, uncertainty, misgivings; in Zweifel stellen or ziehen—to call into doubt der Zweig (-es, -e)—branch zweimal—twice zweitens (adv.)—secondly, in the second place der Zwerg (-es, -e)—dwarf der Zwiespalt (-s, -e)—dissension, discord, schism, discrepency zwingen, zwang, hat gezwungen (v.t.)—to force, compel; to finish; (v.r.)—to force oneself

* zwischen (prep.) with acc. or dat.—
between (with reference to two
things); among (with reference to
three or more things)
das Zwischenspiel (-s, -e)—intermezzo, interlude; incident
die Zwischenstunde—interval, intermission
der Zwist (-es, -e)—dissension, discord, dispute
der Zyniker (-s, -)—cynic

ABBREVIATIONS

Α

- * Abk. Abkürzung—abbreviation
- * Abs. Absatz—paragraph allg. allgemein—general allj. alljährlich—annual allm. allmählich—gradual
- * Anh. Anhang—appendix
 Anm. Anmerkung—note
 A. T. Altes Testament—Old Testament

В

- * **b. bei**—at, with, in care of
- * bes. besonders—especially

- betr. betreffend—concerning
 bez. bezüglich—with reference to
 bisw. bisweilen—sometimes
 bzgl. bezüglich—with reference
- bzw. beziehungsweise respectively

C

* ca. circa—approximately

D

* d.h. das heißt—that is; i.e. dt.(sch) deutsch—German

F

Ed. Edition, Ausgabe—edition eig. eigtl. eigentlich—actually einschl. einschließlich—inclusively

F

fig. figürlich—figurative

G

- * geb. geboren—born
- * ges. gesamt—total

Н

haupts. hauptsächlich—mainly hpts. hauptsächlich—mainly hrsg. herausgegeben—edited

T

i.b. im besonderen—in particular
id. identisch—identical
i.g. im ganzen—on the whole
inbegr. inbegriffen—included
insb. insbesondere—in particular

insg. insgesamt—altogether
i.S. im Sinne—in the meaning of
& in Sachen—re, in the matter of
i.w.S. im weiteren Sinne—in a
broad sense

I

* Jh. Jahrhundert—century

K

* Kap. Kapitel—chapter kg. Kilogramm—kilogram kompl. komplett—complete

L

Ifd. laufend —current, running **It. laut**—according to

M

m.A.n. m; m. A. n. meiner Ansicht nach —in my opinion m.a.W. mit anderen Worten —in other words m.E. meines Erachtens—in my opinion mind. mindestens—at least

N

n. J. nächsten Jahres—of next year n.M. nächsten Monats—of next month Nr. Nummer—number

N.T. Neues Testament — New Testament

O

- * o. oben—above
- o.a. oder ähnlich—or the like

P

Prof. Professor—professor

R

* rd. rund—roughly
Red. Redakteur—editor
Redaktion—editorial staff, editor's
office

S

- * S. Seite—page
 - s. siehe—see
- s.a. siehe auch—see also
 selbst, selbständig—independent
- s.o. siehe oben—see above
- ' sog. sogenannt—so-called
- * s.u. siehe unten—see below svw. soviel wie—as much as s.Z. seinerzeit—at that time

T

Tit. Titel - title

U

u. und—and
u.a. und anderes—and others;
unter anderem—among other
things, inter alia
u.a. und ähnliches—and the like
übl. üblich—usual
usf. und so fort—and so forth
usw. und so weiter—and so forth,
etc.

17

v. von, vom—of, from; by
vgl. vergleiche—compare, cf.
v. J. vorigen Jahres—of last year
v.M. vorigen Monats—of last month
v.u. von unten—from below

W/

w.o. wie oben—as above mentioned

z. zu, zur, zum—to at
z.B. zum Beispiel—for example

zgl. zugleich—at the same time

zuf. zufolge—as a result of
 zus. zusammen—together
 zw. zwischen—between, among

42I



German Proper Names

Adenauer, Konrad (1876-1967)—first chancellor of the German Federal Republic

Adler, Alfred (1870-1937) — Austrian psychologist

Ägyptian—Egypt

Albertus Magnus (c. 1200–1280) — German philosopher

Antillen—Antilles

Aristoteles — Aristotle

Ärmelkanal—English Channel

Asien—Asia

Bach, Johann Sebastian (1685-1750)—German composer

Baden-Württemberg—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Barlach, Ernst (1870-1938)—German sculptor

Barth, Karl (1886-1968)—Swiss theologian

Bayern — Bavaria one of the 16 Länder of Germany.

Beckmann, Max (1884-1950)—German painter

Belgien - Belgium

Benjamin, Walter (1892-1940)—German writer and philosopher

Berg, Alban (1885-1935) — Austrian composer

Berlin—one of the 16 Länder of Germany. From 1963–1989, it was divided by the Berlin Wall. Now it is the capital of Germany.

Bismarck, Otto von (1815-1898) — German statesman

Bodensee—Lake of Constance

Böhme, Jakob (1575-1624)—German mystic

Böhmen—Bohemia

424

Böll, Heinrich (1917-85)—German author

Bonhoeffer, Dietrich (1906–1945)—German theologian who was executed on account of his attempt to assassinate Hitler

Brandenburg—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Brandt, Willi (1913-92) — German politician

Braunschweig-Brunswick

Brecht, Bertolt (1898-1956) — German dramatist

Bremen—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Bruckner, Anton (1824-96)—Austrian composer

Brüning, Heinrich (1885-1970)—Chancellor of the Weimar Republic

Brüssel - Brussels

Buber, Martin (1878-1965) — German philosopher

Büchner, Georg (1813-37)—German dramatist

Bukarest—Bucharest

Bulgarien — Bulgaria

Bundesrepublik—Federal Republic

Bundestag-German Parliament

Calais—Straits of Dover

Celan, Paul (1920-1970) — German poet

Deutschland—Germany

Deutsche Demokratische Republik—German Democratic Republic—former East Germany

Diesel, Rudolf (1858–1913) — German inventor

Donau—Danube

Dostojewskij - Doestoevsky

Dreißigjähriger Krieg (1618-1648)—Thirty years war

Dürer, Albrecht (1471-1538)—German painter

Dürrenmatt, Friedrich (1921-)—Swiss dramatist

Ebert, Friedrich (1871-1925)—first president of the Weimar Republic

Eckhart, Meister (c.1260-1327)—founder of German mysticism

Eichendorff, Joseph (1788-1857)—German poet

Eismeer—Arctic Ocean

Elbe—German river

Elsaß—Alsace

Engels, Friedrich (1820-95) — German philosopher

Erhard, Ludwig (1897–1977)—second chancellor of the Federal Republic of Germany

Ernst, Max (1891-1976)—German painter

Fasching—the German carnival season that lasts from 11 November until Shrove Tuesday

Faust—drama written by Goethe

Feuerbach, Ludwig (1804-72)—German theologian

Fichte, Johann (1762-1814)—German philosopher

Florenz—Florence

Fontane, Theodor (1819–1898) — German author

Frankreich—France

Frauenkirche—Church of Our Lady

Freud, Sigmund (1856-1939) — Austrian psychiatrist, founder of psychoanalysis

Friedrich der Große (1712-1786) — Fredrick the Great

Frisch, Max (1911-1991)—Swiss author

Genf—Geneva

George, Stephan (1868-1933) — German writer (who died in Switzerland)

Glück, Christoph (1714-1787) — German composer

Goethe, Johann Wolfgang (1749-1832) — German poet

Grass, Günter (1927-)—German author

Griechenland—Greece

Grimm, Jakob (1765-1863) & Wilhelm (1786-1859) — German philologists

Grimmelshausen, Hans (1625-1676)—German novelist

Grönland—Greenland

Großbritannien—Great Britain

Grünewald, Mathais (c. 1475-1528)—German painter

Hahn, Otto (1879-1968) — German chemist

Hartmann von Aue (d. between 1210 and 1220)—Middle High German Epic poet

Hamburg—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Hauptmann, Gerhart (1862-1946) — German dramatist

Hegel, Georg Willhelm Friedrich (1770-1831)—German philosopher

Heidegger, Martin (1889-1976) — German philosopher

Heine, Heinrich (1797-1856)—German poet

Herder, Johann (1744-1803) — German philosopher

Hesse, Hermann (1877-1962)—German poet

Hessen—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Hiob-Job

Hofmannsthal, Hugo (1874-1929)—German poet

Hohenzollern—German dynasty, beginning in the 12th century

Hölderlin, Johann (1770–1843) — German poet

Horaz—Horace

Humboldt, Alexander (1769–1859) — German naturalist

Indien—India

Irland—Ireland

Island—Iceland

Italien—Italy

Jaspers, Karl (1883-1969) — German philosopher

Johannas-John

Johanna von Orléans-Joan of Arc

Jung, Carl (1875-1961) — Swiss psychiatrist

Kafka, Franz (1883–1924) — Czech author

Kaiser, Georg (1878-1945) — German dramatist

Kant, Immanuel (1724–1804) — German philosopher

Karl der Große (c. 742-814)—Charlemagne

Keller, Gottfried (1819–1890)—Swiss author

Klee, Paul (1879–1940) — Swiss born painter

Kleist, Heinrich (1777-1811) — German poet

Köln-Cologne

Konstantin—Constantine

Konstanz—Constance

Leibniz, Gottfried (1646-1716)—German philosopher

Lenz, Jakob Michael Friedrich (1751–1792)—German writer of the Sturm und Drang period

Lessing, Gotthold (1729–1781) — German poet

Lothringen-Lorraine

Ludwig-Louis

Lukas—Luke

Luther, Martin (1483-1546)—German Reformation leader

Luzern-Lucerne

Mahler, Gustav (1860-1911) — Austrian composer

Mailand—Milan

Main - German river

Mann, Thomas (1875-1955)—German author

Marc, Franz (1880-1916) — German painter

Markus—Mark

Marokko-Morocco

Martini, Fritz (1909-1991) — German literary critic, most famous for *Deutsche Literaturgeschichte*

Matthäus—Matthew

Mecklenberg-Vorpommern—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Metternich, Clemens (1773-1859)—Austrian statesman

Minnesang (12th century)—German courtly love poetry

Mittelmeer — Mediterranean Sea

Mörike, Eduard (1804-1875)—German poet

Mosel - Moselle

Moskau—Moscow

Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)—German composer

München—Munich

Neapel—Naples

Nibelungenlied—German epic (c.1200)

Niederlande—Netherlands

Niedersachsen—Lower Saxony—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Nietzsche, Friedrich (1844-1900) — German philosopher

Nil-Nile

Nordrhein-Westfalen—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Nordsee - North Sea

Norwegen — Norway

Novalis (Friedrich von Hardenberg) (1772-1801) German poet

Oder-German river

Ostasian — Eastern Asia

Österreich — Austria

Ostsee—Baltic

Palästina—Palastine

Parzival — Percival

Paulus—Paul

Platon—Plato

Polen—Poland

Pommern — Pommerania

Prag-Prague

Preußen—Prussia

Regensburg—Ratisbon

Rhein—Rhine river

Rheinland-Pfalz—Rhineland-Palatinate—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Richter, Jean Paul (1763-1825) — German writer

Rilke, Ranier Maria (1875–1926)—Austrian poet

Rom—Rome

Röntgen, Wilhelm (1845-1923)—German physicist, discoverer of X-rays

Ruhr—German river

Russand—Russia

Saale—German river

Saarland—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Sachsen—Saxony

Schiller, Johann Christian Friedrich (1759–1805) — German poet

Schlegel, Friedrich (1772-1829)—German poet

Schlesien—Silesia

Schleswig-Holstein—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Schliemann, Heinrich (1822-1890)—discoverer of Troy

Schnitzler, Arthur (1862-1931) — Austrian dramatist and novelist

Schönberg, Arnold (1874–1951) — German composer

Schopenhauer, Arthur (1788-1860) — German philosopher

Schottland—Scotland

Schwaben—Swabia

Schwarzwald—Black Forest

Schweden — Sweden

Schweitzer, Albert (1875–1965) — German theologian

Schweiz—Switzerland

Siberien—Siberia

Singapur—Singapore

Sizilien—Sicily

Spanien - Spain

Spengler, Oswald (1880–1936) — German philosopher

Spinoza, Baruch (1632–1677)—German philosopher

Stifter, Adelbert (1805–1868)—Austrian author

Strauss, Richard (1864–1949) — German composer

Themse—Thames

Thüringen—Thuringia—one of the 16 Länder of Germany

Tillich, Paul (1886-1965)—German theologian

Tolstoj-Tolstoi

Trakl, Georg (1887-1914)—Austrian poet

Tschechoslowakei — Czechoslovakia

Türkei—Turkey

Ungarn—Hungary

Vatikan — Vatican

Venedig—Venice

Vereinigte Staaten—United States

Wagner, Richard (1813–1883) — German composer

Walther von der Vogelweide—(c. 1170-1230) German poet

Warschau—Warsaw

Weiß, Peter (1916–1982)—German dramatist

Werfel, Franz (1890–1945) — Austrian author

Weser—German river

Wien—Vienna

Wittgenstein, Ludwig (1889–1951)—German philosopher

Wolfram von Eschenbach (c. 1170-1220) — German poet

Zweig, Stefan (1881-1942)—Austrian author

Zwingli, Ulrich (1484–1531)—Swiss Reformation leader

Zypern—Cyprus

Index

abbreviations

```
conventions in German dictionaries, 183-84
                                                       comparison and superlative, 90-91
  in the General and Humanities Vocabulary,
                                                        definition, 32
                                                       dictionary conventions, 130
  list of those commonly appearing in scholarly
                                                        list of common adverbs, 33-34
                                                       those that have different definitions from the
        literature, 419-21
                                                             same word when it is used as an adjective
                                                             (eben, gleich, gerade, etc.), 34, 130, 254
accusative case, 16
adjective
                                                     als
  comparison and superlative, 87-93
                                                        subordinating conjunction, 169
     when -er is a comparative ending, and
                                                        summary of uses, 252
        when it is not, 91
                                                        when forming the subjunctive II, 224
     comparative or not exercise, 93
                                                        with comparative, 89
     common comparative constructions, 89
  definition, 29
                                                     aт
  dictionary conventions, 130
                                                       contraction of an + dem, 47
  ending in -el or -er and preceding a noun, 31-
                                                        marker of the superlative predicate adjective
                                                             or adverb, 87
        32
  endings (charts), 29, 31, 286
  overloaded, 194-99
                                                     ander. 240
  as nouns, 75-77
     chart, 76
                                                     answer key (partial), 319-51
  possessive, 67-69
     chart, 68
                                                     case
   predicate, 32
                                                        accusative, 16
  strong ending paradigms, 29-30
                                                       chart for der and ein, 24, 285
  weak endings paradigms, 31
                                                        definitions, 15-25
```

adverbs

case (continued)	es
case (continued) dative, 21-25	es gibt, es sind, 79
genitive, 18–19	pay attention es, 80
importance of, 26, 53–55	pay attention is, oo
nominative, 15–16	English grammar necessary for learning Ger-
when nouns have endings to reveal case, 21,	man, 275-83
31, 73	111411, 2/)-05
J*1 / J	genitive case
cognates	defined, 18–19
definition, I	indefinite time expressions, 310
consonant correspondences, 1-3	masculine and neuter nouns have an -s
false, 135-36	ending, 18
supplementary exercises, 3, 36	chang, to
supplementary exercises, 5, 50	important words (vocabulary list), 267-73
commas, 245-49	important words (vocabulary list), 20/-//
clauses, 246-47	indicative verb forms
sequences, 245	auxiliaries haben and sein for the perfect
sequences, 24)	tense, 109-10
commands, 59	charts
communas, yy	easy verbs, 108, 109, 290
compound nouns	sein and haben, 110-11, 290-91
examples, 5	hard verbs, 113, 290
how to break them up to translate them, 132-	dictionary conventions, 134-35
33	difference between easy and hard verbs, 11
<i>)</i>	future, 83–86
conjunctions	ge- verbs, 117-18
co-ordinating, 155–57, 289	inseparable verbs in past and perfect form
interrogative, 172-75	115-16
was, 173	list of strong verbs, 301-5
wer, 172	patterns of strong verbs, 297-300
wie, 173-74	past, 106-18
subordinating, 165-70, 289	easy/weak/regular, 106-9
common, 168	hard/strong/irregular, 112-15
those that have other definitions when	irregular weak/curve ball, 117
used as other parts of speech, 168	past perfect, 110
relative, 176-81	present, 8-11
relative, 1/0 of	irregular forms in present tense, 10-11
da-compounds, 94-96, 149	present perfect
	easy/weak/regular, 106–9
dative case, 21-25	hard/strong/irregular, 112-15
	irregular weak, 117
dependent clauses, 165-70	separable verbs in past and perfect forms,
verb placement of, 165	118- 19
key to translating, 166-67	
to translating, ree of	interrogative
der-words (dieser, jener, jeder, etc.), 25	pronouns for forming questions, 59
(, j, j, ===,,, =,	as subordinating conjunctions, 172-75
dictionary	verb in first position to form questions, 59
evaluating German-English dictionaries, 313–17	1 1 2 2 2 2 3 7 7 7
Laurence Comment l'adende	Lucia (III) and an

modal auxiliaries <i>(dürfen, können, mögen,</i> <i>müssen, sollen, wollen),</i> 140–46	with modal auxiliaries, 208 <i>man</i> as a passive, 213
chart, 141	sein + zu + infinitive, 151
common idioms, 141	sich lassen, 214-15
definitions, 140	
placement of, 141, 143	plurals
past and present perfect tenses, 142-43	formation of, 5-7, 125-28
subjunctive of, 230-32	summary, 7
verbs functioning as modals (lassen, heißen,	
etc.), 144	prefixes (verb)
when the infinitive is omitted, 144	inseparable, 103–4
	separable, 100–103
months (and weeks), 307	differentiated from prepositions, 102
	directional uses of hin and her, 102-3
nominative case, 15-16	list of, 101
noun	prepositions
dictionary conventions, 130-32	accusative case, 39-41
infinitive as noun, 5	dative case, 41–44
weak, 73-75	dative and accusative case, 46-49
chart 74	definition, 37
	der following a preposition is dative feminine
numbers, 308	95% of the time, 39
	dictionary conventions, 133-34
overloaded adjective construction	genitive case, 50-51
how to identify, 195	list of, 287-89
how to translate (the four steps), 195-99	problematic prepositions regarding time,
step 1 (identifying the article or adjective	309-10
beginning the overload), 196	
step 2 (identifying the noun to which the	pronouns
article is attached, 197	charts listing them, 286-87
step 3 (finding the adjective to the left of	du, ihr, Sie, 67
the noun), 197	personal, nominative, 8-9
step 4 (translating the rest of the overload)	chart, 10
how to differentiate from relative clauses, 199	nominative, accusative, dative, 64-66
adjectives in overloaded adjective construc-	charts, 64, 65
tions need not be participles, 196	other pronouns (alles, etwas, nichts, ander,
A	etc.), 239-41
participle	reflexive, 185-87
as an adjective, 120	chart, 185
definition, 106	relative, 176-78
how to identify with the passive, 204	chart, 175
past, 106-20	sie can mean either she or they, 9, 66
present (an adjective or adverb), 137	•
	pronunciation guide, xix-xxii
passive voice, 204-9	
cautions, 208-9	proper nouns
definition, 204	German proper names, 423–28
fake (or apparent) passive, 215–16	problems identifying them, 133
formation of, 204–6	supplementary exercises, 14, 78

reading selections	subjunctive II, 223–29
Fräulein Meier, 52-53	charts, 223–24
Meeresstrand, 62-63	conditional, 226
Das Sprichwort, 81–82	frequent uses of, 224-25
Der Elefant, 97	translation of, 225
Abraham und Isaak, 122–24	with the passive, 226-27
November, 146-47	of modals, 231-32
Die zehn Jungfrauen, 163–64	würde, 233
Das Erdbeben in Chili, 183–84	
Der Froschkönig, 192–93	suffixes, 137-38
Der Wolf und die sieben Geißlein, 201-3	. 3, 3
Chassidische Geschichten, 217	time phrases, 209-10
Der Schwan, 234-35	I
Die fröhliche Wissenschaft, 243	troublesome words, 250-60
Der Wille zur Macht, 244	list of, 250
201 William 201 Macini, 244	31, 2)0
relative clauses, 176-81	um
relative pronouns (including a chart), 176-78	summary of uses, 257
tips for translating, 178-81	summary or ases, 2)/
tips for translating, 1/0 or	verb placement
reflexive, 185-91	clause starting with a verb, 59, 236-38
common reflexive verbs, 188	compound verbs, 159-61
meanings it can express, 186	examples of most possible verb combinations,
pronouns (chart), 185	
selbst and selber, 187	294-95
•	summary of, 292–93
selbst preceding a noun, 187, 256	supplementary exercises, 163, 183
sich, when translated and when omitted in	verb at the end of the clause, 61-62, 165-67
translation, 190-91	verb in second place, 56-58
used instead of possessive adjectives, 186	1.1
verbs, 188–90	vocabulary
verbs that should be translated passively, 214	general and humanities, 353-419
	how to memorize words, 13
schedule for reading German Quickly, 265–66	important words, 267-73
	1
sei	werden
imperative, 59	to become, II
subjunctive I, 210	future, 83–86
	passive, 204-11
50	summary of uses, 291-92
so wie, 89	werden followed by zu, 84
summary of uses, 259	
	worden (been), 205, 206
strategies for reading German, 261–65	
1.	wo-compounds, 96
subjunctive	
subjunctive I, 218-22	zu
indirect discourse, 219–20	construction, 148-54
as a command, 210	um zu, 150
followed by wir, 120-21	in combination with sein, 151
summary of uses, 221-22	as a subject, 151
of modals, 230	summary of uses, 258

